

WORLD BIBLIOGRAPHICAL SERIES

VOLUME 38



NEPAL

JOHN WHELPTON

# WORLD BIBLIOGRAPHICAL SERIES

General Editors:

Robert G. Neville (Executive Editor)

John J. Horton

Ian Wallace

Hans H. Wellisch

Ralph Lee Woodward, Jr.

**John J. Horton** is Deputy Librarian of the University of Bradford and currently Chairman of its Academic Board of Studies in Social Sciences. He has maintained a longstanding interest in the discipline of area studies and its associated bibliographical problems, with special reference to European Studies. In particular he has published in the field of Icelandic and of Yugoslav studies, including the two relevant volumes in the World Bibliographical Series.

---

**Ian Wallace** is Professor of Modern Languages at Loughborough University of Technology. A graduate of Oxford in French and German, he also studied in Tübingen, Heidelberg and Lausanne before taking teaching posts at universities in the USA, Scotland and England. He specializes in East German affairs, especially literature and culture, on which he has published numerous articles and books. In 1979 he founded the journal *GDR Monitor*, which he continues to edit.

---

**Hans H. Wellisch** is Professor emeritus at the College of Library and Information Services, University of Maryland. He was President of the American Society of Indexers and was a member of the International Federation for Documentation. He is the author of numerous articles and several books on indexing and abstracting, and has published *The Conversion of Scripts* and *Indexing and Abstracting: an International Bibliography*. He also contributes frequently to *Journal of the American Society for Information Science*, *The Indexer* and other professional journals.

---

**Ralph Lee Woodward, Jr.** is Chairman of the Department of History at Tulane University, New Orleans, where he has been Professor of History since 1970. He is the author of *Central America, a Nation Divided*, 2nd ed. (1985), as well as several monographs and more than sixty scholarly articles on modern Latin America. He has also compiled volumes in the World Bibliographical Series on *Belize* (1980), *Nicaragua* (1983), and *El Salvador* (1988). Dr. Woodward edited the Central American section of the *Research Guide to Central America and the Caribbean* (1985) and is currently editor of the Central American history section of the *Handbook of Latin American Studies*.

VOLUME 38

# Nepal

John Whelpton

*Compiler*

*with the assistance of*

Lucette Boulnois, David Gellner, Michael Hutt,  
Abhi Subedi and Carol Tingey



CLIO PRESS

OXFORD, ENGLAND · SANTA BARBARA, CALIFORNIA  
DENVER, COLORADO

© Copyright 1990 by Clio Press Ltd.

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in any retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying or otherwise, without the prior permission in writing of the publishers.

British Library Cataloguing in Publication Data

Whelpton, John, 1950 –  
Nepal.

1. Nepal – Bibliographies

I. Title II. Series

016.9549'6

ISBN 0-903450-68-2

Clio Press Ltd.,  
55 St. Thomas' Street,  
Oxford OX1 1JG, England.

ABC-CLIO,  
130 Cremona Drive,  
Santa Barbara,  
CA 93117, USA.

Designed by Bernard Crossland.  
Typeset by Columns Design and Production Services, Reading, England.  
Printed and bound in Great Britain by  
Billing and Sons Ltd., Worcester.



## THE WORLD BIBLIOGRAPHICAL SERIES

This series, which is principally designed for the English speaker, will eventually cover every country in the world, each in a separate volume comprising annotated entries on works dealing with its history, geography, economy and politics; and with its people, their culture, customs, religion and social organization. Attention will also be paid to current living conditions – housing, education, newspapers, clothing, etc.– that are all too often ignored in standard bibliographies; and to those particular aspects relevant to individual countries. Each volume seeks to achieve, by use of careful selectivity and critical assessment of the literature, an expression of the country and an appreciation of its nature and national aspirations, to guide the reader towards an understanding of its importance. The keynote of the series is to provide, in a uniform format, an interpretation of each country that will express its culture, its place in the world, and the qualities and background that make it unique. The views expressed in individual volumes, however, are not necessarily those of the publisher.

### VOLUMES IN THE SERIES

- |    |  |    |   |
|----|--|----|---|
| 1  | <i>Yugoslavia</i> , John J. Horton                             | 25 | <i>Kenya</i> , Robert L. Collison   |
| 2  | <i>Lebanon</i> , Shereen Khairallah                            | 26 | <i>India</i> , Brijen K. Gupta and Datta S. Kharbas                       |
| 3  | <i>Lesotho</i> , Shelagh M. Willet and David Ambrose           | 27 | <i>Turkey</i> , Merel Güçlü   |
| 4  | <i>Rhodesia/Zimbabwe</i> , Oliver B. Pollack and Karen Pollack | 28 | <i>Cyprus</i> , P. M. Kitromilides and M. L. Evriviades                   |
| 5  | <i>Saudi Arabia</i> , Frank A. Clements                        | 29 | <i>Oman</i> , Frank A. Clements   |
| 6  | <i>USSR</i> , Anthony Thompson                                 | 31 | <i>Finland</i> , J. E. O. Screen  |
| 7  | <i>South Africa</i> , Reuben Musiker                           | 32 | <i>Poland</i> , Richard C. Lewański                                       |
| 8  | <i>Malawi</i> , Robert B. Boeder                               | 33 | <i>Tunisia</i> , Allan M. Findlay, Anne M. Findlay and Richard I. Lawless |
| 9  | <i>Guatemala</i> , Woodman B. Franklin                         | 34 | <i>Scotland</i> , Eric G. Grant   |
| 11 | <i>Uganda</i> , Robert L. Collison                             | 35 | <i>China</i> , Peter Cheng  |
| 12 | <i>Malaysia</i> , Ian Brown and Rajeswary Ampalavanar          | 36 | <i>Qatar</i> , P. T. H. Unwin   |
| 13 | <i>France</i> , Frances Chambers                               | 37 | <i>Iceland</i> , John J. Horton   |
| 14 | <i>Panama</i> , Eleanor DeSelms Langstaff                      | 38 | <i>Nepal</i> , John Whelpton  |
| 15 | <i>Hungary</i> , Thomas Kabdebo                                | 39 | <i>Haiti</i> , Frances Chambers   |
| 16 | <i>USA</i> , Sheila R. Herstein and Naomi Robbins              | 40 | <i>Sudan</i> , M. W. Daly   |
| 17 | <i>Greece</i> , Richard Clogg and Mary Jo Clogg                | 41 | <i>Vatican City State</i> , Michael J. Walsh                              |
| 18 | <i>New Zealand</i> , R. F. Grover                              | 42 | <i>Iraq</i> , A. J. Abdulrahman   |
| 19 | <i>Algeria</i> , Richard I. Lawless                            | 43 | <i>United Arab Emirates</i> , Frank A. Clements                           |
| 20 | <i>Sri Lanka</i> , Vijaya Samaraweera                          | 44 | <i>Nicaragua</i> , Ralph Lee Woodward, Jr.                                |
| 21 | <i>Belize</i> , Ralph Lee Woodward, Jr.                        | 45 | <i>Jamaica</i> , K. E. Ingram   |
| 23 | <i>Luxembourg</i> , Carlo Hury and Jul Christophory            | 46 | <i>Australia</i> , I. Kepars  |
| 24 | <i>Swaziland</i> , Balam Nyeko                                 | 47 | <i>Morocco</i> , Anne M. Findlay, Allan                                   |

- M. Findlay and Richard I. Lawless
- 48 *Mexico*, Naomi Robbins
- 49 *Bahrain*, P. T. H. Unwin
- 50 *The Yemens*, G. Rex Smith
- 51 *Zambia*, Anne M. Bliss and J. A. Rigg
- 52 *Puerto Rico*, Elena E. Cevallos
- 53 *Namibia*, Stanley Schoeman and Elna Schoeman
- 54 *Tanzania*, Colin Darch
- 55 *Jordan*, Ian J. Seccombe
- 56 *Kuwait*, Frank A. Clements
- 57 *Brazil*, Solena V. Bryant
- 58 *Israel*, Esther M. Snyder (preliminary compilation E. Kreiner)
- 59 *Romania*, Andrea Deletant and Dennis Deletant
- 60 *Spain*, Graham J. Shields
- 61 *Atlantic Ocean*, H. G. R. King
- 63 *Cameroon*, Mark W. DeLancey and Peter J. Schraeder
- 64 *Malta*, John Richard Thackrah
- 65 *Thailand*, Michael Watts
- 66 *Austria*, Denys Salt with the assistance of Arthur Farrand Radley
- 67 *Norway*, Leland B. Sather
- 68 *Czechoslovakia*, David Short
- 69 *Irish Republic*, Michael Owen Shannon
- 70 *Pacific Basin and Oceania*, Gerald W. Fry and Rufino Mauricio
- 71 *Portugal*, P. T. H. Unwin
- 72 *West Germany*, Donald S. Detwiler and Ilse E. Detwiler
- 73 *Syria*, Ian J. Seccombe
- 74 *Trinidad and Tobago*, Frances Chambers
- 76 *Barbados*, Robert B. Potter and Graham M. S. Dann
- 77 *East Germany*, Ian Wallace
- 78 *Mozambique*, Colin Darch
- 79 *Libya*, Richard I. Lawless
- 80 *Sweden*, Leland B. Sather and Alan Swanson
- 81 *Iran*, Reza Navabpour
- 82 *Dominica*, Robert A. Myers
- 83 *Denmark*, Kenneth E. Miller
- 84 *Paraguay*, R. Andrew Nickson
- 85 *Indian Ocean*, Julia J. Gotthold with the assistance of Donald W. Gotthold
- 86 *Egypt*, Ragai, N. Makar
- 87 *Gibraltar*, Graham J. Shields
- 88 *The Netherlands*, Peter King and Michael Wintle
- 89 *Bolivia*, Gertrude M. Yeager
- 90 *Papua New Guinea*, Fraiser McConnell
- 91 *The Gambia*, David P. Gamble
- 92 *Somalia*, Mark W. DeLancey, Sheila L. Elliott, December Green, Kenneth J. Menkhaus, Mohammad Haji Moqtar, Peter J. Schraeder
- 93 *Brunei*, Sylvia C. Engelen Krausse, Gerald H. Krausse
- 94 *Albania*, William B. Bland
- 95 *Singapore*, Stella R. Quah, Jon S. T. Quah
- 96 *Guyana*, Frances Chambers
- 97 *Chile*, Harold Blakemore
- 98 *El Salvador*, Ralph Lee Woodward, Jr.
- 99 *The Arctic*, H.G.R. King
- 100 *Nigeria*, Robert A. Myers
- 101 *Ecuador*, David Corkill
- 102 *Uruguay*, Henry Finch with the assistance of Alicia Casas de Barrán
- 103 *Japan*, Frank Joseph Shulman
- 104 *Belgium*, R.C. Riley
- 105 *Macau*, Richard Louis Edmonds
- 106 *Philippines*, Jim Richardson
- 107 *Bulgaria*, Richard J. Crampton
- 108 *The Bahamas*, Paul G. Boulton
- 109 *Peru*, John R. Fisher
- 110 *Venezuela*, D. A. G. Waddell
- 111 *Dominican Republic*, Kai Schoenhals

# Contents

INTRODUCTION .....	xi
THE COUNTRY AND ITS PEOPLE .....	1
TRAVELLERS' ACCOUNTS .....	8
GEOGRAPHY AND GEOLOGY .....	19
General	19
Maps and cartography	23
TOURIST GUIDES .....	28
FLORA AND FAUNA .....	34
ARCHAEOLOGY AND PREHISTORY .....	41
HISTORY .....	46
General	46
Pre-1769	50
1769-1951	54
POPULATION, FAMILY PLANNING AND HEALTH SERVICES ....	63
LANGUAGES .....	74
General	74
Grammars and textbooks	78
Dictionaries	82
RELIGION .....	87
SOCIETY .....	100
General	100
Castes and ethnic groups	108
Women	120
POLITICS AND GOVERNMENT .....	128

## **Contents**

<b>LAW AND CONSTITUTION</b> .....	137
<b>EXTRATERRITORIAL POPULATIONS</b> .....	141
<b>THE BRIGADE OF GURKHAS</b> .....	144
<b>FOREIGN RELATIONS</b> .....	148
<b>LITERATURE</b> .....	154
Literary history and criticism	154
Translations	158
Literature in English	163
<b>ECONOMY</b> .....	165
<b>FINANCE, TRADE AND COMMERCE</b> .....	178
<b>INDUSTRY</b> .....	182
<b>AGRICULTURE</b> .....	184
<b>LABOUR AND EMPLOYMENT</b> .....	194
<b>ENVIRONMENT</b> .....	196
Problems and conservation	196
Town planning	201
<b>TRANSPORT AND COMMUNICATIONS</b> .....	203
Postal systems	203
Transport	204
<b>MOUNTAINEERING AND SPORTS</b> .....	206
<b>MASS MEDIA</b> .....	212
<b>PROFESSIONAL PERIODICALS</b> .....	215
<b>REFERENCE WORKS</b> .....	219
<b>BIBLIOGRAPHIES</b> .....	222
<b>ARTS</b> .....	228
General	228
Painting and photography	232
Architecture and sculpture	233
Traditional crafts and techniques	238
Cooking	241
Music and dance	241

Festivals 244  
Customs and costume 245  
Numismatics 246  
Folklore 247

STATISTICS ..... 250  
EDUCATION ..... 252  
SCIENCE AND TECHNOLOGY ..... 258  
INDEX OF AUTHORS, TITLES AND SUBJECTS ..... 261  
MAP OF NEPAL ..... 295





# Introduction

## **Nepal and its peoples**

The kingdom of Nepal emerged in its present form in the late-18th century. Lying along a section of the Himalaya between India and Tibet (now part of China), the country extends some 880 kilometres from west to east and between 190 and 240 kilometres from north to south. The eastern section of the border with Tibet follows the crest line of the main Himalayan range, including the summit of Mount Everest. Further west, it runs to the north of the range, containing within Nepalese territory a portion of the Tibetan plateau. South of the great peaks lie the mass of foothills which are home to the majority of the population. The boundary of this region is marked by the sometimes ill-defined Mahabharat and Siwalik ranges, which are separated by low-lying, west-east valleys known as the inner *tarai*. Finally, the southernmost portion of the country, the flat expanse of the *tarai* proper, extends generally between fifteen and fifty kilometres into the great plains of north India. These successive zones are drained by three great river-systems: the Karnali, the Gandaki, and the Koshi. From their sources in Tibet they flow through deep valleys between the Himalayan peaks, then traverse the hills to merge finally in India with the Ganges. The resulting topography facilitates the movement of people and goods from north to south, but west-east travel through the hills involves the ascent and descent of a seemingly endless succession of ridges.

Ninety per cent of Nepal's estimated nineteen million people are still agriculturalists and ninety-four per cent are village-dwellers, the majority of them living between an hour and several days' walk from the nearest road fit for vehicles. Within the hills, the proportion of land suitable for cultivation is small, even with extensive terracing of the slopes. The staple crops are rice on the irrigated valley bottoms and maize at higher altitudes, but wheat, millet and potatoes are also important. In the *tarai*, the land is more easily worked, and this region accounts for about two-thirds of national food grain produc-

## Introduction

tion, while containing only one-third of the country's total population.

By far the largest concentration of urban settlement is in the Kathmandu Valley, a fertile bowl lying at an altitude of over four thousand feet in the east-central hills, between the Gandaki and Koshi river basins. Kathmandu itself, the capital, with a population in 1981 of 235,000, is adjoined immediately to the south by the town of Patan (80,000), and separated by only a few kilometres from Bhaktapur (48,000). Elsewhere in the country, the largest towns are Biratnagar (94,000) in the far-eastern *tarai* and Pokhara (46,000) in a valley in the hills some 150 kilometres west of Kathmandu.

For administrative purposes, the country is now divided into seventy-five districts (*jilla*), grouped together into fourteen zones (*anchal*). The zones are in turn subdivided into five development regions (*bikas kshetra*) for regional economic planning.

There is great ethnic diversity within the country, and the last census gave separate figures for speakers of eighteen different languages, with perhaps another thirty subsumed under the category of 'others'. The population can, however, be considered conveniently within four broad groupings.

Most numerous, and also politically dominant, are the people who style themselves Parbatiyas (hillmen) but who are labelled by some anthropologists as 'Indo-Nepalese'. They are essentially the continuation of a people known as the Khas, who were established in the Himalaya well before the beginning of the Christian era, and whose eastward movement through the hills is one of the main forces that has shaped the history of the region. Their language, once known as *khas kura* (Khas speech) and now as Nepali, is closely related to the dialects of north India, and the Khas also resemble north Indians in their facial features. Over the centuries they have assimilated a great deal of Indian culture, in particular Hinduism and the caste system, though their society retains some distinctive features of its own. The largest Parbatiya caste, the Chetris, were still called Khas until the mid-19th century. The two castes above them in the hierarchy, the Brahmans and the Thakuris, both claim that their ancestors entered the hills from India proper. In the case of some families this may well be true, but many others are of simple Khas extraction. The untouchable, occupational castes which form the bottom of the Parbatiya social structure, must also be of Khas descent.

The second group, the Newars, are the indigenous inhabitants of the Kathmandu Valley. Their language belongs to the Tibeto-Burman family, and their ultimate place of origin was probably north of the Himalayas. They too, however, came under Indian influence early and have long had their own internal caste hierarchy. At the upper levels, the Newars are split into Buddhist and Hindu sections,

but for those beneath the highest castes, in particular the Jyapus who are the main cultivators in the Valley, the distinction between the two religions becomes irrelevant. The greatest concentration of Newars is still in the Kathmandu Valley, but they have spread in smaller numbers to all parts of the kingdom, and are particularly prominent as traders in the market centres or *bazars* dotted about the hills.

Forming the third major grouping are the Hindus of the *tarai*. They are recent arrivals, having for the most part moved into the region as the jungles were cleared from the early-19th century onwards. Their migration was encouraged by the Nepalese government as the hill peasants were reluctant to move down to the plains until population pressures and the virtual eradication of malaria in the *tarai* in the 1950s started a substantial southwards movement of population. The Indian inhabitants still remain in the majority, and their languages, caste structure and way of life are generally no different from those south of the border, this marking a purely political, rather than a cultural divide. The two principal *tarai* languages, Maithili and Bhojpuri, have the second and third largest numbers of speakers among all the Nepalese languages, being exceeded only by Nepali itself.

Fourthly, there are the various 'tribal' peoples, at differing stages of integration into the more complex, caste societies around them. In the *tarai* they are represented chiefly by the Tharus, a people who, like their caste Hindu neighbours, are found on both sides of the border. In the hills almost all of the 'tribals' are, or have been, speakers of Tibeto-Burman languages. Some groups which migrated most recently from north of the Himalaya retain a Tibetan linguistic and cultural identity, the best-known being the Sherpas of the Everest region who left Tibet in the 16th century. The Tamangs and Gurungs, found mainly in the central and west-central hills, also show strong linguistic affinities with Tibetan, but there is no record of when they actually entered Nepal. Even more distantly related are the languages of the Magars (of the west-central hills), and the Rais and Limbus of the eastern hills. It is these last three groups, together with the Gurungs, who form the bulk of the 'Gurkha' troops in British service, and their Mongoloid features which provide many foreigners with their image of the typical Nepalese. In the caste hierarchy as codified in the 19th century, these 'military' tribes occupied an intermediate position between 'pure' and untouchable Parbatiya castes.

## Introduction

### Historical evolution

The name 'Nepal' originally referred only to the Kathmandu Valley, and is indeed still used in that restricted sense by many uneducated Nepalese. The etymology of the word is disputed, but it may derive from Tibeto-Burman roots meaning herdsman, and it is itself certainly the parent form from which 'Newar' derives. The 5th- to 8th-century stone inscriptions which are the Valley's earliest historical remains show that the mass of people almost certainly spoke an early form of Newari, whilst the ruling dynasty claimed to be descendants of the Licchavis, a people who had played an illustrious rôle in the history of north India. The inscriptions themselves were in Sanskrit, the language both of the Hindu scriptures and also of official pronouncements in India at that time. The rulers were principally Hindu, but Buddhism was also well established. This, too, reflected an Indian pattern: Buddha himself had been born a thousand years earlier, at Lumbini in what is now the Nepalese *tarai*, but the region then had no political connection with the Kathmandu Valley and Buddhist influences almost certainly entered the Valley from the major centres of north India.

After the emergence of Tibet as a unified kingdom in the 7th century, the Kyrong and Kuti passes through the Himalaya, situated north-west and north-east of Kathmandu respectively, provided merchants and other travellers between India and central Asia with an alternative to the older established routes through present day Afghanistan. The Nepal Valley was an obvious resting place between the rigours of the mountains and those of the *tarai* jungles, and although the new route never rivalled the old one in sheer volume of trade, it remained of commercial importance until the beginning of the 20th century, when the British forced open a route from Sikkim into Tibet. Nepal was the channel through which Indian Buddhist missionaries entered Tibet, whilst Tibetan political influence also crossed the Himalaya: Nepalese scholars dispute the interpretation of passages in Chinese and Tibetan documents suggesting that Nepal was actually a Tibetan dependency, but it is generally accepted that one Licchavi ruler regained his lost throne with Tibetan support. During his reign, a Chinese envoy travelled through Nepal to India, and, after maltreatment there, was able to secure Tibetan and Nepalese military assistance to launch a punitive expedition.

With the decline of the Licchavis, Nepalese history enters an obscure period, but by about 1200 AD the dynasty known as 'Malla' (really a title, rather than a family name) emerged in control of the Valley. Sanskrit was still used for administrative and literary purposes, but in the medieval period writing in Newari became more



and more frequent. Buddhism, which had long been in decline in India and was finally eliminated there by the Muslim invasions, retained its place in Nepal alongside Hinduism. However, there was a major shift in its form as the tradition of celibate monasticism was lost, and was replaced by a system of particular families inhabiting 'monasteries' on an hereditary basis.

A new cultural infusion was provided in the 14th century when Harisimha, a Maithili ruler in the *tarai*, fled to the Valley after defeat by the Muslim ruler of Bengal. He died *en route*, but his widow, Devaladvi, was received by the ruling family and became a dominant figure in Nepalese politics. Jayasthiti Malla, the husband she chose for her grand-daughter, became king in about 1382. He is credited with legally imposing on Newar society a rigid caste structure. The tradition is not entirely reliable, but it is fair to assume that there was a strengthening of Hindu orthodoxy at this time. Harisimha's family also brought their language with them, and Maithili served as one of the languages of communication at court as well as functioning as a literary language in the Valley.

From Licchavi times onwards the Valley had often been under more than one ruler, whether through agreement to share power or because of an unresolved struggle for total control. In 1482, however, a more lasting division was made between the three sons of King Yaksha Malla. From then until the end of Newar independence in 1769, the Valley contained three separate kingdoms: Kathmandu, Patan and Bhaktapur. Rivalry and conflict between them was constant, and this was the state of affairs discovered by the 17th-century Jesuit missionaries who were the first European visitors to Nepal. Political weakness did not, however, impede artistic tradition and the masterpieces of Newar architecture, which are one of the Valley's great attractions, mostly date from this period.

Rulers in the Nepal Valley exercised some control over the immediately neighbouring hills, and were particularly eager to command the passes into Tibet, but most of what is now Nepal had its own separate history during these centuries. From about the 11th to the 14th century, the Karnali basin in western Nepal, together with western Tibet, was united in a Khas empire centred on Jumla. Inscriptions set up by these rulers include passages in a forerunner of the Nepali language. When the empire fell apart, it was succeeded in the Karnali region by the *baisi* (twenty-two) kingdoms, whilst the similar *chaubisi* (twenty-four) kingdoms emerged further east in the Gandaki basin. The rulers of these kingdoms were Thakuris, who generally claimed descent from the Rajput refugees who had sought safety in the hills from the Muslim power in north India. Their subjects were a mixture of ordinary Khas (later to be known as

## Introduction

Chetris) and tribal peoples, in particular the Magars.

The pattern of fragmentation was finally ended in 1769, when King Prithvi Narayan Shah of Gorkha, a *chaubisi* kingdom some sixty miles west of Kathmandu, succeeded in conquering the Newar kingdoms of the Valley and thus founding modern Nepal. Prithvi and his successors then continued their conquests west and east along the Himalaya, absorbing both the other Khas kingdoms of the western hills and the hitherto independent tribes in the east. This progress was halted when they came into collision with powerful neighbours. Unwise incursions into Tibet led, in 1792, to a Chinese expeditionary force penetrating almost to the edge of the Kathmandu Valley. The Nepalese were able to end hostilities by a purely nominal surrender, but when they later resumed the advance westwards towards Kashmir they were blocked on the River Satlej by Ranjit Singh, Sikh ruler of the Panjab. The final end to this period of expansion came with the Nepalese defeat in the 1814-16 war with the British, who were themselves still advancing north-westwards from their original base in Bengal. The peace settlement fixed Nepal's eastern and western borders in their present position, depriving them of the Kumaon and Garhwal hills and also of the portion of Sikkim that they had occupied. The Nepalese were also compelled to accept the presence of a British Resident in Kathmandu.

Since the death of Prithvi Narayan's son, Pratap Singh, in 1777, the minority or incapacity of successive kings had led to real power resting in the hands of regents or ministers. In the 1830s the downfall of one such strongman, Bhimsen Thapa, was followed by a period of acute political instability, ending with a massacre of most leading politicians at the Kot Arsenal in Kathmandu on 14 September 1846 and the emergence of Jang Bahadur Kunwar as effective ruler of the country. The descendants of Prithvi Narayan Shah remained on the throne and kept their title of *maharajadhiraj* (great king of kings), but the premiership and a new position of *maharaja* were made hereditary in Jang's family. The family adopted the name 'Rana', thereby claiming descent from the same Indian Rajput line which the Shah dynasty regarded as its ancestors. The Shah kings were reduced to mere figure-heads, and for a century the Ranas enjoyed a similar status to that of the shoguns in pre-Meiji Japan.

The Ranas provided relatively stable government and strengthened the central administration, but the fundamentals of economic, social and political structure remained as before. The king was the ultimate owner of the land and collected taxes much in the nature of rent. The Ranas controlled this revenue and appropriated part of it to make large areas effectively their private property.

Even before the establishment of the Rana régime, the consolida-

tion of British power in India and the progressive weakening of China had begun to lead Nepal away from its traditional balancing-act between the two nations and towards an alignment with the British. Under the Ranas, this trend became much more marked, and was demonstrated by Jang Bahadur's visit to London in 1850 and by his subsequent assistance to the British in suppressing the 'Indian Mutiny'. In contrast, the 1855–56 war with Tibet, which secured greater privileges for Nepalese traders in Lhasa, showed Jang's disregard for Chinese sensibilities. Later Rana rulers agreed to help in recruiting Nepalese citizens for the British Indian army: this employment of 'Gurkhas' (a British misspelling of 'Gorkha') had in fact started as early as 1815 but had hitherto been carried on against the wishes of the Nepalese authorities. Alongside this cooperation, however, the Ranas continued the old isolationist policy and Nepal remained a closed country to all Europeans other than the Residency personnel and a small number of invited guests.

In the 20th century the military relationship reached its zenith with a massive commitment of Nepal's manpower to the British side in the two World Wars. At the same time, the growth of the Indian nationalist movement, hostile both to British colonial rule and to indigenous autocracies, brought the Ranas and the Raj closer together politically. Opposition to the Ranas grew amongst the Nepalese community in India, and those involved in it were often also sympathetic towards the Indian independence struggle. Indeed, fear that such sympathies might spread to Gurkha troops in British service was probably one of the factors behind Britain's explicit acknowledgment in 1923 of Nepal's own complete independence. Inside Nepal, general backwardness and the lack of an educated middle class made a country-wide, mass movement against the government virtually impossible. However, a small anti-government organization was formed in Kathmandu in the 1930s and made contact with King Tribhuvan, who was unhappy with his position as a mere figure-head under Rana control. Four of the movement's leaders were executed in 1941, and are now commemorated annually on Martyrs Memorial Day.

Once India became independent in 1947, pressure on the Rana régime mounted. Maharaja Padma Shamsheer attempted to launch a cautious programme of liberalization, but in 1948, alarmed by pressure from his more hard-line cousins, he went into voluntary exile. In 1950, two different groups of Nepalese dissidents in India combined to form the Nepali Congress Party. Plans were laid in conjunction with King Tribhuvan for a rising in Kathmandu later in the year. The Rana authorities learned of these plans, and with his position thus compromised Tribhuvan and most of his family sought

## **Introduction**

refuge in the Indian embassy. Under pressure from India, Maharaja Mohan Shamsheer agreed to allow the royal party to fly out of the country, and with the king safe in Delhi the Nepali Congress launched armed attacks across the border. Early in 1951 the Indians acted as brokers in a settlement under which Tribhuvan returned to Kathmandu and a joint cabinet of Ranas and Nepali Congress leaders was set up. Mohan remained prime minister for a few more months, but the royal decrees that had granted comprehensive powers to Jang Bahadur and his family a century earlier were formally revoked. Ultimate authority had returned to the Shah dynasty, where it has since remained.

## **Post-Rana Nepal**

King Tribhuvan originally promised that a constituent assembly would be convened to decide Nepal's eventual form of government. Political instability prevented this taking place immediately, and King Mahendra, who ascended the throne in 1955, promulgated a constitution himself. This provided for a parliamentary form of government while maintaining substantial reserve powers for the crown, including the right to declare an emergency and to take over the administration. In the general election of 1959, the Nepali Congress won an outright victory, but the following year the king dismissed and imprisoned prime minister B. P. Koirala and other members of the Congress government, charging that they had failed to maintain law and order and were compromising the country's independence. Congress activists went into exile in India and soon began a series of armed raids across the border, whilst the Indian government put diplomatic and economic pressure on the king to negotiate with his opponents. However, the outbreak of the Sino-Indian border conflict in 1962 forced Delhi to accept the royal *coup* and to rein in the Nepali Congress exiles.

To provide for popular representation while keeping the royal palace firmly in control, Mahendra's 1962 constitution established a multi-tiered system of panchayats (councils), with the Rastriya Panchayat (National Assembly) at its apex. The bottom tier – village and town panchayats – were elected by universal suffrage, but otherwise panchs (councillors) at each level were selected by the level below. The ban on political parties meant that candidates stood as individuals, not as representatives of alternative programmes of action. Disturbances in 1979 involving students and others led the present king, Birendra, to hold the 1980 referendum in which the people were offered a choice between retention of the panchayat

system with certain reforms or a return to multi-party democracy. The panchayat side won, but only by 2.4 million to 2 million votes, and with the major towns all in the opposition camp. Since then the panchayat system has been modified to allow election of the Rastriya Panchayat by universal franchise and ministers have been made formally responsible to the Rastriya Panchayat rather than to the king. Whilst most members are still very much under palace influence, some have shown a degree of independence. The ban on political parties remains, but the Congress and various leftist groups do in fact operate quite openly, despite being subject to intermittent harassment, and Nepali Congress members have also participated in some local elections. In addition to the established parties outside the panchayat system, some observers also see the possibility of new parties evolving out of factions in the Rastriya Panchayat.

Measured in terms of gross national product (GNP) per capita Nepal is one of the world's four poorest countries, and 'development' has been the watchword of both the administration and opposition forces since 1951. Until the final years of the Rana régime, when some industrial enterprises were established in the *tarai*, Nepalese governments were concerned almost exclusively with revenue collection and made little attempt to increase production other than encouraging the clearance of *tarai* jungle to bring more land under cultivation. Since the 1950s, the government has produced a series of five-year development plans, and formulated separate budgets for routine expenditure and for development projects, the greater part of the latter being financed through foreign aid. The early emphasis was on the provision of infrastructure and particularly on road-building: there were no roads fit for vehicles leading into the hills before 1951, and the few cars to be found in the Kathmandu Valley had been disassembled and carried from the plains by porters.

Education was another high priority, schools having been virtually non-existent outside the capital under the Rana régime. More recently, the focus has shifted to the need to boost agricultural productivity, and the centre-point of present policy is the fulfilment of 'basic needs' – specified minimum standards in such areas as food consumption and housing – for the whole population by the end of the century.

Development efforts have had to contend with the linked problems of population growth and environmental degradation. Experts continue to argue over just how serious the erosion problem in the hills really is and also on the relative importance of the expanding population and of structural inequalities both within Nepal and in its relationship to the regional and global economies. However, 2.6 per cent more mouths to feed every year undoubtedly means that Nepal



## Introduction

has to run quite fast just to stand still in terms of food production per capita.

A second major difficulty has been the failure to make really effective use of the sums invested so far. There has, for example, been little improvement in food grain yields per hectare, despite the existence of an agricultural research programme and extension service. Cynics, well represented both amongst Nepalese and foreign observers, frequently point out that the most obvious results of foreign aid and planned development have been simply a massive expansion in the government bureaucracy and in the staffs of foreign-run projects, with a consequent building-boom in the Kathmandu Valley. Although there have been small-scale improvements in some parts of village Nepal, no overall breakthrough has been achieved, and seasonal migration to low-paid jobs in India remains vital for the survival of many families.

In foreign policy, the posture of dependence on India immediately following the fall of the Rana régime in 1951 was replaced under King Mahendra by an attempt to resurrect the old policy of balancing Chinese against Indian influence, as well as expanding relations with other countries. The balancing act had the added advantage of injecting a competitive element into the pledging of foreign aid. Given a traditional suspicion of 'big brother' India amongst many hill Nepalese, it also helped the king to portray his Nepali Congress opponents as unpatriotic by contrasting his own independence with their alleged subservience to India.

Since then, the limits to Nepal's freedom of manoeuvre *vis-à-vis* her southern neighbour have become clearer. The 1971 Bangladesh War, in which China gave nothing more than verbal support to Pakistan, underlined Indian predominance in South Asia. More recently, the improvement in China's relations with the Soviet Union, and therefore also with India has further weakened Nepal's scope for playing the China card. Above all, while Nepal has succeeded in reducing India's formerly overwhelming proportion of her foreign trade, the Nepalese remain dependent on India for access to the sea. The latest dispute between the two countries over terms of trade and transit, (still unresolved at the time of writing) has again demonstrated that Nepal's case will attract sympathy from other countries but little effective help.

At the heart of recurrent Nepal-India tensions lies India's anxiety to preserve the inviolability of the Himalaya as the strategic boundary between its own area of influence and China. The last Rana maharaja was prepared to agree to this in early 1950 in the hope that India would, in return, allow him a free hand within Nepal. Accordingly, letters exchanged on the signing of the India-Nepal Peace and

Friendship treaty that year provided that both sides would consult together in case of an attack on either of them by a third power. King Birendra's appeal in 1975 for his country to be declared a 'zone of peace', a concept which has since become the corner-stone of Nepalese diplomacy, seems to be regarded by India as an attempt by Nepal to dilute or evade its obligations under the treaty. The Indian government's consequent refusal to endorse the proposal has added a constant irritant to relations between the two countries.

The agreement of 1950 did not in fact prevent Nepal from remaining formally neutral during India's wars with China and Pakistan, while it is arguable that a more substantive infringement of its status as a non-aligned nation is the continuing recruitment of its nationals into the Indian and British armies. The British connection is particularly open to criticism on this score, as Britain is allowed to maintain facilities for recruiting inside Nepal, whilst men wanting to enlist in the Indian army have to cross the border to do so. However, objections to the practice from Nepalese intellectuals are of little weight against the importance of military salaries and pensions for the hill economy and there is little prospect of any Nepal government seeking to end it in the foreseeable future.

Complicating Nepal's economic and foreign policy problems is the tension between traditional and modern trends within Nepalese society. Since unification in the 18th century, the principal values on which national integration has been based have been loyalty to the crown and Hinduism, concepts which are closely intertwined as the king is still seen by many of his subjects as an incarnation of Vishnu. The caste system is no longer enshrined in law, as was the case before 1950, but it remains illegal for any Hindu to change his religion or for members of another faith to try to persuade him to do so, and Nepal's Hindu identity, together with the leading rôle of the monarchy, is a key part of the official, panchayat ideology. These traditional attitudes have a diminishing appeal to the younger, educated élite, most of whom are more in sympathy with the secular, democratic values espoused, if not always fully implemented, in India. Thus the more the régime succeeds in promoting 'development', the more, ultimately, it erodes its own support. The logic of the situation seemingly points to a gradual liberalization ending in the complete restoration of parliamentary democracy, but time will tell.

A second major cleavage within Nepal is that between the *tarai* and the rest of the country. As plainsmen culturally no different from their neighbours across the border, most *tarai* people are inevitably excluded from a sense of national identity that centres on hill culture and on the Nepali language. They see demands from the hills for strict control on migration from India as a threat to themselves, since

## Introduction

many ordinary villagers have no documentary proof of their citizenship status. They resent also the lack of official recognition for Hindi, which is the *lingua franca* of the *tarai*. These problems are mirrored, in India, by those of the ethnic Nepalese of the Darjeeling hills, who are currently agitating for recognition of the Nepali language by the Indian constitution and for separation from West Bengal. The problems of both national minorities would be helped by closer integration between India and Nepal, within a framework that would not be seen by the hill Nepalese as Indian domination. Such a framework might in the long term be provided by the South Asian Association for Regional Cooperation, which embraces India and Nepal with Pakistan, Bangladesh, Sri Lanka, Bhutan and the Maldives. However, against the background of continuing bilateral tensions, the ultimate potential of SAARC remains a long way from realization.

### *About the bibliography*

When Hugh Wood published the first bibliography of Nepal in 1959, he could justifiably claim that his 1,300 entries included almost everything of any significance that had been published on the country in English. Since then a flood of new material has appeared and to compile a comprehensive bibliography today would be a truly daunting task. The main causes of this expansion have been the activities of the various organizations seeking to promote economic development, the growth of tourism, and the attention given to the country by researchers in many fields. Anthropologists and other social scientists have paid Nepal particular attention because of its rich ethnic and cultural diversity; because, since its opening-up in 1951, Nepal has allowed foreign researchers freer access than in other parts of the Himalayan region; and probably also because many researchers simply find it a congenial place to work. Despite all the economic and social problems dutifully catalogued above, the friendliness of the people and the splendours of the scenery remain powerful attractions.

In this select bibliography, the balance between different sections has been dictated partly by Nepal's own characteristics, and partly by the aim of catering largely for the non-specialist. Sections have been created for 'The Brigade of Gurkhas', 'Extraterritorial populations' and 'Mountaineering and sports'. Because of the peculiar history of Nepal, the history chapter has been divided into two parts: 'Pre-1769', which charts the region's history up until the founding of modern Nepal, and '1769-1951' which ends with the fall of the Rana régime. Works covering events after 1951 can be found mainly in the

chapter on 'Politics and Government'. There is much more material on agriculture than on industry, and the humanities and social sciences are better represented than more technical disciplines. In choosing individual items, I have inevitably been constrained by what was readily available in Kathmandu itself, where most of the research was done, but have tried to include as high a proportion as possible of works published or distributed in the major Western countries. Because Nepalese publications will often be difficult to obtain, I have sometimes cited several works which duplicate each others' contents in the hope that there will be at least one which the interested reader can track down.

Accessibility should not present too great a problem to American readers since the Library of Congress and some major University libraries (including California, Wisconsin and Columbia) regularly purchase all English-language publications from Nepal. In Britain, acquisition has been much less systematic, but many items are held in London by the British Library (now incorporating the India Office Library) or by the School of Oriental and African Studies. In France there is a large collection at the Centre National de la Recherche Scientifique in Meudon, whilst Germany's most important collection is that at the Süd-Asien Institut of the University of Heidelberg.

The most recent Nepalese publications can be ordered through Kathmandu booksellers. The two major concerns are: Himalayan Book Centre, Nepal Red Cross Building, PO Box 1339, Baghbazar, Kathmandu; Ratna Pustak Bhandar, PO Box 98, Bhotahity Tole, Kathmandu.

Finally, research institutions in Kathmandu which publish extensively can be contacted for their current lists. Of particular importance are: Centre for Nepal and Asian Studies, Tribhuvan University, PO Box 3757, Kirtipur, Kathmandu; Centre for Economic Development and Administration, Tribhuvan University, PO Box 797, Kirtipur, Kathmandu; International Centre for Integrated Mountain Development, PO Box 3226, Kathmandu; Agricultural Project Services Centre, PO Box 1440, Kathmandu; Integrated Development Services Centre, PO Box 2254, Kathmandu.

Nepali is written in the Devanagari script which is also used for Hindi and for Sanskrit, the classical language based on the old Indo-Aryan dialects from which Nepali, Hindi and the other north Indian languages have developed. There is a standard system of transcription regularly used in scholarly writing and employing a separate symbol for each Devanagari character. Rather than simply use this without its diacritics, I have preferred to modify it slightly to conform more closely with certain romanizations long-established in non-specialist usage, and also with normal English spelling conventions. Thus, the

## Introduction

distinction between the non-aspirated and aspirated palatal affricates, 'c' and 'ch' has been ignored and 'ch' used for both; the difference in sound is minimal to European ears, being roughly that between English 'ch' in 'change' and 'exchange'. 'Sh' has been used for both 'ś' and 'ṣ', and 's' for 's': in Sanskrit these three characters represented distinct sounds (palatal, retroflex and dental sibilants), but in modern Nepali they are pronounced as a single sound, intermediate between English 's' in 'sip' and 'sh' in 'ship'. In consonant groups I have nevertheless retained 'cch' and 'str' rather than the clumsy 'chch' and 'shtr'.

Any consistent system of transcription will inevitably be in conflict with some of the older romanizations. A particular problem arises with the first two vowel characters of the Devanagari script, 'a' (in Nepali approximating sometimes to English 'u' in 'hut' and sometimes as 'o' in 'hot') and 'ā' (pronounced as 'a' in 'father'). Whenever diacritics are dispensed with, the modern practice is to write 'a' for both, whereas 19th-century writers almost always use 'u' for the first of them. As a result, the names 'Jang' and 'Shamsher', borne in recent generations by all members of the ruling branch of the Rana family, are still generally written by the individuals themselves as 'Jung' and 'Shumshere'. I have followed the modern convention, except of course when giving the title or author of a book using the older spelling.

Trouble is created in three further cases by the divergent phonetic value of Devanagari characters in Nepali as compared to the original Sanskrit. Thus, Devanagari 'v' in modern Nepali normally represents the sound of English 'w' or 'b' and is usually romanized accordingly by the Nepalese themselves. I have followed the Nepalese practice myself, but as 'v' is the standard transcription for Sanskrit, it will be found in the titles of works by authors who prefer to retain the classical system. A similar problem occurs where a Sanskrit loanword in Nepali retains its original spelling but a short 'a' after one of its consonants is no longer pronounced. I have tried to adopt the form most commonly used by Nepalese writing in English, therefore preferring 'Devanagari' to 'Devanagri'. Finally, both in Nepali and in Hindi the voiced retroflex consonants, 'ḍ' and 'ḍh', are often closer to English 'r' than 'd'. I have followed current pronunciation, writing, for example 'Pahari', not 'Pahadi'.

There is a recent trend of using 'Nepali' in preference to 'Nepalese' as an adjective of nationality, but I have followed the older English convention and reserved 'Nepali' for the language alone. I have also used the established English spelling 'Gurkha' when referring to Nepalese troops in British army service, but the more correct 'Gorkha' as an ethnic label and place-name and for soldiers serving in the post-1947 Indian army.



*Acknowledgements*

I am greatly indebted to my five main collaborators for their extensive help. The heaviest burden was shouldered by Mme. Lucette Boulnois: she spent many hours answering a host of marked queries on the penultimate draft, as well as providing me with synopses and photocopies of material in her Meudon collection. Dr. David Gellner supplied additions and corrections to the sections on religion and society, while Dr. Michael Hutt and Abhi Subedi provided substantial material for those on language and literature as well as checking on a number of points elsewhere. Carol Tingey allowed me to use a number of entries from her own annotated bibliography and discography of Nepalese music, and also made some corrections to my own material. I must stress, however, that, as I made the final decisions on what titles to include and omit and on the wording of all entries, none of them are responsible for any inadequacies in the final product.

Among others I must thank for bringing particular titles to my notice, answering queries or obtaining materials are: Shiva Ram Shrestha, Professor Prayag Raj Sharma, Professor Kamal Prakash Malla, Nirmal Tuladhar, Chaitanya Upadhyaya, Colonel John Cross, Ramesh Shrestha, Ram Kumar Pande, Professor Theodore Riccardi, Dr. Chaitanya Mishra, Jagdish Ghimire, Ram Sharan Dharnal, Professor Hugh Wood, Subarna Bajracharya, Dr. Harka Gurung, S. B. Thakur, Shanti Mishra, Balaram Dhangol, Rishikesh Shaha, Indira Shrestha, Dr. Axel Michaels and Major Trevor Colgate.

I am also grateful for assistance from everyone working in the various libraries and other institutions of which I have made use. In Kathmandu I must mention in particular the Centre for Nepal and Asian Studies (CNAS) and the Central Library, Tribhuvan University; the Nepal Research Centre; the International Centre for Integrated Mountain Development (ICIMOD); the British Council; the Agricultural Project Services Centre (APROSC); Integrated Development Systems (IDS); and the National Archives. Outside Nepal I made use principally of the British Library and the School of Oriental and African Studies (SOAS) in London and of the Hong Kong University Library.

Last but not least, Professor Richard Burghart got me involved in the project in the first place, while Janet Marks and Dr. Nigel Crook enabled me to get the main text to the publisher almost on time!

*John Whelpton  
Hong Kong  
September 1989*



# The Country and its People

## 1 **Some aspects of cultural policy in Nepal.**

Shaphalya Amatya. Paris: UNESCO, 1983. 43p. bibliog. (Studies and Documents on Cultural Policies).

This survey covers the general policy and organization of the country's Ministry of Education and Culture and the history of archaeological excavations in Nepal. Museums, art galleries, libraries, the Royal Nepal Academy and government media are also discussed. The author is the Chief Exploration Officer in the Department of Archaeology at the Ministry of Education and Culture.

## 2 **Journey through Nepal.**

Mohamed Amin, Duncan Willetts, Brian Tetley. London: Bodley Head, 1987. 191p. map.

As a general account of the country, this 'coffee-table' book is somewhat superficial and sometimes inaccurate, containing no mention of the pressing economic and environmental problems of Nepal. However, Amin, Africa's leading photographer, provides excellent colour illustrations, including portraits of *tarai* wild life and Kathmandu crowd scenes, as well as the more predictable views of temples and mountains.

## 3 **Nepal.**

Mukunda Raj Aryal, Jurgen Winkler. Translated from the German by Frederic A. Friedel, Jane L. Goetzl-Cooper. Tokyo; New York: Kodansha International, 1977. 227p.

Although this book contains a short overall introduction to the country it is primarily a collection of photographs, mostly black-and-white, each with an explanatory paragraph. There are some good studies of individuals, as well as photographs of natural scenes, inscriptions and works of art.

## he Country and its People

### 4 **The wildest dreams of Kew: a profile of Nepal.**

Jeremy Bernstein. New York: Simon & Schuster; London: George Allen & Unwin, 1970. 186p. bibliog.

This volume begins with a summary of Nepalese history, concentrating on the Rana period (1846-1951) and its aftermath, which is generally competent, though it claims wrongly that the initiative for Jang Bahadur Rana's visit to Britain in 1850 came from the British side. This account is followed by a portrait of Kathmandu life at the time of the author's visit in the late 1960s and a discussion of the country's economic and political problems. There is also a narrative of a trek which Bernstein made in the Solu Khumbu (Mount Everest) region. Much of the material originally appeared as articles in the *New Yorker*.

### 5 **Kathmandu Valley.**

Robert Fleming, Linda Fleming. Tokyo; New York: Kodansha International, 1978. 129p. 2 maps. (This Beautiful World, vol. 61).

A 'pocket-size' account of the Valley's main attractions, illustrated with colour photographs. The authors were resident in Nepal for many years and this volume integrates background information into the narration of a guided tour. The book is not a very profound treatment of the subject, and takes a rather rosy view of Nepal's development policies and prospects, but it has the advantages of readability and portability.

### 6 **Dreamland Nepal.**

Dietmar Frank. Translated from the German by Pramod Talgeri. New Delhi: S. Chand, 1978. 117p. map.

Provides a basic compendium of tourist, anthropological and historical information. The quality of the writing is not outstanding, but the accompanying photographs, which are the main feature of this 'coffee-table' book, are excellent. The original German edition was published as *Traumland Nepal* (Munich: Suddeutscher Verlag, 1974).

### 7 **Nepal et ses populations. (Nepal and its peoples.)**

Marc Gaborieau. Brussels: Editions Complexe, 1978. 308p. 5 maps. bibliog. (Pays et Populations).

This is probably the best overall introduction to the country which has been published to date. It combines an historical survey (which gives proper emphasis to the early history of the Khas in western Nepal as well as to the Newar civilization of the Kathmandu Valley) with a detailed examination of the principal ethnic groups and their interrelationship within the traditional caste framework. Appendices include basic statistics (which are now to some extent out of date), details of the Hindu and Muslim calendars, and extracts from the constitution and civil code relevant to the position of religious minorities. The author is an anthropologist who has specialized in the study of Nepal's small Muslim minority. The book is illustrated with black-and-white photographs.

**8 Kathmandu.**

Jim Goodman. New Delhi: Times Books International; Singapore: Times Editions, 1988. 104p. maps. (The Times Travel Library).

This work was written by an American who is fluent in Newari, the language of the indigenous inhabitants of the Kathmandu Valley, and who became a Bhaktapur resident in 1977. Goodman provides a portrait of the Valley and its people, with some information on the country as a whole, including an historical summary which strangely omits any mention of the 1979 disturbances and the 1980 referendum on the Constitution. A section on the *Kumaris* ('living goddesses') is original in including an interview with a former *Kumari*.

**9 The heritage of the Kathmandu Valley: proceedings of an international conference in Lübeck, June 1985.**

Edited by Niels Gutschow, Axel Michaels. Sankt Augustin, GFR: VGH Wissenschaftsverlag, 1987. 511p. maps. bibliog. (Nepalica, no. 4).

A collection of papers by many leading Nepalese and foreign scholars, principally covering art, religion and cultural history. While the ordinary reader may find some contributions more accessible than others, the book gives a good overview of the areas in which research interest is currently concentrated.

**10 Nepal – the kingdom in the Himalayas.**

Toni Hagen. Translated from the German by Britta M. Charleston.

New Delhi: Oxford University Press, IBH, 1980. 3rd ed. 246p. 22 maps.

This 'coffee-table' book is illustrated by superb photographs, which are mostly in colour. Written by a Swiss geologist who travelled throughout the country in the early 1950s and who has returned several times since, the book provides an excellent general account of Nepal, despite some minor inaccuracies. There is an especially clear explanation of the formation of the Himalaya, and chapters are included on trade and transport (arguing the case for the greater use of ropeways), the Solu Khumbu region, Tibetan refugees, and the environmental problem. The author highlights what, on the strength of his own experiences, he regards as the main changes which have occurred in Nepal since 1950. Hagen has recently included an evaluation of Swiss aid projects in Nepal in his *Wege und Irrwege der Entwicklungspolitik*. (Paths and false trails in development policy.) (Zurich : Neue Zürcher Zeitung, 1988).

**11 Essays on the languages, literature and religion of Nepal and Tibet, together with further papers on the geography, ethnography and commerce of these countries.**

Brian Houghton Hodgson. London: Trubner, 1874. 145 + 124p.

Reprinted, Varanasi, India: Bharat-Bharati, 1971; with an introduction by Philip Denwood, New Delhi: Manjusri, 1972 (Bibliotheca Himalayica, Series II, vol. 7).

Most of these collected essays originally appeared during the 1830s and 1840s in the *Journal of the Bengal Asiatic Society*. Hodgson, who spent most of the years from 1821 to 1843 at Kathmandu as Assistant Resident and then Resident, was a pioneer in the study of Mahayana Buddhism, and of Himalayan languages, ethnography and zoology, and his career and contribution to these fields is summarized in Denwood's introduction to the 1972 edition. Although Hodgson's work has been largely superseded by subsequent research, much remains of interest. The essay 'On the

## **The Country and its People**

military tribes of Nepal' is still useful as a starting point for understanding the evolution of the Chetri caste, whilst 'A disputation respecting caste by a Buddhist' is a translation of a fascinating and skilful polemic against this fundamental institution of Hindu society. The data on Nepal's trade with India and Tibet, originally submitted as official reports to Calcutta in 1831, are an important source for the economic historian.

### **12 Miscellaneous essays relating to Indian subjects.**

Brian Houghton Hodgson. London: Trubner, 1880. 2 vols. maps.

Presents a collection of previously published papers by a pioneer of Nepalese studies. The first volume includes ethnographic and linguistic information on various Nepalese ethnic groups, including the Dhimals, Chepangs and Limbus. In volume two there is a valuable account of the operation of the Nepalese judicial system in the 1820s and 1830s ('Some account of the system of law and police as recognised in the state of Nepal', p. 211-50).

### **13 Nepal.**

Edited by John Gottberg Anderson. Hong Kong: Apa, 1989. 7th ed.  
347p. maps. bibliog. (Insight Guides).

The core of this book is a detailed guide to the Kathmandu Valley, with shorter sections on western and eastern Nepal. However, the valuable essays on many aspects of the country's heritage and present-day life, and the many superb colour photographs, particularly of individual Nepalese, make this considerably more than a guidebook. Its compilation took place over a number of years and involved many writers, including such experts in their fields as Edmund Hillary, Dor Bahadur Bista and John Sanday. Also featured is basic, practical information for travellers, with details of hotel accommodation and transport facilities. Despite its generally high standard, the book contains a few inaccuracies, the most surprising being the attribution of a well-known quotation from Ralph Lilley Turner's preface to his dictionary (*A comparative and etymological dictionary of the Nepali language* (q.v.)) to 'Bishop Stortford': in fact Bishop Stortford is the name of the town in Hertfordshire where Turner lived!

### **14 The Kathmandu Valley towns.**

Fran P. Hosken. New York; Tokyo: John Weatherhill, 1974. 327p.  
maps. bibliog.

The author, a specialist in housing and urbanization, gives an account of the Kathmandu Valley, its people and artistic heritage and makes a plea for careful modernization that will preserve the best of the past and also benefit the majority rather than a small élite. The work is illustrated with over 500 black-and-white photographs and plans, with their emphasis on architectural detail. Particularly valuable is a detailed account of the village of Bungamati, south of Patan, based on a survey carried out by a group of Danish architects. The description of the Valley's history and culture is not, however, wholly reliable; the tradition of monastic celibacy in Newar Buddhism, which had been abandoned by the 14th century at the latest, is said to have been forcibly ended by the Gurkhas in 1768, whilst it is implied, strangely, that Brahmans who have studied abroad are often unwilling to let foreigners into their homes.

**15 Nepalese cultural heritage in a nutshell.**

Foreword by K. P. Dhakal. Kathmandu: Hotel Management and Tourism Training Centre, 1979. 240p.

This collection of essays is based on lectures delivered at the 'monumental guide course' organized by the Hotel Management and Training Centre in 1978. The contributions, by leading authorities in their fields, cover religion, archaeology and history, anthropology and art. Although the illustrations are few, and of poor quality, the book is useful as a basic reference tool. Especially noteworthy are: the treatment of archaeology by Babu Krishna Rijal, (p. 105-27); the chapter on Tantric religion by S. Shamsheer Jang Bahadur Rana; the outline of Buddhism in Nepal by John Locke, discussing the *viharas* and the history of the religion in Nepal (p. 26-45); and Ram Niwas Pandey's contribution on art, with sections on generalities, the development of Brahminical and Buddhist art, woodwork, manuscript painting, painted scrolls and bronzes.

**16 The Himalayan kingdoms – Bhutan, Sikkim & Nepal.**

Pradyumna P. Karan, William P. Jenkins. Princeton, New Jersey; Toronto: Van Nostrand, 1963. 144p. 7 maps. bibliog.

This general survey, which is rather dated, was written in the aftermath of the Indo-Chinese border conflict and is particularly concerned with the continuing threat to the region posed by China and with Indian and American attempts to meet it.

**17 Nepal and the Gurkhas.**

R. C. Leonard, A. V. A. Mercer. London: Her Majesty's Stationery Office, 1965. 157p. map. bibliog.

Based on the 1936 version by C. John Morris (q.v.), with some additional material, this is the latest publicly available edition of the Ministry of Defence's official handbook for officers serving with Gurkha regiments. It gives basic information about the country and people of Nepal, but does not reflect recent research on either the history or the anthropology of the country. Information on customs, folklore and costume is useful, and the appendices include an account of Nepalese kinship terminology. There is a brief account of indigenous games (p. 55-6).

**18 The Gurkhas: their manners, customs and country.**

W. Brook Northey, C. John Morris. London: Bodley, 1928. 282p. map. bibliog. Reprinted, New Delhi: Cosmo, 1974. (Landmarks in Indian Anthropology, vol. 57).

This book was written by two serving Gurkha officers. Although outdated as a general survey of Nepalese society, it includes accounts of journeys in the 1920s by Morris in north-east Nepal and by Northey in the west-central area towards Palpa, as well as a description of Maharaja Chandra Shamsheer's abolition of slavery. The authors are not entirely uncritical of the Rana régime, but suggest that 'really the government cannot be a bad government when the people all appear to be so happy', and that the unspoiled nature of the Nepalese people is largely due to the country's isolationist policy. A chapter on language, by Ralph Lilley Turner, is included.

## **The Country and its People**

### **19 Nepal in perspective.**

Pashupati Shumshere Jung Bahadur Rana, Kamal Prakash Malla.  
Kathmandu: Centre for Economic Development and Administration,  
1973. 310p. 2 maps. bibliog.

This collection of essays by leading experts will be superseded in late 1989 or 1990 by the publication of a similar, updated collection edited by Malla. However, this earlier work should still be available in many libraries and the background essays on the geography, history and culture of Nepal provide useful summaries. In their introduction, the authors stress the importance of redressing the élitism of Nepalese society.

### **20 Nepal: profile of a Himalayan kingdom.**

Leo E. Rose, John T. Scholz. Boulder, Colorado: Westview; New  
Delhi: Selectbook Service, 1980. 144p. map. bibliog. (Nations of  
Contemporary Asia).

This concise but very readable overview includes chapters on: environment and history; political development from 1951 to the end of 1979; traditional society and its evolution under the panchayat system; development efforts; and international relations. The authors provide a particularly clear account of the essentials of the political system, both past and present, and of the constraints on Nepal's economic relations imposed by her dependence on India. It should be noted, however, that since 1980 there has been some success in trade diversification.

### **21 An introduction to Nepal.**

Rishikesh Shaha. Kathmandu: Ratna Pustak Bhandar, 1975. 374p.  
bibliog.

A useful general survey, including chapters on: people; history; religion; art and architecture; the main trends in cultural history; the economy, trade and emigration; and the process of nation building.

### **22 Nepal – a miscellany.**

Madhusudhan Murari Thakur. Foreword by Soorya Bahadur Shakya,  
introduction by Rama Prasad Manandhar. Kathmandu: Uttam  
Kunwar, 1975. 71p.

A slender but interesting collection of articles published in *The Rising Nepal* (q.v.) between 1969 and 1975. It includes pieces on the meeting of East and West in Kathmandu, and a journey along the old Rana road from the *tarai* to Kathmandu. There are also essays on the poets Gopal Prasad Rimal and Bal Krishna Sama, as well as on the historian Naraharinath Yogi and the art historian Lain Bangdel. The author, an Indian university professor from the Mithila region which straddles the Bihar-Nepal border, has spent considerable time living and working in Nepal since the early 1960s.



**23 Area handbook for Nepal, Bhutan and Sikkim.**

US Army. Contributions by George L. Harris, Jackson A. Giddens, Thomas E. Lux, Frederica M. Bunge, Frances Chadwick Rintz, Harvey H. Smith. Washington, DC: US Army, 1973. 2nd ed. 431p. 17 maps. bibliog.

This handbook, prepared for the Foreign Area Studies Division of the American University in Washington, DC, is out-of-date as a general account, but includes basic background information and details of events up to November 1972, with an emphasis on US aid.

**The Gurkhas: A handbook for the Indian Army.**

See item no. 343.

**People of Nepal.**

See item no. 323.

# Travellers' Accounts

**24 On India's frontier or Nepal, the Gurkhas' mysterious land.**

Henry Ballantine. London: George Redway, 1896. 185p. map.  
Reprinted, Delhi: Daya, 1985.

An account, by an American businessman resident in India, of a journey to Kathmandu from Sagauli, north India, in 1885. He describes an interview with Maharaja Ranoddip Singh Rana, the arrival of refugees at the British Residency when the Maharaja was assassinated a few days later, and his own subsequent meeting with the Shamsheer brothers, at which they accepted his offer to produce a scheme of improvement for the city's water supply. The author is strongly critical of the British policy of preventing commercial penetration of the frontier region and providing military support to traditional régimes in order to maintain a buffer state zone.

**25 A journey of literary and archaeological research in Nepal and northern India during the winter of 1884-5.**

Cecil Bendall. Cambridge, England: Cambridge University Press, 1886. 100p.

Bendall records a short visit to Nepal in search of inscriptions and Sanskrit texts. The inscriptions and king lists transcribed from manuscript colophons in this book have been superseded by later collections, but the text remains interesting for the information that Maharaja Ranoddip Singh was able to join in the Sanskrit conversation between Bendall and the palace *pandit*; such an ability was rare even among the priests. The Indian section of the work is marked by sympathy and appreciation for native colleagues, and criticism of the attitude towards them shown by resident Britons.

**26 Unknown Nepal.**

R. N. W. Bishop. Edited by J. E. Cunningham. London: Luzac, 1952. 124p.

This book includes an account of a journey made by the author from Darjeeling in India to Ilam in eastern Nepal, and of Sir Cluthro Mackenzie's trip from Rexaul to

Kathmandu. There is some general information on customs and on the Gurkhas' record in war. Although not an outstanding work, it is interesting for its impressions of the country immediately before the fall of the Rana régime. The book contains contributions by Mackenzie and Theon C. Wilkinson and an appendix, by Allen D. Percival, which gives a rather unsophisticated account of the songs sung by Gurkha troops.

**27 Le Népal et les européens. (Nepal and the Europeans.)**

Lucette Boulnois. *Revue Française d'Histoire d'Outre-Mer*, vol. lxiii, no. 230 (1976), p. 44-74.

The first part of this article serves as a partial guide to the early travellers' accounts with a survey of European visitors to Nepal from the 17th-century missionaries onwards, and reference to some of the early European maps of the country. The author also discusses Jang Bahadur Rana's 1850 visit to Europe, the first French visitors to Nepal, and the impressions of the country received and reflected by technical experts, tourists, research workers and others since 1950. The article ends with summaries in French and English.

**28 Picturesque Nepal.**

Percy Brown. London: Adam & Charles Black, 1912. 205p. map.  
Reprinted, New Delhi: Archives Books, 1989.

This work was reprinted in 1989 as *The borderland of Nepal*. It consists of: an historical summary; a graphic description of a journey from the plains to Kathmandu; accounts of the main monuments of the Kathmandu Valley and of major festivals; and an enthusiastic discussion of Newar art. Although outdated as a general account, the book remains of interest for its descriptive writing and, in particular, its depiction of crowds at festivals and of womens' costumes. It is illustrated with black-and-white photographs and watercolours.

**29 Himalayan wanderer: the reminiscences of Brigadier-General C. G.**

**Bruce, C. B., late Gurkha rifles.**

Charles Granville Bruce. London: Alexander Maclehose, 1934. 309p.

This book is chiefly an account of mountaineering in different parts of the Indian Himalaya and the Alps. There is a brief mention of the Everest expeditions which the author organized in the 1920s in which, as was always the case before 1951, the mountain was approached from Tibet. Chapter ten recounts visits to Nepal in 1907 and 1914, including descriptions of big game hunting in the *tarai*. The author expresses support for maintaining Nepal's isolation to preserve her 'excessively interesting, though anomalous condition'. The work is illustrated with a small number of black-and-white photographs.

**30 Rough notes on the state of Nepal, its government, army and resources.**

Orfeur Cavenagh. Calcutta: W. Palmer, 1851. 264p. map.

An account of the country by the British soldier attached as liaison officer to the party of prime minister Jang Bahadur Rana on his 1850 visit to Europe. Much of the book is based on the author's conversations with Jang and other Nepalese, and on his own observations when he returned with the party to Kathmandu. It includes an account of the 1846 Kot Massacre differing from the story that Jang had earlier told other British officials.

## **Travellers' Accounts**

### **31 Reminiscences of an Indian official – in Burma, China, India and the kingdom of Nepal.**

Orfeur Cavenagh. London: W. H. Allen, 1884. 372p.

Chapter four (p. 106-81), 'The Nepalese Embassy', is a detailed narrative of the author's time with Jang Bahadur Rana in India and Europe. The book was written after Jang's death, and provides a considerably fuller account of the embassy than the author's earlier work, *Rough notes on the state of Nepal, its government, army and resources* (q.v.), although the later book contains much less information on Nepal itself.

### **32 Journey to Lhasa and Central Tibet.**

Sarat Chandra Das. Edited by W. W. Rockhill. London: John Murray, 1904. 328p. map.

The author, a celebrated Bengali scholar and explorer, narrates his journey from Darjeeling to Shigatse and Lhasa in 1881-82. On the outward leg, he travelled through north-east Nepal, and he includes a few observations on the customs of the Limbu people as well as a straightforward chronicle of his movements. This book was first published in 1901.

### **33 Nepal, land of mystery; adventures in Burma, China, India and the kingdom of Nepal.**

Hassoldt Davis. London: Robert Hale, 1942. 345p.

The author of this work accompanied Armand Denis and Leila Roosevelt Denis on a visit to Nepal in 1939, when they became the first professional film-makers to be allowed into the country. The Nepal section comprises just over half the book and is often sensational in tone, with accounts of highly dramatic incidents, such as an apparently miraculous cure at Buddhanilkante, which may have been embroidered by the author's imagination. Nonetheless, Davis gives an excellent and extended description of the difficulties of reaching Kathmandu before roads fit for cars were constructed, and also draws a vivid picture of the close supervision under which European visitors had to operate. The book is one of the most readable of the pre-1950 accounts. It was reissued in 1943 (London: Readers Union, 308p.) and published in an abridged version by Robert Hale in 1959.

### **34 The travels of Ippolito Desideri of Pistoia, S. J., 1712–1727.**

Ippolito Desideri. Translated by Janet Ross, edited by Filippo de Filippi, introduced by C. Wessely. London: George Routledge & Sons, 1937.

2nd revised ed. 478p. map. bibliog. Reprinted, Taipei, Taiwan: Ch'eng Wen, 1971.

This work is mainly concerned with Tibet but also (p. 309-22) contains descriptions of the author's journey through Nepal in December 1721 to January 1722, when he was recalled by the Vatican following the decision to transfer responsibility for missionary work in Tibet to the Capuchins. Desideri gives an interesting insight into the relationship between king and subjects in Kathmandu, describing how the king was only able to trust Muslim retainers brought in from outside the country, and how popular rebellion was linked with conflict within the royal family. He also comments on the highly ritualized nature of warfare between the valley states: as soon as one side sustained any casualties it would immediately sue for peace. An appendix provides a report by Father Emanuel Freyre, who reached Lhasa with Desideri in 1716 but journeyed south through Nepal in the same year. Freyre and the Capuchin

missionaries in Kathmandu at that time were themselves almost victims of civil unrest, as the blue robes which they had been given by an Indian Muslim were believed to have angered the gods and caused an outbreak of plague. Additional material on Desideri (in the original Italian) can be found in Luciano Petech, *I missionari italiani nel Tibet e Nepal* (q.v.).

### **35 Journey of a winter's tour in India with a visit to the court of Nepaul.**

Francis Egerton. London: John Murray, 1852. 2 vols.

This account was written by a sea captain who travelled in India as a tourist. Egerton was invited to visit Nepal by Jang Bahadur Rana, who was then returning from his journey to Europe, but he actually reached Kathmandu ahead of Jang's party. The Nepal section of the work (vol. 1, p. 176-251) is especially interesting for the descriptions of meetings with individual Nepalese, including the *rajguru* ('state preceptor'), Jang's brother Bam Bahadur, and an English speaking member of Jang's entourage.

### **36 Nepal and the Nepalese.**

G. H. D. Gimlette. London: H. F. & C. Witherby, 1928. 261p.

Consisting mostly of notes written whilst the author was Residency Surgeon in Kathmandu from 1883 to 1887, this work begins with a general account of the country and its history, but its major value lies in its description of contemporary politics, and in particular of the 1885 *coup*, during which surviving members of Jang Bahadur's family took refuge in the Residency. This book was printed for private circulation only but is available at the India Office Library in London.

### **37 An account of the kingdom of Nepal and of the territories annexed to this domain by the house of Gorkha.**

Francis Buchanan Hamilton. Edinburgh: Archibald Constable, 1819.

365p. map. Reprinted, New Delhi: Manjushri, 1971; Asian Educational Services, 1986.

Written by an East India Company professional author, who was on the staff of Captain Knox during his 1802-03 stay in Kathmandu, this work is based on extensive interviews both inside and outside the country. Supplementing and partially correcting Kirkpatrick's *An account of the kingdom of Nepaul* (q.v.), it is especially valuable for the history of the hill principalities before the Gurkha conquest, and for the author's comments on the relationship between the king and the leading families in unified Nepal. The book also includes a detailed meteorological record of the period that Hamilton spent in Kathmandu. The 1971 reprint includes an introduction by Marc Gaborieau.

### **38 Trans-Himalaya: discoveries and adventures in Tibet.**

Sven Anders Hedin. London: Macmillan, 1909. 2 vols. 10 maps.

Presents a Swedish explorer's account of his journeys in Tibet in 1906-08. In volume two (p. 72-82) he describes how, in summer 1907, he crossed the frontier into Mustang, a Tibetan principality subject to Nepal, but spent only one night there. Volume one (p. 374) has a brief description of the Nepalese consul at Shigatse (Tashilunpo), the Panchen Lama's seat in south-east Tibet, and of his duties in assisting Nepalese merchants and pilgrims there.

## **Travellers' Accounts**

### **39 Travels in Ceylon and central India, including Nepal and other parts of the Himalayas to the borders of Tibet.**

W. Hoffmeister. Preface by C. Ritter, edited by A. Hoffmeister.

Edinburgh: William P. Kennedy; London: Hamilton, Adams, 1848.

521p. map.

Comprises a collection of letters from the physician accompanying Prince Waldemar of Prussia on his travels, posthumously edited and translated from the German. The sixth letter (p. 206-43) describes a visit to Kathmandu in early 1845. A careful description of the journey from the plains, providing considerable botanical detail, is followed by an account of the party's reception at court and of a visit to Nagarkot, north-west of the Kathmandu Valley. Of particular interest is the picture of the seeming dominance of Mathbar Singh Thapa, who was to be assassinated on the king's orders three months later. Separate appendices on Himalayan flora and fauna are supplied.

### **40 Himalayan journals – notes of a naturalist in Bengal, the Sikkim and Nepal Himalayas, the Khasia mountains etc.**

J. D. Hooker. London: Murray, 1854. 2 vols. 2 maps. Revised and

Reprinted, New Delhi: Today's & Tomorrow's, 1987.

A naturalist records a botanical expedition in 1849 which included a journey along the passes leading from Tibet into eastern Nepal. Hooker relates details of the seizure, by the Sikkimese, of himself and his travelling companion, the Superintendent of Darjeeling (a former Assistant Resident at Kathmandu). This event led to the British annexation of the Sikkim Raja's territory in the plains. There is a general account of Darjeeling and the book is illustrated by attractive woodcuts. Editions of the 'Himalayan journals' were produced in 1855 (London: Murray) and 1905 (London: Ward, Lock), and reprinted in 1969, 1974 and 1980. The results of the author's still-valuable botanical work in Nepal are included in his *Flora of British India* (London: India Office, 1875-97).

### **41 Diversions of an Indian political.**

R. L. Kennion. Edinburgh; London: Blackwood, 1932. 323p.

The four chapters concerned with Nepal (p. 195-254) describe the author's journey to Kathmandu, his reception by Maharaja Chandra Shamsher as British Resident in 1920, and some of his subsequent experiences. The major focus is on big game hunting, but Kennion also displays the enthusiasm for Rana rule and hostility to the influence of the Indian national movement typical of many British officials at the time. (The latter attitude leads him into suggesting that an independent India would be a likely victim of Nepali aggression.) There is a description of a visit to the Arsenal Museum at Chauni on the western outskirts of Kathmandu and some historical material on Jang Bahadur Rana prompted by the exhibits there.

- 42 **China monumentis, qua sacris qua profanis nec non variis naturae & artis spectaculis aliarumque rerum memorabilium argumentis illustrata.** (China illustrated through its monuments, both sacred and profane, and by diverse wonders of nature and of art together with accounts of other memorable things.)

Athanasius Kircher. Amsterdam: Jacob Meurs, 1667. 2nd ed. 249p. map. Reprinted, with introduction by H. K. Kulōy, Kathmandu: Ratna Pustak Bhandar, 1979. (Bibliotheca Himalayica, Series 1, vol. 24).

In this first book in any European language to refer to Nepal, the author gives a brief account of the visit to the Kathmandu Valley in 1661-62 by the Jesuit Fathers Albert Dorville and Joannes Grueber, who travelled overland from Peking, where they had been working at the Peking Observatory, to Agra in India. The book is also noteworthy as the first in Europe to set out the Devanagari script in which Nepali, Hindi and Sanskrit are written. In the 1979 edition, a facsimile of the original is accompanied by translations of the table of contents and of the main references to Nepal. Van Tuyl's translation appeared first in the *Bulletin of the Tibet Society*, vol. IV, no. 1 (1970), p. 4-27.

- 43 **An account of the kingdom of Nepaul being the substance of observations made during a mission to that country in the year 1773.**

William Kirkpatrick. London: W. Miller, 1811. 388p. map. Reprinted, New Delhi: Manjushri, 1969; Asian Publication Services, 1975; Asian Education Service, 1986.

This is the first book-length account of the country, written by an army officer sent to Kathmandu to attempt mediation in the Nepal-China war. The contents include: a detailed itinerary of the route from the plains to Kathmandu via Hetaura and Chisapani; information on institutions and customs; Nepali and Newari word lists; documents relating to the mission; and a translation of an important local chronicle (*vamsavali*) no longer extant in the original.

- 44 **Tibet and Nepal.**

A. Henry Savage Landor. London: A. & C. Black, 1905. 233p. map.

The author supposedly gives an account of his journey into Tibet from Almorah, in the north west frontier province of India, returning through north west Nepal. He claims to have scaled a 23,490 ft. peak wearing only a serge suit "of the thinnest tropical material". As his general observations on the country contain nothing that could not have been taken from literary sources, most if not all of his adventures are probably imaginary. The book nevertheless has a certain amusement value.

- 45 **Nepal.**

Perceval Landon. London: Constable, 1928. 2 vols. 5 maps. bibliog.

Reprinted, Kathmandu: Ratna Pustak Bhandar, 1976, 1987, 2 vols.

This study was commissioned by Maharaja Chandra Shamsher and includes: a history of the country to 1877; a description of the Kathmandu Valley and its monuments; a shorter survey (from second-hand information) of Nepal outside the Valley; and an account of the Shamsher maharajas, concentrating chiefly on Chandra himself. The historical material is sometimes highly misleading, but the section on Chandra is informative, though very partisan. Much useful information is presented in the many appendices, including: heraldic details, words and music of the king's and maharaja's anthems; texts and translations of the Ashokan inscriptions at Lumbini and on the

## **Travellers' Accounts**

Nagali Sagar river near Niglihawa; and lists of Residents and Residency Surgeons at Kathmandu and of the European visitors admitted to the country between 1881 and 1925 (usually around six a year). There is also an account of early coinage by H. G. Bannerji, full genealogical charts for both Shah and Rana families, and detailed maps of eastern and western Nepal.

### **46 The journals of Honoria Lawrence: India observed, 1837-54.**

Edited by John Lawrence, Audrey Woodwiss. London: Hodder & Stoughton, 1980. 256p. map.

Honoria Lawrence, wife of Henry Lawrence ('Lawrence of Lucknow'), became the first European woman to live in Nepal, when she joined her husband in Kathmandu, where he was Resident from 1843 to 1845. The chapter on Nepal is humorously and perceptively written, providing a vivid picture of life in the small Residency community, together with impressions of leading Nepalese personalities.

### **47 With a king in the clouds.**

Erika Leuchtag. London: Hutchinson, 1958. 236p.

An account of the author's experiences in Kathmandu in 1948 when she stayed at the royal palace as physiotherapist to King Tribhuvan's senior wife. The king confided in her his wish to remove the Ranas from power and she claims to have played a key rôle in communicating this to the Indian embassy. Although she has probably exaggerated her own part in events, the book gives an interesting insight into the atmosphere at court in the final years of the Rana régime, and is also an affectionate tribute to Tribhuvan himself. It ends with an account of the king's funeral in 1955, at which the author was not present.

### **48 Le Népal – étude historique d'un royaume hindou. (Nepal – historical study of a Hindu kingdom.)**

Sylvain Lévi. Paris: Ernest Leroux, 1905, 1908. 3 vols. bibliog.

This classic study by a Sanskrit scholar was reprinted (vols. 1 and 2 only) with an introduction by Marc Gaborieau and Gérard Toffin (Kathmandu: Raj de Condappa, Librairie Francaise; Paris: Le toit du monde, Editions Errance, 1985.). The volumes are based on a careful analysis of all the European, Nepalese, Tibetan and Chinese documents then available to the author, and on his own observations during a two month visit to Kathmandu in 1901. Lévi's diary of the visit is included in the second volume. Still of value, in the remainder of the work, are his opening survey of the sweep of Nepalese history, with its characterization of the country as an 'India in the making'; his summary of the literary material, including extracts from the earliest descriptions of the country by Chinese travellers in the 7th century and by European missionaries in the 17th century; and his general observations on the country and its society. The 1985 reprint omits the now-obsolete epigraphical material in the third volume, while the editors' introduction includes a brief biography of Lévi and a survey of subsequent work on the history, anthropology and art of Nepal. Part of Lévi's reconstruction of Nepal's ancient history (volume two, p. 61-114) has been reprinted in English with a commentary by Theodore Riccardi Junior, in *Kailash* vol. 3, no. 1 (1975), p. 5-60, and translations of various extracts have been published in *Ancient Nepal* no. 25 (October 1974) onwards. Most recently, a translation of Lévi's Nepal diary has appeared in *Ancient Nepal*, nos. 81-97 (1984-1986/7) and a translation of volume 3 of *Le Népal* (Inscriptions) has commenced in *Ancient Nepal*, nos. 98-99 (1987).



- 49 **Sketches from Nepal, historical and descriptive with anecdotes of the court life and wild sports of the country in the time of Maharaja Jang Bahadur, G.C.B., to which is added an essay on Nipalese Buddhism and illustrations of religious monuments, architecture and scenery from the author's own drawings.**

Hector Ambrose Oldfield. London: W. H. Allen, 1880. 2 vols.

Reprinted, New Delhi: Cosmo, 1974.

Presents the posthumously published writings of the Residency Surgeon at Kathmandu from 1850 to 1863, who became a personal friend of Jang Bahadur Rana. The historical section (mostly in volume one) extends to Nepal's assistance to the British against the Indian revolt of 1857, and is based predominately on Residency records. The book also includes an account of the major festivals in the Kathmandu Valley, both Buddhist and Hindu. The material on Buddhism is largely taken from Hodgson's work.

- 50 **Views of Nepal 1851-64.**

Hector Ambrose Oldfield, Margaret Alicia Oldfield. Kathmandu:

Ratna Pustak Bhandar, 1976. [50p.] (Bibliotheca Himalayica, Series III, 5).

An interesting selection of thirty-six water-colours of the Kathmandu Valley by a Residency Surgeon and his wife, the originals of which are held in the India Office Library, India. Some of the paintings were previously published in *Sketches from Nepal* (q.v.).

- 51 **A journey to Kathmandu with the camp of Jung Bahadur.**

Lawrence Oliphant. London: John Murray, 1852. 214p.

Oliphant was one of the Europeans invited to join prime minister Jang Bahadur Rana on his journey home after his visit to Europe. He seems to have got on particularly well both with Jang and his brother Bam Bahadur, and his lively account is interesting for its personal glimpses both of them and of other members of their party.

- 52 **I missionari italiani nel Tibet e nel Nepal.** (Italian missionaries in Tibet and Nepal).

Edited by Luciano Petech. Rome: Libreria dello Stato, 1952-6. 7 vols.

(Il nuovo ramusio: raccolta di viaggi, testi e documenti relativi ai rapporti fra l'Europa e l'oriente a cura dell'istituto italiano per il medio ed estremo oriente, II).

Comprises a collection of reports and letters written by Italian missionaries in Nepal and Tibet in the 18th century. The first four volumes cover the Capuchins, who maintained a presence in Nepal through most of the period from 1715 to their expulsion by Prithvi Narayan Shah. The remaining volumes are concerned with the Jesuit Ippolito Desideri who travelled through Nepal in 1721. The editor provides explanatory notes and introductory material, including a brief account of European knowledge of the Himalaya from the earliest times, and a history of Tibet and Nepal in the 18th century. The documents illustrate both the general condition of the country and the contemporary politics of the Newar kingdoms of the Kathmandu Valley.

## **Travellers' Accounts**

### **53 Account of the kingdom of Nepal.**

Giuseppe de Rovato. Translated by John Shore. *Asiatick Researches*, vol. 2 (1790), p. 307-22. Reprinted, Varanasi, India: Bharat-Bharati, 1972, vol. 2 (of 2 vols.), p. 241-53.

Father de Rovato was one of the Capuchin missionaries permitted to live in Nepal during the last years of the Malla period. In this book he describes the country and its conquest by Prithvi Narayan Shah. The author had personal reason for hostility towards the conqueror, as the missionaries were expelled by him, but the emphasis on Prithvi's cruelty is nevertheless probably justified by the facts. The bulk of the article was reprinted as an appendix to William Kirkpatrick's *Account of the kingdom of Nepaul* (q.v.).

### **54 Narrative of a five years' residence at the court of Nepaul.**

Thomas Smith. London: Colburn, 1852. 2 vols.

This account is written by a former army officer who served in Kathmandu as commander of the Residency escort and as Assistant Resident under Residents Hodgson and Lawrence from 1841 to 1845. After dismissal for misconduct and imprisonment as a debtor, Smith produced these memoirs to cash in on the interest in Nepal aroused by prime minister Jang Bahadur Rana's visit to London in 1850. His account of Nepal is largely plagiarized, and his treatment of the political crisis of the early 1840s is confused or even deliberately distorted. However, the account does contain some interesting anecdotal material and a useful description of Jang's visit.

### **55 Travels in Nepal and Sikkim.**

Richard Temple. Edited and introduced by J. Gordon Temple. Kathmandu: Ratna Pustak Bhandar. 131p. 3 maps. (Bibliotheca Himalayica, Series I, vol. 20).

This account was originally published in *Journals kept in Hyderabad, Kashmir, Sikkim and Nepal* (London: W. H. Allen, 1877, vol. 2, p. 151-262), and in 'The Lake region of Sikkim, or the frontier of Tibet', *Proceedings of the Royal Geographical Society*, no. 6 (June 1881), p. 326-340. In his introduction, the author's great-nephew describes Richard Temple's career as an Indian administrator. The Nepal section includes a general sketch of the country (which is not of great value), and impressions of his visit in May 1876. Temple gives some details on the population of the Kathmandu Valley and of state revenues, and an assessment of the army. There are contemporary illustrations, including some by the author.

### **56 Nepal Himalaya.**

Harold William Tilman, Oleg Polunin. Cambridge, England: Cambridge University Press, 1952. 271p. maps.

This book describes three journeys made from 1949 to 1950, just before the downfall of the Rana régime, to the Langtang, Annapurna and Everest regions. Polunin's appendix gives an account of the natural history of the Langtang Valley, listing plants collected during the 1949 expedition and birds sighted in the valley and its neighbouring area. The book is illustrated with sixty-one photographs taken by the author. It is one of the works by Tilman reprinted in *Seven mountain travel books* (q.v.).

**57 Among the Himalayas.**

Laurence Austine Waddell. London: Archibald Constable; Philadelphia, Pennsylvania: J. R. Lippincott, 1900. 2nd ed. 452p. maps. bibliog. Reprinted, Kathmandu: Ratna Pustak Bhandar, 1978. (Bibliotheca Himalayica, Series I, vol. 18); Delhi: K. M. Mittal, 1979.

An account of travels in the 1890s in India and Sikkim, including sections on the Nepal and Tibet borders. Chapter nine gives a general account of Gurkha customs, with some inaccuracies. There is also a detailed discussion of Mount Everest and other major peaks. The author is an advocate of a 'forward' policy in Tibet to forestall the Russians, and exhibits particularly strong prejudices in favour of the mountain peoples and against those of the Indian plains.

**58 The visit of Prince Waldemar of Prussia to Nepal in February and March 1845.**

Waldemar of Prussia. Edited by Alexander von Humboldt, translated from the German by T. P. Kvaerne. *Kailash*, vol. 7, no. 1 (1979), p. 35-50.

This account was extracted from the posthumously published account by Prince Waldemar of his travels in South Asia, entitled *Zur Erinnerung an die Reise des Prinzen Waldemar von Preussen nach Indien in den Jahren 1844-6* (Berlin: [n.p.], 1853, 2 vols.). The description of the visit is not as good as that of the Prince's physician, W. Hoffmeister, *Travels in Ceylon and central India, including Nepal and other parts of the Himalayas to the border of Tibet* (q.v.), but the contemporary illustrations are interesting.

**59 On Yuan Chwang's travels in India.**

Thomas Watters. Edited by T. W. Rhys Davis, J. W. Bushell. London: Royal Asiatic Society, 1904, 1905. 2 vols. (Oriental Translation Fund New Series, XIV). Reprinted, Delhi: Munshi Ram Manohar Lal, 1961.

The authors provide a translation of and commentary on the Chinese account of Hsüan-Tsang's 7th-century pilgrimage to visit the sacred sites of Buddhism and to secure copies of the scriptures. There is a single paragraph (vol. 2, p. 83-5) describing King Amsuvarman (known through inscriptions in the Kathmandu Valley) as the author of a 'treatise on sounds'. The pilgrim apparently did not visit the Kathmandu Valley himself, though interpretation of this point is disputed, but relied on reports heard in north India. He did, however, travel to Lumbini, the birthplace of Buddha, which lies within the boundary of present-day Nepal.

**60 Sketch of the portion of Nepal open to Europeans.**

Daniel Wright. Calcutta: Superintendent of Government Printing, 1872. 30p.

This rather unsympathetic essay was written on the basis of the author's experience as Residency Surgeon in Kathmandu from 1863. It is also included in Wright's *History of Nepal* (q.v.), which is more readily available than the separate publication.

## **Travellers' Accounts**

**Essays on the languages, literature and religion of Nepal and Tibet.**

*See item no. 11.*

**Miscellaneous essays on Indian subjects.**

*See item no. 12.*

**Mountains of the gods.**

*See item no. 61.*

**Exploring the Himalayas.**

*See item no. 62.*

**Les passes himalayennes. Religieux, marchands et militaires. XVII-XVIIIe siècles.** (The Himalayan passes. Priests, merchants and soldiers. 17th-18th centuries.)

*See item no. 165.*

**Round Kangchenjunga: a narrative of mountain travel and exploration.**

*See item no. 734.*

**The epic of Mount Everest.**

*See item no. 746.*

**Everest: the challenge.**

*See item no. 747.*

# Geography and Geology

## General

### 61 **Mountains of the gods.**

Ian Cameron. London: Century; New Delhi: Times Books International, 1984. 284p. maps. bibliog.

This well-written and attractively illustrated account of the exploration of the Himalaya as a whole, begins with Hindu pilgrims in search of the source of India's sacred rivers and with Alexander the Great's penetration of the Hindu Kush, and ends with the conquest of the major peaks. Appendices include a detailed chronology, a list of parks and protected areas within the regions, and a brief account of the Himalayan peoples.

### 62 **Exploring the Himalayas.**

Ian Cameron. London: Longman, 1985. 60p. maps. bibliog. (Royal Geographical Society Exploration Series).

This brief treatment of the subject matter of Cameron's *Mountains of the gods* (q.v.) places greater emphasis on the 'Great Game' (British attempts to penetrate Central Asia in preemption of what was seen as a Russian threat to India), including the Younghusband expedition to Lhasa in 1904. Cameron stresses the psychological importance to the peoples of South Asia of the Himalayan range as a barrier against invasion, and highlights the present ecological threat.

### 63 **Urban growth and urbanisation in least-developed countries: the experience of Nepal, 1952-71.**

Dennis Conway, Nanda Shrestha. *Asian Profile*, vol. 8, no. 5 (Oct. 1980), p. 477-93. map. bibliog.

This comparative study of the growth of the fifteen principal urban centres in Nepal shows how ranking within this group has shifted. The authors emphasize that Kathmandu, although by far the largest of these centres, has been growing relatively slowly. Because of population movements within the countryside, the Kathmandu

## **Geography and Geology. General**

region now has a lower ratio of urban to rural population than in the 1960s. The nature of employment within the towns is also analysed and it is demonstrated that in some of the towns agriculture remains the principal occupation.

### **64 Geology of the Himalayas.**

Augusto Gansser. London; New York; Sydney: Interscience, 1964.  
289p. maps. bibliog. (Regional Geology Series).

This work is a technical account of the geology of the entire Himalayan region. One chapter (p. 145-68) deals specifically with Nepal, whilst the final section treats the region as a whole, including its history. A less specialist account can be found in *Himalayas* (q.v.), of which Gansser is co-author.

### **65 The land.**

Harka Gurung. In: *Nepal in perspective*. Edited by Pashupati Shumshere Jung Bahadur Rana, Kamal Prakash Malla. Kathmandu: Centre for Economic Development and Administration, 1973, p. 25-33.

This straightforward account of physical geography emphasizes the importance of the hill ranges and the river valleys as unifying factors in the development of the country.

### **66 Formation, population and exploration of the Mount Everest region.**

Toni Hagen, Gunter-Oscar Dyhrenfurth, Christoph von Fürer-Haimendorf, Erwin Schneider. Translated from the German by E. Noel Bowman. London: Oxford University Press, 1963. 197p. maps.

This study includes: a treatment of Himalayan geology by Hagen (with a survey of previous interpretations of the problem); an account of the Sherpas by Haimendorf; a brief survey by Dyhrenfurth of the expeditions to the region; and an introduction by Schneider to the 1: 25,000 Mount Everest map that he produced during the 1955 international Deutscher Alpenverein Himalayan expedition and which was published in 1959 by the Osterreichischer Alpenverein and the Deutsche Forschungsgemeinschaft. A copy of the map itself is included in a pocket inside the rear cover of the book.

### **67 Himalayan geology.**

Delhi; Dehra Dun, India: Wadia Institute of Himalayan Geology, 1971-. annual.

All papers in this annual publication are headed by an abstract and most focus on the Indian Himalaya, although there are some contributions on the range generally and on Nepal. The Wadia Institute of Himalayan Geology, which publishes the annual, was originally located in Delhi, but moved in 1976 to Dehra Dun, in the Indian Himalaya west of Nepal.

### **68 Physical and cultural geography of Nepal.**

Pradyumna P. Karan. With the collaboration of William M. Jenkins. Lexington, Kentucky: University of Kentucky Press, 1960. 100p. 35 maps. bibliog.

Although much of this account is now outdated, and the chapter on Nepal's history is marred by errors, the book nevertheless gives a clear picture of both the physical

setting and the human geography of the 1950s, aided by clear maps and good black-and-white photographs.

**69 The Himalaya: aspects of change.**

Edited by J. S. Lall, A. D. Moddie. Delhi; New York: Oxford University Press for India International Centre, 1981. 481p. bibliog.

Intended for the general reader as well as the specialist, this collection of papers covers both the Indian and the Nepalese Himalaya. Contributions are divided into three sections: for nature; man; and interrelationships. The volume provides a good coverage of the basic facts of physical and human geography and of present ecological and economic problems. Topics covered include climate, wild life, geology and water resource potential.

**70 The collision between India and Eurasia.**

Peter Molnar, Paul Tapponier. *Scientific American*, vol. 236, no. 4 (April 1977), p. 30-41. maps.

Molnar explains current thinking on the mechanics of continental drift and suggests that major fault lines in central Asia are evidence that the continuing northward drift of the Indian subcontinent, since the original collision with Asia forty million years ago, has been accommodated by China's slipping eastwards under the bed of the Pacific Ocean. This geological movement is responsible for the high incidence of earthquakes in the Himalaya and the regions to the north. The article is illustrated with satellite photographs.

**71 The structure of mountain ranges.**

Peter Molnar. *Scientific American*, vol. 255, no. 1 (July 1986), p. 64-73. map.

The author outlines the different theories put forward to explain how the weight of mountain ranges is supported and describes how the earliest explanations were based on evidence from a survey of the Himalaya undertaken in the mid-19th century. He argues that the weight of the Himalaya is distributed over a wider area by the bending of the lithosphere (the earth's crust together with a portion of the mantle) whilst Tibet is supported by the exceptional thickness of the crust itself. Illustrations include a satellite view of southern Tibet and the Himalaya, and diagrams of the collision of India with Asia and the resulting geological structure. These diagrams provide a fuller picture than in his 1977 article, 'The collision between India and Eurasia' (q.v.).

**72 Himalayas.**

Blanche C. Olschak, Augusto Gansser, Andreas Gruscke. Translated from the German by Katherine Badger, John A. Deleay, Joseph Nykiel. New York: Facts on File, 1988. 288p. 17 maps. bibliog.

Illustrated by 297 colour photographs, this survey covers the whole region, using the major river basins as its organizing principle. There are sections on the Karnali basin (western Nepal) and on Nepal as a whole. Information on geology, cultures and economies is included.

## **Geography and Geology. General**

### **73 Altitude geography: effects of altitude on the geography of Nepal.**

Ram Kumar Panday. Kathmandu: Centre for Altitude Geography, 1987. 408p. 29 maps.

This compendium of information on the physical and human geography of Nepal includes chapters on agriculture, industry and trade. The author argues that the effect of variation in altitude is so crucial that a new branch of geography – ‘altitude geography’ – should be set up. Appendices include an account of the teaching of geography in Nepalese schools and an inventory of more than 1300 peaks above 6,000 metres in the Nepal Himalaya.

### **74 Geology of Nepal.**

Chandra K. Sharma. Kathmandu: Educational Enterprises, 1977. 2nd ed. 164p. maps. bibliog.

This general survey includes discussions of mineral resources and subterranean waters. It is illustrated with black-and-white photographs.

### **75 River systems of Nepal.**

Chandra K. Sharma. Kathmandu: Sangeeta Sharma, 1977. 211p. bibliog. maps.

Illustrated with a number of black-and-white photographs, this survey of Nepal’s rivers includes a general description and inventory, and chapters on special characteristics such as glaciers. Topography, geology, hydrology, the nature of the river channels, and the economic significance of the rivers are all considered. The author’s other works on the geography of Nepal include: *Natural resources of Nepal* (Kathmandu: Sangeeta Sharma, 1978. 272p. maps. bibliog.); and *Groundwater resources of Nepal* (Kathmandu: Mani Ram Sharma, 1974. 140p. maps. bibliog.).

### **76 Cultural geography of Nepal.**

Chandra Bahadur Shrestha. Bhaktapur, Nepal: K. K. Shrestha, K. L. Joshi, 1981. 238p. 17 maps. bibliog.

Although containing a concluding chapter on patterns of cultural variation, this is principally an account of social geography, including discussions of population, settlement distribution and settlement type, and migration patterns. There is some use of technical formulae, but the account is clearly written and of interest to the general reader as well as the specialist.

### **77 Simple geography of Nepal.**

Sharan Hari Shrestha. Kathmandu: Sahayogi, 1983. 141p. 36 maps.

Written as a school textbook, this work may also be of use to the general reader seeking an uncomplicated survey of the subject.

### **78 Geography of Nepal.**

N. P. Thapa, D. P. Thapa. Calcutta: Orient Longmans, 1969. 205p. 31 maps. bibliog.

This simple, descriptive treatment covers physical environment, food and agriculture, people and culture, power and products, and government and regional division.



- 79 **Bibliographie du Népal, volume 3: sciences naturelles, tome 3: géologie de l'Himalaya central.** (Bibliography of Nepal, volume 3, natural sciences, part 3: geology of the central Himalaya.)

I. C. Trincano. Paris: Centre National de la Recherche Scientifique, 1984. 338p.

This bibliography, which in fact covers a wider area than the central Himalaya, contains 1546 items spanning the period 1811 to 1979.

**Nepal Nature's paradise: insight into diverse facets of topography, flora and ecology.**

See item no. 129.

**Nepal Himalaya and change.**

See item no. 697.

**Nepal Himalaya: geo-ecological perspectives.**

See item no. 703.

**Natural hazards and man-made impacts in the Nepal Himalaya.**

See item no. 709.

**Social-economic perspectives of Kathmandu.**

See item no. 714.

## Maps and cartography

- 80 **Bibliographie du Népal, volume 3: sciences naturelles, tome 1: cartes du Népal dans les bibliothèques de Paris et de Londres.** (Bibliography of Nepal, volume 3: natural sciences, part 1: maps of Nepal in Paris and London libraries.)

Lucette Boulnois. Paris: Centre National de la Recherche Scientifique, 1973. 117p.

This bibliography of 371 items includes a chapter on the history of western maps of Nepal, illustrated with photographs of famous maps, among which are Thomas Roe's map of Moghul India and Athanasius Kircher's map of Asia (1667).

- 81 **Carte écologique du Nepal, Annapurna-Dhaulagiri.** (Ecological map of Nepal, Annapurna-Dhaulagiri.)

Jean-François Dobremez, Corneille Jest. Paris: Centre National de la Recherche Scientifique, 1974. p. 147-90. maps. bibliog. (Cahiers népalais – documents, 1)

The principal map, on a scale 1:250,000, is contained in an envelope together with a booklet introducing both the region and the map and including additional sketch maps. The map covers the area north from Pokhara to Mustang and from Manaslu west to Kanjiroba. Colour codings are used to show different types of vegetation. The booklet includes summaries in French, German, Italian and English. This is the first in a series

## **Geography and Geology. Maps and cartography**

of similar maps and booklets produced by Dobremez and various collaborators. They are generally based on the Survey of India quarter-inch (1924-27) and the US Army Map Service 1:250,000 maps, supplemented by the results of fieldwork undertaken in the late 1960s and early 1970s. The remaining titles (*Cahiers népalais – documents*, nos 2, 4-5, 7-12) are: *Jiri-Thodung*, 1975 (no. 2), covering an area of the eastern hills from Jiri in Janakpur zone southwards, scale 1:50,000; *Everest-Kathmandu*, 1974 (no. 4), including the popular trekking route from Kathmandu to Everest base camp, scale 1:250,000; *Région Terai central*, 1974 (no. 5), covering the *tarai* districts from Parsa in Narayani zone east to Saptari in Sagarmatha, scale 1:250,000; *Biratnagar-Kanchenjunga*, 1977 (no. 7), showing the easternmost section of the country, scale 1:250,000; *Ankhu Khola – Trisuli*, 1977 (no. 8), covering a section of the hills north-west of Kathmandu, scale 1:50,000; *Jumla – Saipal*, 1988 (no. 9), including a large section of the Karnali basin around Jumla, scale 1:250,000; *Dhangarhi – Api*, 1984 (no. 10), covering the westernmost section of the kingdom, scale 1:250,000; *Butwal-Mustang*, 1984 (no. 11), showing the region from Butwal at the northern edge of the Tarai northward to the old Tibetan principality of Mustang, scale 1:250,000; *Nepalganj-Dailekh*, 1985 (no. 12), a continuation southwards of the Jumla map, scale 1:250,000.

### **82 Patan city map.**

Revised by R. Finsterwalder, A. Heuberger, B. P. Shrestha. Names by N. Gutschow, A. Heuberger, U. Hoyer, B. P. Shrestha, cartography by Th. Geiss, A. Siebenlechner. Munich: Arbeitsgemeinschaft für vergleichende Hochgebirgsforschung, 1980. (Nepal-Kartenwerk der Arbeitsgemeinschaft für vergleichendes Hochgebirgsforschung, 22).

This detailed map, on a scale 1:7,500, printed in six colours, has the same distributor and sponsor as the publisher's map of Kathmandu, *Kathmandu city* (q.v.). A copy was included with volume 13, section 4 (1981) of *Khumbu Himal*.

### **83 Survey of India.**

Calcutta: Government of India, 1924-27.

This set of twenty-eight 1/4 inch maps covering Nepal was based on the findings of a survey conducted in 1924-27, and has provided the foundation for many subsequent maps. The maps were reproduced in 1963 as the 1:250,000 US Army Map Series, U502 (Washington: Army Map Service), but are now out of print, although black-and-white litho reproductions are still available from the Library of Congress (Photoduplication Service, Washington, DC, 20540), and coloured reproductions of selected sheets are sold by some retailers. The British Ministry of Defence has issued an updated version of the maps in two sheets, on a scale of 1:506:880 (London: Director of Mapping Services, 1977. 5th ed. Series U462). A new survey was carried out by the Survey of India in the 1960s but these maps still remain restricted.

### **84 Patan city.**

Edited by Harka Gurung. Kathmandu: Vista Maps, 1980.

This basic map for tourists, on a scale of 1:4,000, shows the principal streets, buildings of historical interest, bus terminals and hotels. An inset map of Darbar Square is included. The reverse side has a list of street names.

**85 Bhaktapur.**

Edited by Harka Gurung. Kathmandu: Vista Maps, 1980.

Produced along similar lines to the Vista Maps' *Patan city* (q.v.), this map, on a scale of 1:4,000, covers the third town of the Kathmandu Valley. Inset maps of Darbar Square and of Taumadhi are included.

**86 Maps of Nepal: inventory and evaluation.**

Harka Gurung. Kathmandu: New Era, 1981. 77p. bibliog. maps;

Bangkok: White Orchid, 1983. 100p. bibliog. maps.

This survey was undertaken by Nepal's leading geographer, inspired by the interest shown in the exhibition of his own map collection which he organized in 1980. Gurung gives a brief history of the cartography of Nepal undertaken by both Nepalese and Westerners up to 1900, then devotes separate chapters to: political; topographical; regional and relief; geological/glaciological/geomorphological; ecological; photo-panorama; and town maps. He concludes with a consideration of the principal books that contain useful maps. The 1983 edition incorporates colour reproductions of the maps discussed, including the 1983 World Bank *Land use map* (q.v.).

**87 Latest road and trekking map.**

Kathmandu: Himalayan Booksellers, 1987-88.

This map of Nepal, on a scale of 1:940,000, contains insets including a list of principal peaks, a small-scale stereographic representation of the hills, and town plans for Kathmandu-Patan and Pokhara. On the reverse of the map are sketch maps of the main trekking areas, with rivers, ridges, trails and principal settlements marked.

**88 Kathmandu city.**

Revised by U. Hoyer, B. P. Shrestha. Names by A. Höfer in collaboration with N. Gutschow, U. Hoyer, B. Kölver, B. P. Shrestha. Munich: Arbeitsgemeinschaft für vergleichende Hochgebirgsforschung, 1979. (Nepal-Kartenwerk der Arbeitsgemeinschaft für vergleichendes Hochgebirgsforschung, 21).

This detailed map, on a scale of 1:10,000, is based both on an earlier map on the same scale by the same publisher, surveyed in 1971, and on AERMAP Company of Florence's 1:2,000 map surveyed in 1975, with some revisions in 1978. It is recommended in Harka Gurung's *Maps of Nepal* (q.v.) as the best map of Kathmandu yet published. Copies were distributed with volume 13, section 3 (1979) of *Khumbu Himal*. (The map's production was sponsored by the Fritz Thyssen Foundation and it is distributed by GEO-BUCH Verlag, Rosental 6, D-8000 Munich 2, GFR).

**89 Gorkha map, Nepal.**

Survey by Robert Kostka and Erwin Schneider. Evaluation and cartographic concept by Robert Kostka, names and transliteration by Gernot Assum, Niels Gutschow, Günter Unbescheid, Barun Prasad Shrestha, Bishnu Prasad Shrestha. Kathmandu: Nepal Research Centre, 1982.

Produced on a scale of 1:3,000, this plan shows the hill town of Gorkha, home of the ruling Shah dynasty, and its surroundings. A small outline map of Nepal showing Gorkha's location is included.

## **Geography and Geology. Maps and cartography**

### **90 Kathmandu Valley (1:50,000).**

Lehrstuhl für Kartographie und Reproduktionstechnik der Technischen Universität München, with collaboration from R. Finsterwalder, J. Schmeichel, A. Siebewnlechner, E. V. Harsdorf, Andreas Höfer, Baruna Prasad Shrestha. Munich: Arbeitsgemeinschaft für vergleichende Hochgebirgsforschung, 1977. (Nepal-Kartenwerk der Arbeitsgemeinschaft für vergleichendes Hochgebirgsforschung, 1).

This map is one of the series of highly detailed and reliable maps of different regions of Nepal relying on the work of Erwin Schneider and his colleagues. Contours are given at forty metre intervals. It is based on sixteen 1:10,000 maps of different parts of the Valley produced by Schneider's team, and is available in a boxed set together with the original maps and a descriptive pamphlet entitled *Kathmandu Valley maps*. The sixteen base maps are: *Kakani*; *Burhanilkanth*; *Siwapuri*; *Manicur*; *Icangu*; *Kathmandu*; *Gokarna*; *Nagarkot*; *Kirtipur*; *Patan*; *Bhaktapur*; *Banepa*; *Pharphing*; *Bungamati*; *Phulchoki*; and *Panauti*. The maps are based on an original 1970-72 survey, with selective revision in 1974. The field-work was carried out in collaboration with the Nepal government's Department of Housing and Physical Planning and Survey Department, and with the Swiss aid agency (SATA), Kathmandu. Schneider's 1:50,000 scale maps of areas outside the Valley, all published by Kartographische Anstalt Freytag-Berndt und Artaria of Vienna, are: *Khumbu Himal*, 1978 (2nd ed.), including Everest, Cho Oyu and Makalu, with contours at 200 metre intervals, and issued in its first edition with the journal *Khumbu Himal*, vol. 1, section 5 (Oct. 1967); *Lapchikang*, 1974, showing the area immediately east of the northern section of the Chinese road from Kathmandu to the border at Kodari and thus covering the first portion of the trekking route to Everest base camp; *Rowaling Himal*, 1974, covering approximately the region between the *Lapchikang* and *Khumbu Himal* maps (q.v.), originally published with the journal *Khumbu Himal*, vol. 7, section 3 (March 1974); *Shorong/Hinku*, 1974, including approximately the area lying south of Namche Bazar, the major Sherpa settlement and centre for the Everest region, originally published with *Khumbu Himal*, vol. 7, section 4 (Oct. 1974); *Tamba Kosi-Likhu Khola*, 1980 (2nd ed.), a continuation southwards of sections of the *Lapchikang* and *Rowaling* maps (q.v.), originally published with *Khumbu Himal*, vol. 7, section 1 (July 1969); *Dudh Kosi*, 1974, scale 1:50,000, a continuation southwards of the *Shorong Hinku* map (q.v.), originally issued with *Khumbu Himal*, vol. 7, section 4 (Oct. 1974). A map of Everest and its immediate surroundings on a scale of 1:25,000 was first published in 1959 and later included in *Formation, population and exploration of the Mount Everest region* (q.v.).

### **91 Kathmandu-Patan.**

Madhab Lal Maharjan. Kathmandu: Himalayan Booksellers, 1988.

Primarily intended for tourists, this inexpensive sheet map shows roads and main places of interest, including hotels, trekking agencies, book shops, embassies and foreign aid organizations. The main map is of Kathmandu and Patan on a scale of approximately eighty-four centimetres to one mile, whilst the reverse has maps of the whole Kathmandu Valley and of Patan and Bhaktapur on a scale of approximately 1:7,140. There is also a photographic panorama of the Himalayas as seen from the Valley, with the principal peaks named.

**92 Latest trekking maps.**

Kathmandu: Mandala, [n.d.].

A series of basic, monochrome maps of the most popular trekking routes, including *Lamosangu to Mt. Everest* (1:110,000); *North of Pokhara: Pokhara to Annapurna-Dhaulagiri Himal* (1:125,000); *North of Pokhara: Pokhara to Jomosom-Mustang* (1:125,000); and *Kathmandu to Pokhara*. The maps show relief, roads, streams and footpaths and are adequate for navigation on the trail if supplemented by frequent enquiries of the locals! Some sheets list basic Nepali phrases. They are available very cheaply in Nepal, but can also be ordered abroad through map stockists or bookshops.

**93 Map inventory of Nepal.**

National Council for Science and Technology, mapping sub-committee.

Introduction by Basu Dev Pyakurel. Kathmandu: 1980. 117p.

Aims to include all maps published in Nepal up to 1978, though it is admitted that there are some omissions. Wherever possible, information is supplied on where each map can be bought or consulted (many are available only within government departments). Entries are divided into five main groups: topographical (including US Army and Indian publications); thematic; ground survey maps; miscellaneous; and aerial photography sheets. There is also a catalogue of the maps in Harka Gurung's collection.

**94 Nepal.**

Munich: Nelles Verlag, [n.d.].

A detailed map of the area from Dhaulagiri to the eastern border (scale 1:500,000) is printed on the reverse of a smaller-scale map showing the entire country with Bhutan and adjoining areas of India and Tibet (scale 1:1,500,000). There are also inset maps of the Kathmandu Valley (1:75,000) and Kathmandu city (1:15,000). Principal roads and tracks, national parks and other tourist attractions are identified and the main valleys and ridges are shown by contrast shading. It is useful for general orientation, but not always accurate in detail. The map is revised periodically.

**95 Land use map.**

Nepal Remote Sensing Centre, World Bank. Washington, DC,

Deutsche Gessellschaft für Technische Zusammenarbeit, 1984.

Drawn on a scale of 1:500,000 this map was prepared from satellite photographs, with different types of surface cover showing up in different colours. Two sheets (for east and west) cover the whole country.

**Nepal – atlas of economic development.**

See item no. 632.

# Tourist Guides

## 96 **Trekking in the Himalaya.**

Stan Armington. Lonely Planet, 1985. 4th ed. 195p. bibliog. maps.

Although most of this guide is concerned with Nepal, it also contains material on other sections of the range, including a brief note on China. In addition to details of the principal routes, the author discusses different styles of trekking and argues strongly in favour of treks which are fully organized by a tour company. There is some useful advice on equipment, a list of trekking agents and a section on the language.

## 97 **A guide to trekking in Nepal.**

Stephen Bezruchka, Don Messerschmidt. Foreword by Sir Edmund Hillary. Kathmandu: Sahayogi; Seattle, Washington: The Mountaineers; Leicester, England: Cordee; Vancouver, Canada: Douglas & McIntyre, 1985. 5th ed. 352p. 12 maps. bibliog.

The author, who has worked for several years as a doctor in Nepal and has extensive mountaineering and trekking experience, provides detailed guidance on the logistics of trekking. Particularly thorough on the medical side, the book offers timed itineraries for all major routes. The guide also serves as a sensitive introduction to hill and Himalayan culture, explaining how to respect both the people and their physical environment. The phrases included in 'Nepali for trekkers', though containing some errors, meet practical needs and routes in and around the Kathmandu Valley that can be walked in a single day are included. There is a section on the anthropology of the area, by Messerschmidt, and a discussion of its natural history. An appendix offers suggestions for deeper involvement in the country, including voluntary work, study programmes and financial contribution to welfare projects. The bibliography is annotated.

## 98 **The two-year mountain. A Nepal journey.**

Phil Deutschle. Chalfont St. Peter, England: Bradt, 1986. 273p. maps.

Writing in journal form, a former Peace Corps volunteer relates his experiences in Nepal in the late 1970s. Deutschle worked as a secondary school science teacher in the

village of Aiselukharka, situated between the Indrawati and Sun Koshi rivers in the hills immediately east of the Kathmandu Valley. He also describes mountaineering expeditions, culminating in his solo ascent of the 20,580 feet-high Pharchamo in the Everest region.

**99 The heart of Nepal.**

Duncan Forbes. London: Robert Hale, 1962. 192p. map.

This well-written account of a journey to Nepal in about 1960 includes description of the Kathmandu Valley and of a trek to Langtang and the Tibetan frontier south of the Kiron pass. There is also some material on the country's history.

**100 Mr. Raja's neighbourhood, letters from Nepal.**

Jeff Greenwald. Santa Barbara, California: John Daniel, 1986. 120p. maps. (A Jim Cook Edition).

The author, who came to Nepal in June 1983 to write a novel, describes a year based in Kathmandu, from where he made trips to India and Sri Lanka and, within the country, to Solu Khumbu, Annapurna sanctuary, Chitawan and the Arun valley. Despite its later date, the book recalls the atmosphere of the 'hippy' years of the 1960s and early 1970s.

**101 Vignettes of Nepal.**

Harka Gurung. Kathmandu: Sajha Prakashan, 1980. 435p. maps. bibliog.

A brief recreation of the author's childhood as the son of an ex-Gurkha soldier in a Lamjung village, and of his first journey to Kathmandu in search of education, is followed by accounts of travels in every part of the country during the 1960s and 1970s. The travel accounts are arranged in geographical order from west to east and straightforward description is combined with historical, geological and general cultural information, with perhaps a tendency to overload the text with statistics in places. There are references to books on some of the locations visited, and maps of routes taken showing rivers and ridge systems. One chapter covers the author's participation in the preliminary stages of the 1971 International Himalayan Expedition to Mount Everest. The book is illustrated with colour and black-and-white photographs.

**102 A classful of gods and goddesses.**

Ruth Highbie. Foreword by Carleton Coon, Mary Shepherd Slusser. Pacific Grove, California: Boxwood, 1988. 195p.

The author became a Peace Corps volunteer at the age of fifty-eight, following the death of her husband. She describes the rewards and frustrations of living and working as a science teacher in Banepa, a Newar town just beyond the eastern rim of the Kathmandu Valley. The title refers to use of the names of Hindu gods and goddesses as the most common Nepalese personal names.

## **Tourist Guides**

### **103 The Himalayas – a journey to Nepal.**

Takehide Kazami. Tokyo; Palo Alto, California: Kodansha International; London: Ward Lock, 1968. 154p. (This Beautiful World, vol. 1)

This 'pocket-size' and inexpensive work consists principally of colour photographs taken by the author, mostly during treks in 1964-65 in the region north of Pokhara, including the Muktinath-Manang circuit, and around Mount Everest. The introduction gives a brief account of the country and of the treks.

### **104 The hidden Himalayas.**

Thomas L. Kelly, V. Carroll Dunham. New York: Abbeville, 1987. 200p.

A 'coffee-table' collection of photographs of life in the remote Humla region of north-west Nepal, divided into separate sections for each season of the year. The photographs are by Kelly, and the somewhat flowery commentary by Dunham, who accompanied him on an expedition to the area in the mid-1980s.

### **105 The snow leopard.**

Peter Matthiessen. London: Chatto & Windus, 1979: Picador, 1980. 311p. 2 maps. bibliog.

This classic of travel writing won the US National Book Award and the American Book Award. The author accompanied zoologist George Schaller on a trek to Dolpo in 1973, but his own book is not concerned primarily with natural history but rather with vivid description of the journey itself, and of the reflections prompted by physical environment, wildlife, and the Tibetan spirituality of the region.

### **106 Friends in high places – a season in the Himalayas.**

Peter Mayne. London: Bodley Head, 1975. 320p. bibliog.

An account of the author's visit to Kathmandu and friendship with Jagut and Mussoorie Shamsher Jang Bahadur Rana, the sons of Maharaja Dev Shamsher. The book includes some material on Nepalese history, including an attempted reconstruction of the Kot Massacre of 1846.

### **107 A winter in Nepal.**

John Morris. London: Rupert Hart-Davis, 1963. 232p. 3 maps. bibliog.

A former Gurkha officer recalls a trek from Kathmandu to Pokhara in 1960-61. The main narrative is supplemented by a brief account of Morris's visits to Kathmandu in the 1830s, a sketch of the country's history and a longer account of the customs of the Gorkhas – the hill tribes recruited into the British army. An epilogue reviews the country's prospects, sympathizing with King Mahendra's recent abolition of parliamentary democracy and arguing the need for close partnership with India.

### **108 The waiting land.**

Dervla Murphy. London: John Murray, 1967. 216p. map. Reprinted, London: Century Hutchinson, 1987.

A well-known Irish travel writer describes a visit to Nepal in 1965 to work as a volunteer in the Tibetan refugee camp at Pokhara. The book, which includes accounts



of Murphy's visits to Kathmandu and a trek to the Langtang region, is in diary form and vividly written, with some amusing accounts of brushes with officialdom. There are some more serious reflections on Nepalese culture and the position of Westerners in the country, which are thought-provoking, although tending towards over-generalization.

**109 Tiger for breakfast: the story of Boris of Kathmandu.**

Michel Peissel. London: Hodder & Stoughton, 1967; New Delhi: Allied Publishers, 1972. 282p. map.

The author recounts his experiences in Kathmandu in 1959 and 1963, concentrating on the character of Boris Lissanevitch, White Russian refugee, former ballet-dancer, and pioneer of tourism in Kathmandu. The story of Boris's life before his arrival in Nepal in 1951 is interspersed with that of his activities in Kathmandu, where his Royal Hotel was a focal point both for foreign visitors and for many of the Nepalese élite. The author, an anthropologist, first met Boris to ask his help in arranging permission for a field-trip to Solu Khumbu and subsequently became a personal friend. An interesting book, both as a biography of a larger-than-life personality, and for its picture of Kathmandu in the early post-Rana days, it has been reprinted many times, most recently in 1984.

**110 Travels in Nepal – the sequestered kingdom.**

Charlie Pye-Smith. London: Aurum, 1988. 177p. map.

This book combines features of a conventional travel narrative, including a trek to the Everest region, with extensive discussion of the effect on Nepal of foreign aid. The author is highly critical of many large-scale projects, such as the US-funded Resource Conservation and Utilisation Project in the Kali Gandaki Valley and the British Koshi Hills Area Rural Development Programme, though he praises the work of the British Pakribas agricultural centre in the latter region. Other topics covered include wildlife conservation in the *tarai* and poverty among the Chepangs.

**111 Nepal.**

Prakash A. Raj. South Yarra, Australia; Berkeley, California: Lonely Planet, 1985. 5th ed. 144p. maps.

Compiled by a young member of the family that provided Nepal's *rajgurus* (chief religious authorities) under the Rana régime, and which remains prominent in the country's political and cultural life, this guidebook focuses principally on the Kathmandu Valley. An original feature is the inclusion of many quotations from individual foreign visitors interviewed by the author.

**112 Nepal namaste.**

Robert Riefel. Preface by Harka Gurung. Kathmandu: Sahayogi, 1987. 2nd ed. maps. bibliog.

Written by a long-term French resident of Kathmandu, this book is probably the best of the locally produced guides. Some information on cultural 'dos and don'ts' is included.

## **Tourist Guides**

### **113 Dolpo – the world behind the Himalayas.**

Karna Sakyā. Foreword by Linda Diane Griffith. Kathmandu: Sharda Griha, 1978. 198p. bibliog. 3 maps.

This very readable account describes a trek from Dhorpatan in western Nepal into the remote, high-altitude Dolpo region (which is geographically part of the Central Asian uplands), returning via Jomosom to Pokhara. The author, a trained forester, was accompanied by his UN Food and Agriculture Organisation counterpart and by the ornithologist, Robert Fleming. A narrative of the trek, emphasizing relations with companions met on the way, is combined with some zoological and botanical detail.

### **114 Riding the mountains down. A journey by bicycle to Kathmandu.**

Bettina Selby. Hemel Hempstead, England: Unwin Paperbacks, 1985. 2nd ed. 232p. 3 maps.

Recounts the author's cycle ride, apparently in the early 1980s, through the Pakistan, Indian and Nepal Himalaya. The Nepal section, including stays in Pokhara and Kathmandu and a trek to Langtang, occupies pages 189 to 216. Her narrative tends to highlight some of the negative experiences that can be encountered by a low-budget traveller passing briefly through the country, including poor hygiene and persistent and aggressive begging by children. She also comments on the readiness of many educated Nepalese to press upon foreigners their complaints about the country's economic and political condition.

### **115 Nepal Himalaya.**

Shiro Shirahata. New Delhi: Allied Publishers, 1985. 2nd ed. 232p.

A 'coffee-table' book of spectacular mountain views, taken on extensive treks during the early 1980s. A brief description of the journey is given at the rear of the book as a commentary on each plate.

### **116 Window on Annapurna.**

Joy Stephens. London: Gollanz, 1988. 207p. map.

The author, who came to Nepal to work as a volunteer in a United Christian Mission hospital, describes a year spent in the village of Titeng, just outside the town of Baglung in Dhaulagiri zone, while her husband was working on a hydro-electric project. Like Gary Shepherd's *Among the Magars* (q.v.), the book provides an informal account of life in a Magar community.

### **The wildest dreams of Kew: a profile of Nepal.**

See item no. 4.

### **Nepal – the kingdom in the Himalayas.**

See item no. 10.

### **Nepal. (Insight guide.)**

See item no. 13.

### **Le Népal et les européens.**

See item no. 27.

### **With a king in the clouds.**

See item no. 47.

**The fabulous Flemings of Kathmandu: the story of two doctors in Nepal.**

*See item no. 233.*

**Surgeon in Nepal.**

*See item no. 250.*

**Mustang – a lost Tibetan kingdom.**

*See item no. 407.*

**Nepal.**

*See item no. 906.*

# Flora and Fauna

**117 Natural history and economic botany of Nepal.**

Dibya Deo Bhatt. Kathmandu: Department of Information, Ministry of Information and Broadcasting, 1970. 160p. maps.

This informative survey offers extensive information on agriculture, including fibre crops, wool products and oil seeds.

**118 The Arun – a natural history of the world's deepest valley.**

Edward W. Cronin, Jnr. Boston: Houghton Mifflin, 1979. 236p. bibliog. 2 maps.

The author describes his participation in the Arun Valley Wildlife Expedition of 1972-73 and his subsequent trips to the area. The Arun, part of the Sapt Koshi river system in eastern Nepal, flows from Tibet between the Everest and Kanchanjanga massifs and forms the traditional western boundary of the country of the Limbus. Cronin is particularly interested in ornithology, and also includes general comments on Nepal's ecological problems. There is an index of scientific and common names for the species discussed.

**119 Search for the Spiny Babbler: an adventure in Nepal.**

Ripley P. Dillon. Boston, Massachusetts: Houghton Mifflin, 1952; London: Victor Gollanz, 1953. 301p. map. bibliog. Reprinted, Kathmandu: Ratna Pustak Bhandar, 1978 (Bibliotheca Himalayica, series I, vol. 27).

This book was reprinted in 1978 as *Search for the Spiny Babbler. Bird hunting in Nepal*. An ornithologist describes his travels in 1948, in the Karnali valley and in the Dhankuta area, in search of further information about a species of bird discovered by Brian Hodgson. In addition to its natural history interest, the book is useful for its description of the Rana road from the plains and for a glimpse of Kathmandu under Mohan Shamsher, the last of the Rana Maharajas. The author's preface to the 1978 reprint expresses pleasure that the positive aspects of Nepal appear to have been preserved, and mentions his return to the country in 1977, to study the tiger, in his capacity as head of the Smithsonian Institution.

- 120 Bibliographie du Népal, volume 3: sciences naturelles, tome 2: botanique.** (Bibliography of Nepal, volume 3: natural sciences, part 2: botany,)

J. F. Dobremez, F. Vigny, L. H. J. Williams. Paris: Centre National de la Recherche Scientifique, 1972. 126p.

Covering the whole of the central Himalaya, in addition to Nepal proper, this bibliography gives details of expeditions and collectors, and of plant collections and botanical gardens throughout the world which contain Himalayan plants. The entries for expeditions and collectors are cross-referenced to the main bibliography. Entries are numbered up to 1240 but with some gaps in the sequence.

- 121 The general ecology, flora and fauna of midland Nepal.**

Robert L. Fleming, Jr. Kathmandu: USAID, 1973. 105p. map. bibliog.

An introductory chapter on ecological concepts in the Nepalese context is followed by accounts of sub-tropical forest (covering 1,000-2,000 metres) and of oak-rhododendron forest (2,200-2,800 metres), and of the relation between man and nature in the Kathmandu Valley. The book provides an account of the most important species in relation to their habitat, rather than a comprehensive listing, and is written in a simple, at times almost patronizing manner. There is an appendix of scientific names of species.

- 122 Birds of Nepal (with reference to Kashmir and Sikkim).**

Robert L. Fleming, Sr., Robert L. Fleming, Jr., Lain Singh Bangdel. Foreword by Elvis J. Stahr, illustrated by Hem Poudyal, Hira Lal Dangol. Kathmandu: Robert L. Fleming, Sr. & Jr., 1976. 349p. 3 maps.

This field guide to over 2,000 species is prepared by ornithologists who have been studying Nepalese birds for twenty-five years. Indispensable for any enthusiast, it is light enough to fit easily in a back-pack.

- 123 Heart of the jungle: the wildlife of Chitwan Nepal.**

K. K. Gurung. London: André Deutsch in association with Tiger Tops, 1983. 197p. map. bibliog.

Written by a trained naturalist and manager of the Tiger Tops game lodge, this book provides an account of the Chitawan National Park and its wildlife. Gurung includes information on the setting up of the park and on conservation problems, but the bulk of the book is a catalogue of the species found there, illustrated with black-and-white photographs and line drawings, and including a full account of the 'big cats'. Appendices give comprehensive lists of bird, butterfly and plant species found in the park.

- 124 A guide to the birds of Nepal.**

Carol Inskipp, Tim Inskipp. London; Sydney: Croom Helm, 1985. 392p. bibliog. maps.

Covering 835 species, this survey includes an identification section and line drawings, mostly in black-and-white, but is rather bulky for a field guide. The main features, however, are the 677 distribution maps for individual species, and a bibliography of

## **Flora and Fauna**

602 items, intended to be comprehensive. Carol Inksipp has also published a much briefer guide, including details of birds found along the major trekking routes: *A birdwatchers guide to Nepal* (Sandy, England: Prion, 1988).

### **125 Indian wildlife – Sri Lanka, Nepal.**

Edited by Samuel Israel, Toby Sinclair, Bikram Grewal, Hans Joannes Hoefler. Hong Kong: Apa, 1987. 363p. 22 maps. bibliog. (Insight Guides – the Great Adventure Series)

One of the thematic volumes that Apa are now adding to their country guides, this survey of wildlife throughout the subcontinent is well illustrated and attractively produced. Relevant to Nepal are the chapters on wildlife of the Himalaya by Joanna Van Gruisen (p. 157-62), and on Nepal's Royal Chitawan National Park and Royal Bardiya Wildlife Reserve by K. K. Gurung. Pages 217-22 provide practical information on means of travel and places to stay.

### **126 Fauna and flora of Nepal Himalaya.**

H. Kihara. Kyoto, Japan: Flora and Fauna Research Society, Kyoto University, 1955. 390p. map. bibliog. (Scientific Results of the Japanese Expeditions to the Nepal Himalaya, vol. 1).

Presents scientific studies of the species observed by expedition biologists in the areas around Manaslu, Annapurna and Ganesh Himal in west-central and central Nepal. Separate chapters cover algae, lichens, mosses, flowering plants and ferns, dragonflies, mayfly nymphs, butterflies, rice weevils, and drosophila.

### **127 Plant hunting in Nepal.**

Ray Lancaster. New Delhi: Vikas, 1981. 194p. bibliog.

A professional horticulturalist describes an expedition to collect wild plant seed in eastern Nepal (between the Tamur and Arun rivers) in September to December 1971. A straightforward narrative of the trek is combined with details of plant species observed. Plants are normally cited by botanical names only, but a prefatory list gives common names for the main genera. The final chapter defends plant-hunting against those who claim it is no longer necessary, and against extreme conservationists.

### **128 Wild is beautiful.**

Edited by Trilok Chandra Majupuria. Lashkar, India: S.Devi, 507p. 12 maps. bibliog.

This compendium, edited by the Professor of Zoology at Tribhuvan University, is a little technical in places, but generally accessible, and illustrated with photographs and drawings. It includes material on wildlife generally and studies of particular species. There are sections by Colin Smith on butterflies and by Robert Fleming Jnr. on birds (p. 197-310). Highlighted species include the tiger, musk deer, and wild Asian buffalo. Harka Gurung reviews the evidence for the yeti, inclining to the side of scepticism.

129 **Nepal nature's paradise: insight into diverse facets of topography, flora and ecology.**

Edited by Trilok Chandra Majupuria. Bangkok: White Lotus, 1984. 476p. 29 maps. bibliog.

A collection of contributions by leading experts, covering basic physiography, forest management, palaeontology, geology, climate and ecology, with chapters on particular classes of plants. In addition to his interest in straightforward natural history, Majupuria is also the author of two studies of the rôle of Nepalese flora and fauna in traditional Nepalese culture: *Sacred and symbolic animals of Nepal: animals in the art, culture, myths, and legends of the Hindus and Buddhists* (Kathmandu: Sahayogi, 1977); and, with Indra Majupuria, *Sacred and useful plants of Nepal: plants in the religions, myths, mythologies and medicines of Hindus and Buddhists* (Kathmandu: Sahayogi, 1978).

130 **Catalogue of Nepalese vascular plants.**

Edited by S. B. Malla et al. Kathmandu: Ministry of Forests, Department of Medicinal Plants, 1976. 211p. map. bibliog. (Bulletin of the Department of Medicinal Plants of Nepal, 7)

A short general introduction is followed by scientific names of species listed according to botanical classification. An appendix gives the names of Nepalese plant-collectors.

131 **Butterflies of the Himalayas.**

M. S. Mani. New Delhi, Bombay, Calcutta: Oxford University Press, IBH, 1986. 181p. maps. bibliog.

This rather technical presentation includes distribution maps for particular species and a discussion of evolutionary tendencies over the Himalayan region as a whole.

132 **The face of the tiger.**

Charles McDougal. London: André Deutsch, 1977. 180p. maps. bibliog.

This classic account of the behaviour in the wild of the Bengal tiger is based largely on the author's research in the Chitawan National Park.

133 **Himalayan flowers and trees.**

Dorothy Mierow, Tirtha Bahadur Shrestha. Kathmandu: Sahayogi, 1978. 204p. 4 maps. bibliog.

This 'pocket-size' book is intended for use on the trail. An introduction describes the main plant families, with the aid of line drawings. The main part of the book consists of 410 colour photographs, most of them illustrating individual species, and divided into sections corresponding with major trekking routes. A brief note on each species is given at the rear, followed by a species index.

## Flora and Fauna

**134 The flora of eastern Himalaya: third report: results of the botanical expedition to eastern Himalaya in 1972, organized by the University of Tokyo.**

Hiroyashi Ohashi. Tokyo: University of Tokyo Press, 1975. 458p.  
(The University Museum, University of Tokyo, bulletin no. 8.)

A successor to two previous reports (1966 and 1971), this publication contains details of plants observed, and also taxonomic studies of particular groups. The Japanese results were combined with British ones in H. Hara, W. T. Stearn, L. H. J. Williams' *An enumeration of the flowering plants of Nepal*, vol. 1 (London: Trustees of the British Museum (Natural History), 1978).

**135 Flowers of the Himalayas.**

Oleg Polunin, Adam Stainton. Delhi: Oxford University Press, 1986.  
476p. maps.

This standard reference work covers the whole Himalayan region. Plants are treated by family, with species in alphabetical order within each family section. Some technical terms are used and a glossary of these is provided. There are line drawings and colour illustrations. A supplement to this volume was published in 1988.

**136 Concise flowers of the Himalayas.**

Oleg Polunin, Adam Stainton. Delhi: Oxford University Press, 1987.  
283p. 4 maps. 1988 paperback edition, 424p.

Reissued in paperback in 1988, this condensed version of the authors' *Flowers of the Himalayas* (q.v.) is more portable, though still far from 'pocket-size'. The illustrations of the original are retained, but species descriptions are shortened, and limited to those illustrated.

**137 Look down not up.**

Karna Sakya. Foreword by Harka Gurung. Kathmandu: Sahayogi,  
[1986]. 195p. bibliog.

The author describes his search for the pygmy hog, a species of jungle swine once thought totally extinct but in fact surviving in very small numbers in India. He was unable to discover the animal in the Chitawan National Park or Koshi Tappu Nature reserve in the *tarai*, and suggests the Koshi river barrage may have destroyed its last habitat in the country. As in the author's *The world behind the Himalayas* (q.v.), there are vivid accounts of individuals encountered on his travels, including a Tharu girl who helped him recruit workers for tree planting near Bhairawa.

**138 Stones of silence: journeys in the Himalaya.**

George Schaller. New Delhi: Vikas; London: André Deutsch;  
Ultima, Australia: Hutchinson, 1980. 292p. 6 maps.

Schaller describes the wild life encountered during journeys in the Nepal and Pakistan Himalaya in 1972-73. The author is especially interested in mountain goats and sheep. On his journey to Dolpo, Karnali zone, Schaller was accompanied by Peter Matthiessen who wrote his own account in *The snow leopard* (q.v.). Schaller's book is illustrated by Jean Pruchnik.



**139 Fishes of Nepal.**

Jiwan Shrestha. Kathmandu: Tribhuvan University, Curriculum Development Centre, 1981. 318p. maps. bibliog.

This technical account gives details of species, including physical characteristics, local names and distribution maps. The author also covers lakes and river systems, and describes fish catching devices used in Nepal.

**140 A field guide to Nepali names for plants.**

Keshab Shrestha. Kathmandu: Tribhuvan University, Institute of Technology, 1984. 156p. bibliog.

After an introduction outlining the history of botany in Nepal and the main plant species, the author gives a list of just over one thousand species, with Nepali name, scientific name, common English name and family. The list is arranged in alphabetical order of the Nepali name in Devanagari, but a transcription is given in the main entry, with full indexes to the scientific and common names. Information is derived from reference books and the author's own field trips.

**141 Wildlife of Nepal – a study of renewable resources of Himalayan kingdom.**

Tej Kumar Shrestha. Foreword by Mahendra Prasad. Kathmandu: Tribhuvan University, Curriculum Development Centre, 1981. 734p. bibliog.

This study is intended as a basic reference book for graduate students of science, forestry, agriculture and medicine. There are sections on conservation problems in general, mammals, birds, reptiles and amphibians, and river life, together with descriptions of routes for nature rambles and discussion of the possible conflicts between development and the preservation of the environment. The book is not well illustrated.

**142 Gymnosperms of Nepal. Les gymnospermes du Népal.**

Tirtha Bahadur Shrestha. Note by Jean-François Dobremez. Paris: Centre Nationale de la Recherche Scientifique, 1974. 23p. maps. bibliog. (Cahiers népalais – documents, 3).

This brief survey of plants with unprotected seed vessels is written in English, but Dobremez's note is in French and there is also a French summary. Shrestha is also the author of *Ecology and vegetation of north-west Nepal (Karnali region)* (Kathmandu: Royal Nepal Academy, 1982. 122p. maps. bibliog. (Silver Jubilee Publications, 23)).

**143 Butterflies of Nepal (central Himalaya). A colour field guide including all the 614 species recorded up-to-date.**

Colin Smith. Edited by T. C. Majupuria. Bangkok: Tecpress, 1989. 352p. 2 maps. bibliog.

Provides a simply-written and well-illustrated guide by the leading authority on the subject.

## **Flora and Fauna**

### **144 Forests of Nepal.**

J. D. A. Stainton. London: John Murray, 1972. 181p. 5 maps.  
bibliog.

A discussion of topography and climate is followed by a detailed classification into forest types, and finally by distribution lists and altitude ranges for specific trees and shrubs. Illustrated with 156 colour photographs, the book includes an appendix listing the author's collecting trips in Nepal from 1954 to 1969.

### **145 Discovering trees in Nepal and the Himalayas.**

Adrian Storrs, Jimmie Storrs. Kathmandu: Sahayogi, 1984. 366p.  
bibliog.

This survey is a small-format book, though rather heavy, and aims to be non-technical. Trees and shrubs are described in alphabetical order of their scientific names, but also listed under leaf arrangements and altitudinal distribution. There are brief notes on the culture of some trees, a glossary of botanical terms, and indexes of English and vernacular names. The survey is illustrated with black-and-white photographs.

### **Journey through Nepal.**

See item no. 2.

### **Himalayan journals – notes of a naturalist in Bengal, the Sikkim and Nepal Himalayas, the Khasia mountains etc.**

See item no. 40.

### **Nepal Himalaya.**

See item no. 56.

### **The snow leopard.**

See item no. 105.

### **Dolpo – the world behind the Himalayas.**

See item no. 113.

### **Manual of afforestation in Nepal.**

See item no. 667.

### **An introduction to Nepalese food plants.**

See item no. 685.

### **Nepal Himalaya and change.**

See item no. 697.

### **The abominable snowman adventure.**

See item no. 877.

### **Yeti tells – all about the abominable snowman.**

See item no. 880.

### **Research papers in zoology (papers presented in national and international scientific gatherings).**

See item no. 910.

### **Research papers in botany (papers presented in national and international scientific gatherings.)**

See item no. 912.

# Archaeology and Prehistory

## 146 **Ancient Nepal.**

Kathmandu: Ministry of Education and Culture, Department of Archaeology. 1967- . bi-monthly.

This journal publishes articles in Nepali and English on archaeology and history. Its appearance is sometimes irregular, with several numbers often combined in a single issue. Articles for the period 1967 to 1985 are included in Purna P. Amatya's *Cumulative index to selected Nepalese journals* (Kathmandu: Centre for Nepal and Asian Studies, 1979). Another Nepalese journal carrying articles on history is *Voice of History*, published annually in Kathmandu since 1975 by the History Instruction Committee of Tribhuvan University.

## 147 **Report on the work done in the project of quarternary and prehistoric studies in Nepal.**

Gudrun Corvinus. *Ancient Nepal*, nos. 86-88 (1985), p. 1-6.

Corvinus provides an account of investigations along a road being built between the Dang and Deukhuri valleys in the far-western *tarai*. Her report includes evidence for prehistoric settlements around what were once lakes in the Dun (inner *tarai*) valleys. In a second article in the same issue, 'Prehistoric discoveries in the foothills of the Himalayas in Nepal' (p. 7-12), the author reports finding palaeolithic tools at a higher altitude.

## 148 **Archaeological excavations in Kathmandu.**

Shantaram Bhalchandra Deo. Foreword by Ramesh J. Thapa.

Kathmandu: Department of Archaeology, 1968. 46p.

Provides the results of the joint Nepal Government/Indian Cooperation Mission excavation in front of the Manesvara temple at Harigaon, an eastern suburb of Kathmandu, in January 1965. The stratification of the site from early Licchavi to Malla times is described and a full account is given of coins, pottery fragments and structures, accompanied with drawings and photos. Parallels are drawn between the ceramics found in the Kathmandu Valley and those of the Gupta and immediately post-Gupta

## Archaeology and Prehistory

periods at Ahicchatra in India, and a provisional ceramic sequence for the Valley is established. The final paragraph describes an excavation at Lajimpat, northern Kathmandu, which failed to reveal any remains.

### 149 **Archaeological excavations in the Nepal tarai: 1964.**

Shantaram Bhalchandra Deo. Preface by Ramesh Jang Thapa.

Kathmandu: Department of Archaeology, 1968. 32p. map.

Presents a detailed report by the archaeologist in charge of excavations at Banjarahi and Paisia in the area to the south of Lumbini. Evidence at the first site was found for cultural contact with India from at least 600 BC, whilst, at the second, a succession of temple ruins were investigated. Six other sites were catalogued briefly. The report is illustrated with black-and-white photographs and drawings of pottery and other objects.

### 150 **Monograph on Buddha Sakyamuni's birthplace in the Nepalese tarai.**

A. Fuhrer. Allahabad, India: Government Press, 1897. 48p. 2 maps.

(Archaeological Survey of Northern India, vol. VI). Reprinted,

Varanasi, India: Indological Book House, 1972.

This monograph marks a landmark, since the author was associated with General Khadga Shamsher Rana in the discovery of the Ashokan stupa at Lumbini, the site of the Buddha's birthplace. His claimed identifications of other Buddhist sites are, however, unreliable, and the original edition was withdrawn from circulation by the Government of India when it was found that he had actually fabricated evidence.

### 151 **Tilaurakot excavations (2023-2029 V.S.).**

Tara Nanda Mishra. *Ancient Nepal*, nos. 41-2 (Aug.-Nov. 1977), p. 11-37. map. bibliog.

The writer gives detailed results of excavations undertaken in 1968-73 (2023-2029 in Nepalese dating) at Tilaurakot in the Nepalese *tarai* about fifteen miles west of Lumbini. He provides plans and stratification diagrams of the site. The case for its identification with Kapilavastu, the city where Buddha spent his early life, is discussed at length, but the non-specialist will probably be better served by Bhuvan Lal Pradhan's presentation, *Lumbini-Kapilwastu-Dewadaha* (q.v.).

### 152 **Excavations at Tilaurakot and Kodan and explorations in the Nepalese terai. Report on the work undertaken jointly by the Department of Archaeology, His Majesty's Government of Nepal, and the Archaeological Survey of India.**

Debala Mitra. Foreword by R. J. Thapa. Kathmandu: Department of Archaeology, 1972. 262p. maps.

Provides a detailed report on excavations at the sites named, including site plans. There are also brief details of other areas surveyed in the neighbourhood of Lumbini.

**153 A report on a tour of excavation of the antiquities of Kapilavastu, Tarai of Nepal during February and March 1899.**

Purna Chandra Mukherji. Preface by Vincent Smith. Calcutta: Superintendent of Government Printing, 1901. 22p, 60p. 3 maps. (*Archaeological Survey of India Reports*, New Imperial Series, vol. XXVI, pt. 1). Reprinted, Delhi: Varanasi: Indological Book House, 1969.

Because of the serious flaws in Fuhrer's earlier work *Monograph on Buddha Sakyamuni's birthplace in the Nepalese tarai* (q.v.), this book is the first scientific report on the sites in the tarai connected with the Buddha. The author's identification of Tilaurakot with Kapilavastu, more precise than that of Fuhrer, remained unchallenged until the claims made by Debala Mitra, *Excavations at Tilaurakot and Kodan*. . . . (q.v.) and K. M. Shrivastava, *Discovery of Kapilwastu* (q.v.) in the 1960s and 1970s. The work is illustrated with twenty-eight plates and with diagrams in the text.

**154 Tilaurakot: fortified village in Terai excavated in 1967-77.**

Zuiru Nakamura et al. Tokyo: Yuzankaku, 1978. 359p. maps. (Rosso University Nepal Archaeological Research Report, vol. 2).

Plates and drawings illustrating finds at Tilaurakot are accompanied by brief titles in English and Japanese. The excavation report itself will be published as volume one of the work.

**155 Archaeological remains of Lumbini: the birthplace of Lord Buddha.**

R. N. Pandey. *Contributions to Nepalese Studies*, vol. 12, no. 3 (Aug. 1985), p. 51-62. bibliog.

Summarizes the history of the Lumbini site and briefly describes architectural remains and sculpture discovered there. The author has some direct knowledge of the site, but relies chiefly on earlier accounts, in particular those of Babu Krishna Rijal, *Archaeological remains of Kapilvastu, Lumbini and Devadaha* (q.v.), Bhuvan Lal Pradhan, *Lumbini-Kapilwastu-Dewadaha*, and Debala Mitra, *Excavations at Tilaurakot and Kodan*. . . . (q.v.). The article does not cover archaeological discoveries after winter 1982.

**156 Palaeo-environment and prehistory of Nepal.**

R. N. Pandey. *Contributions to Nepalese Studies*, vol. 14, no. 2 (April 1987), p. 111-24. bibliog.

Although a little technical and densely written, this article, with its bibliography, provides a good survey of current knowledge of early man in Nepal and of his environment. The author details discoveries of both Neolithic and Palaeolithic tools in different parts of the country, and also discusses the fossil remains of *Butwal Ramapithecus*, a primate which lived in the Siwalik hills eleven million years ago and which has been claimed as 'the first direct ancestor of man in Asia.'

**157 Lumbini-Kapilwastu-Dewadaha.**

Bhuvan Lal Pradhan. Kathmandu: Research Centre for Nepal and Asian Studies, Tribhuvan University, 1979. 100p. 2 maps.

This collection of papers, some previously published, on Buddha's birthplace at Lumbini and on the remains in the surrounding area, includes an account of

## Archaeology and Prehistory

excavations, and a discussion of evidence in the Buddhist scriptures and the memoirs of Chinese pilgrims. The author defends Purna Chandra Mukherji's identification of Tilaurakot as the ancient Kapilavastu, and also his location of Kapilavastu's twin Sakya republic of Devadaha in the region between the Rohini and Jharahi rivers east of Lumbini (*A report of a tour of excavation. . . .* (q.v.)). There are photographs and plans of the sites, and texts and translations of the Ashokan inscriptions on the Niglihawa and Lumbini pillars. One paper gives details of the Lumbini development scheme. The case against Tilaurakot is argued most extensively in K. M. Shrivastava's *Discovery of Kapilavastu* (q.v.).

### 158 **Résumé of the archaeological activities in Nepal.**

Babu Krishna Rijal. In: *Nepalese cultural heritage in a nutshell*. Kathmandu: His Majesty's Government, Hotel Management and Tourism Training Centre, 1979, p. 105-27.

Covers, in condensed form, similar ground to the author's book, *Archaeological remains of Kapilvastu, Lumbini and Devadaha* (q.v.). Rijal has also given details of excavation finds in 'Archeological (*sic*) activities in Lumbini, 1976-77', *Ancient Nepal*, nos. 30-39 (Jan. 1975-April 1977), p. 28-37; and *Archaeological activities in Lumbini 1976-78* (Kathmandu: Lumbini Development Committee, [1978], 20p.).

### 159 **Archaeological remains of Kapilvastu, Lumbini and Devadaha.**

Babu Krishna Rijal. Kathmandu: Educational Enterprises, 1979. 88p. 5 maps. bibliog.

Rijal is an archaeologist formerly in charge of excavations at Lumbini and Tilaurakot. His approach to the identification controversy, which has become something of a nationalist shibboleth, covers similar ground, but is perhaps not so clearly written as Bhuvan Lal Pradhan's *Lumbini-Kapilwastu-Dewadaha* (q.v.). However, there is also an extended account of the Tilaurakot excavations by a joint Japanese-Nepalese team which yielded remains believed to date from the Buddha's time. Appendices give papers by the Nepal Government Archaeological Department and by the Sri Lankan Buddhist scholar A. D. T. E. Perera supporting the case for Tilaurakot.

### 160 **Discovery of Kapilavastu.**

K. M. Shrivastava. New Delhi: Book & Books, 1986. 260p. maps.

This is the author's most extended presentation of the evidence for identifying Kapilavastu, the city where Buddha spent his early life, with Piprahawa, in the Basti district of Uttar Pradesh, north India. He argues that Piprahawa's distance from Lumbini fits the account of the 4th-century Chinese pilgrim, Fa-Hsien, and that further conclusive evidence is provided by an inscription discovered at the site in 1898, and by the discovery during the 1972-74 excavations of terracotta sealings with the name 'Kapilavastu'. He gives a detailed account of excavations on the site and of seals, coins and other objects found there. Similar ground is covered in the author's *Buddha's relics from Kapilavastu* (Delhi: Agam Kala, 1986), while his case is summarized in three articles: 'Buddha's lost town of Kapilavastu identified', *Vishveshvaranand Indological Journal*, vol. 15, part 1 (May 1977), p. 88-105; 'Kapilavastu and its precise location', *East and West*, vol. 29, no. 1-4 (1979), p. 61-74; and 'Discovery of Kapilavastu of Buddha', *Arts of Asia*, vol. 10, no. 4 (July-August 1980), p. 102-111. Counter-arguments in favour of Tilaurakot are given in Bhuvan Lal Pradhan's *Lumbini-Kapilwastu-Dewadaha* (q.v.), Babu Krishna Rijal's *Archaeological remains of*

## **Archaeology and Prehistory**

*Kapilvastu, Lumbini and Devadaha* (q.v.) and Tara Nanda Mishra's *Tilaurakot excavations (2023-2029 V.S.)*. (q.v.).

**Some aspects of cultural policy in Nepal.**

*See* item no. 1.

# History

## General

**161 A brief survey of Nepali historiography.**

Krishna Kant Adhikari. Kathmandu: Buku, 1980. 72p. bibliog.

Presents a survey of writing on Nepalese history in the light of the methodology developed in Europe during the 19th century. The author goes into some detail on errors in previous publications which he believes illustrate a general inadequacy of approach.

**162 The Himalayan gazetteer.**

Edwin T. Atkinson. Delhi: Cosmo, 1973. 6 vols. map.

This work is reprinted from *The Himalayan districts of the north-western provinces of India* (Allahabad, India: North-western Provinces and Oudh, Government Press, 1882, 1884, 1886. 3 vols.). An elaborate survey of the geography, fauna, anthropology and history of the Indian Himalaya west of the present Nepal border, this work is still of considerable value, though much is now outdated. Atkinson includes an account of Kumaon and Garhwal under Nepalese administration and of the Anglo-Gorkha war which resulted in the annexation of this area by the East India company (vol. 2, p. 607-79).

**163 State of historical research in the Himalayan region.**

Shyam K. Bhurtel, Ramesh Dhungel. In: *Preparatory workshop on Himalayan studies, September 23-24, 1984*. Edited by Ananda Shrestha. Kathmandu: Centre for Nepal and Asian Studies, [n.d.], p. 17-33.

Provides a brief survey of work done on the region, focusing particularly on Nepal, Bhutan, Sikkim, Kashmir and Tibet, with a bibliography of about 100 items.



164 **Poudres d'or et monnaies d'argent au Tibet.** (Gold dust and silver money in Tibet.)

Lucette Boulnois. Paris: Centre Nationale de la Recherche Scientifique, 1983. 248p. maps. bibliog.

In the second part of this study the author discusses in detail the monopolistic system under which the kings of Nepal until 1792 had the right to mint Tibet's coinage from bullion which the Tibetans themselves provided. Boulnois analyses the breakdown of the system after the Gorkha conquest, the subsequent Nepalese invasions of Tibet, and the Chinese invasion of Nepal.

165 **Les passes himalayennes. Religieux, marchands et militaires. XVII-XVIIIe siècles.** (The Himalayan passes. Priests, merchants and soldiers. 17th-18th centuries.)

Lucette Boulnois. In: *Routes de asie. Marchands et voyageurs. XV-XVIIe siècle. Actes du Colloque organisé par la Bibliothèque Interuniversitaire des Langues Orientales, Paris, 11-12 décembre 1986.* Edited by Marion Debout, Denise Eeckaute-Bardery, Vincent Fournieau. Istanbul; Paris: Editions Isis, 1980. p. 67-88.

The author provides a brief overview of the economic and strategic significance of the trans-Himalayan passes during this period, including some details of trade between Nepal and Tibet.

166 **Political history.**

Surya Bikram Gyawali. In: *Nepal in perspective.* Edited by Pashupati Shamsheer Jung Bahadur Rana, Kamal Prakash Malla. Kathmandu: Centre for Economic Development and Administration, 1973, p. 47-63.

Presents a summary from the earliest times down to the fall of the Rana régime. Although a little dry, this is a useful summary of the basic facts.

167 **The history of Nepal as told by its own and contemporary chroniclers.**

Vikram Hasrat. Hoshiarpur, India: V.V. Research Institute, 1970. 354p. bibliog.

This collection of source materials includes Nepalese *vamsavalis* (chronicles) in English translation from the papers of Brian Hodgson, and summaries of political events in Nepal produced by officials at the British Residency in Kathmandu. The first Nepalese document comprises Hindu and Buddhist versions of the origin of the Kathmandu Valley and its later history, whilst the second is a version of the *Gorkharajavamsavali* (Chronicle of the Gorkha kings), giving an account of the Shah dynasty before the Gorkha conquest of the Nepal Valley. The British accounts cover the period from their first contact with Nepal down to 1861. The author provides a lengthy introduction setting the documents in context. The book is both a useful tool for researchers and of considerable interest to the general reader.

## History. General

### 168 **The mollas of Mustang – historical, religious and oratorical traditions of the Nepalese-Tibetan borderland.**

David P. Jackson. Dharamsala, India: Library of Tibetan Works and Archives, 1984. 248p. 2 maps. bibliog.

Jackson uses the texts of the *mollas* (or 'speeches'), which are formally recited in religious gatherings, to examine the cultural traditions and history of Lo Mustang, a Tibetan principality which was incorporated in the Nepalese state. The book includes a transcription and translation of the most important of these, the Molla of Tsarang, which gives the genealogy of the ruling family. The author compares this with other information and constructs a family tree, with approximate dates, reaching back to the 14th century.

### 169 **The Nepal Antiquary.**

Kathmandu: Office of the Nepal Antiquary. Dec.1974- . irregular.

This journal publishes material on all aspects of Nepal, but predominantly on the country's history. It is printed in limited numbers for research purposes, and can be ordered from the publisher at 20/401 Naxal, Kathmandu.

### 170 **A historical atlas of South Asia.**

Joseph E. Schwartzberg, with the collaboration of Shiva G. Bajpai, Raj B. Mathur et al. Chicago; London: University of Chicago Press, 1978. 352p. maps. bibliog. (Association for Asian Studies, Reference Series, no. 2).

This major reference work, including 149 pages of maps, presents a wealth of information on the political, social and cultural history of South Asia as a whole up to 1975. There is relatively little material specifically on Nepal, but a map on page fifty-five shows the maximum extent of the kingdom in the early 19th century and the areas lost after the 1814-16 war with British India, whilst one on page 102, based on data from the 1952-54 census, shows the percentage of people speaking Nepali as their first language in different regions of the country. Summary charts contained in a rear pocket include basic details on Nepalese political history. The general standard of the work is high, though it fails to make clear that the eastern *tarai* region ceded in 1816 was restored to Nepal the following year.

### 171 **Nepal mandala: a cultural history of the Kathmandu Valley.**

Mary Shepherd Slusser. Princeton, New Jersey: Princeton University Press, 1982. 2 vols. 9 maps. bibliog.

In this sumptuously produced history of the Kathmandu Valley and its civilization, volume one comprises the text, while volume two contains maps, plans and 599 black-and-white photographs. The first section describes the Valley's general history from Licchavi times down to the Gorkha conquest in 1769, with a brief note on the modern period. For this, the author draws heavily on work published in Nepali by the scholars of the 'history correction circle' (*itihās samshoddhan mandal*). There follow sections on architecture and on the gods and other sacred beings worshipped locally. Appendices include descriptions of the different calendar systems used and of the language and writing, and a chronological list of rulers and inventory of Licchavi inscriptions. The author, a specialist in archaeology, architecture and art history, lived in Nepal for an extended period from 1965.

172 **A short history of Nepal.**

Netra Bahadur Thapa. Kathmandu: Ratna Pustak Bhandar, 1981.  
188p.

This outline history is misleading in places as it does not reflect the results of more recent research. However, the genealogical tables of leading families in the post-1769 political élite, and the lists of kings, queens and premiers provide a useful reference source.

173 **Gorkha.**

Francis Toker. London: Constable, 1957. 319p. map. bibliog.

Written by a former senior Gurkha officer, this history of Nepal draws on older published work from the 19th and early 20th century. In dealing with the final years of the Rana régime and the aftermath of its overthrow, the author shows clear sympathy for the Ranas and hostility to their opponents. Although this book, like Thapa's *A short history of Nepal* (q.v.), perpetuates many old errors corrected by recent research, it is a readable account and may be available in libraries which lack the newer volumes published in Nepal and India.

174 **Crime and punishment in Nepal: an historical perspective.**

Tulasi Ram Vaidya, Triratna Manandhar. Kathmandu: Bini Vaidya,  
Purna Devi Manandhar, 1985. 302p. bibliog.

Presents an interesting survey of Nepalese criminal law from Licchavi to Rana times, emphasizing the continuing importance of traditional Hindu law. The book concludes with a brief discussion of the new *Muluki Ain* (National Code) of 1963, arguing that this has not made the radical break with the past now required.

175 **History of Nepal.**

Edited by Daniel Wright. Translated from the Nepali by Munshi Shew  
Shunker Singh, Pandit Shri Gunand. Cambridge, England:  
Cambridge University Press, 1877. 324p. Reprinted, New Delhi:  
Cosmo, 1986.

This book was reprinted in 1986 as *Nepal: history of the country and people*. It is a Buddhist version of the legendary history of the Kathmandu Valley and Nepal down to the death of Bhimsen Thapa in 1838. The original text, written in Nepali interspersed with Sanskrit and Newari, was translated by the *mir munshi* (chief native clerk and interpreter) of the British Residency and by a Patan Buddhist scholar whose family had traditionally kept and updated the chronicle. The editor, who was Residency Surgeon from 1863 to 1876, contributes 'an introductory sketch of the country and people of Nepal', marked by a rather jaundiced view of the Nepalese in general but by considerable admiration of Maharaja Jang Bahadur Rana. Additional chapters, from other Nepali documents, give the supposed descent of the (royal) Shah and Rana families from the Rana rulers of Chittaurgarh in Rajasthan. Appendices include: brief definitions of terms for musical instruments and agricultural implements; details of coinage, weights and measures; a 214-word English-Nepali-Newari vocabulary; five Newari songs transliterated and translated; a king list starting from the earliest times; and a list of manuscripts presented by the author to Cambridge University. The work is illustrated by a Nepalese draughtsman and by portraits drawn from photographs. The text was reprinted in 1958, 1959, 1960, 1966 and 1972 by publishers in Calcutta, New Delhi and London.

## **History. Pre-1769**

### **Nepal et ses populations.**

*See* item no. 7.

### **Heritage of the Kathmandu Valley.**

*See* item no. 9.

### **Essays on the languages, literature and religion of Nepal and Tibet.**

*See* item no. 11.

### **Nepal: profile of a Himalayan kingdom.**

*See* item no. 20.

### **An introduction to Nepal.**

*See* item no. 21.

### **Le Népal – étude historique d'un royaume hindou. (Nepal – historical study of a Hindu kingdom.)**

*See* item no. 48.

### **Ancient Nepal.**

*See* item no. 146.

### **The disappearance and reappearance of Janakpur.**

*See* item no. 323.

### **Culture and religion: its historical background.**

*See* item no. 383.

### **The historic cities of Asia – Kathmandu.**

*See* item no. 718.

### **Rolamba.**

*See* item no. 772.

## **Pre-1769**

### **176 The Khasa kingdom – a trans-Himalayan empire of the Middle Ages.**

Surya Mani Adhikary. Jaipur, India: Nirala, 1988. 116p. map.  
bibliog. (Nirala History Series, 2).

This is the most up-to-date account available of the Khas or 'Western Malla' empire, which was centred in the Karnali basin in west Nepal and also covered a large area of western Tibet. The author brings together the results of earlier work, with some new material of his own. Appendices give English translations of relevant passages from Tibetan chronicles, and the original Nepali or Sanskrit texts, or English translations, of the Malla inscriptions; a list of taxes imposed by the central government; and an account of Pahadi (Indo-Nepalese) family names showing their frequent derivation from place-names in western Nepal or from the titles of officials in the Khas kingdom.

**177 Sanskrit inscriptions of Nepal. A politico-social study of the inscriptions of the time of Amsuvarman, Jisnugupta and Visnugupta, 7th century A.D.**

Manabendu Banerjee. Calcutta: Sanskrit Pustak Bhandar, 1985. 76p. bibliog.

This rather disappointing study is based largely on the work of Dilli Rahman Regmi (*Inscriptions of ancient Nepal* (q.v.)) and earlier scholars, and ignores the results of recent research by both Nepalese and western scholars.

**178 The wonder that was India.**

A. L. Basham. London: Sidgwick & Jackson, 1967. 568p. maps. bibliog. Calcutta: Rupa, 1981. 3rd. ed. 572p. maps. bibliog.

This standard work on the history and culture of India before the Muslim invasions contains few direct references to Nepal, but its analysis of early social, political and religious structures includes much that is relevant to the development of the modern Nepalese state and society.

**179 The Licchavis of Vaisali.**

Hit Narayan Jha. Foreword by A. L. Basham. Varanasi, India: Chowkhamba Sanskrit Series Office, 1970. 247p. bibliog. (Chowkhamba Sanskrit Studies).

The first part of this study deals with the Licchavi clan or tribe which was politically prominent in the time of the Buddha (6th century BC), was overthrown by the expanding power of the Magadha kingdom centred on modern Patna in north India, and later reemerged to play a rôle in the establishment of the Gupta empire in the 3rd century AD. The second part is an account of the dynasty of the same name which ruled in the Nepal Valley from about the 3rd to the 8th century AD and which claimed descent from the earlier Licchavis. The author accepts without argument that the claim was soundly based, and the Nepal section of the work is somewhat outdated because of the subsequent publication of more inscriptions from the period.

**180 The linguistic archaeology of the Nepal valley.**

Kamal Prakash Malla. *Kailash*, vol. 8, nos. 1-2 (1981), p. 5-23. bibliog.

The author analyses the non-Sanskritic nouns found in the Sanskrit inscriptions of the Licchavi period and shows that they can be identified as early Newari. He argues that this confirms the accounts in the *vamsavalis* of the Kirata (Tibeto-Burman-speaking) rulers in the Kathmandu Valley before the arrival of the Licchavis from India. He also suggests that the word 'Nepala', from which 'Newar' is derived, is a Sanskritization of the Tibeto-Burman roots *nhet* (cattle) and *pa* (man), and originally referred to a pastoral group found in the Valley when the main body of Kirata immigrants arrived. A related theme is treated in the author's 'River-names of the Nepal Valley, a study in cultural annexation' (*Contributions to Nepalese Studies*, vol. 10, nos. 1-2, p. 57-68), which examines the displacement of older Tibeto-Burman names by Sanskritic coinages.

## History. Pre-1769

### 181 **Mediaeval history of Nepal c.750-1482.**

Luciano Petech. Rome: Istituto Italiano per il Studio del Medio ed Estreme Oriente, 1984. 2nd ed. 254p. bibliog. map. (Serie Orientale Roma, no. LIV).

A revision of a work originally issued in 1958, this book presents a reconstruction of the history of the Kathmandu Valley from the time that the Licchavi stone inscriptions ended to the reign of Yaksha Malla, after which the Valley was divided into three separate kingdoms. In addition to the medieval *vamsavalis* the author makes extensive use of manuscript colophons – postscripts by scribes giving the name of the ruler and the regnal year in which they copied the document. The result is mostly a bare framework of dates of rulers, but the author also gives a succinct account of what little can be guessed about social and economic conditions. The chronology presented for the first part of the period has now been upset by the discovery of new manuscripts and users of the book should therefore also consult the review by Kamal Prakash Malla, *Contributions to Nepalese Studies*, vol. 12, no. 2 (April 1985), p. 121-36. For more data on the social and economic history of the medieval period, see also Bernard Kölver, Hemraj Sakya, *Documents from the Rudravarna-Mahavira, Patan. 1. sales and mortgages* (Sankt Augustin, GFR: VGH Wissenschaftsverlag, 1985).

### 182 **Medieval Nepal.**

Dilli Rahman Regmi. Calcutta: Firma Mukhopadhyay, 1965-66.  
3 vols. bibliog. maps. Patan, Nepal: The Author, 1966. 4 vols.

This mammoth study covers the history of Nepal from the 8th century AD down to the conquest of the Kathmandu Valley by Prithvi Narayan Shah in 1768. Volumes one and two (1966 edition) contain the main narrative, while volumes three and four comprise a collection of source materials (diaries, chronicles and inscriptions). Although a mine of information, the book is not very well put together and therefore not the easiest of reading.

### 183 **Inscriptions of ancient Nepal.**

Dilli Rahman Regmi. Delhi: Abhinav, 1983. 3 vols. bibliog.

Sanskrit texts of the corpus of Licchavi inscriptions (5th to 8th centuries AD), the earliest extant records from Nepal, are accompanied by translations and commentary. The work is marred by many misprints or misreadings, and does not fully acknowledge its debt to other scholars who have published their work in Nepali, but it remains the only full English translation available. The period of the inscriptions is also covered by the author's *Ancient Nepal* (Calcutta: Firma Mukhopadhyay, 1969. 3rd ed.), which is now very much out of date.

### 184 **Preliminary report on the art and architecture of the Karnali region, west Nepal.**

Prayag Raj Sharma. Introduction by Marc Gaborieau, foreword by Corneille Jest. Paris: Centre Nationale la Recherche Scientifique, 1972. 116p. 3 maps. bibliog.

This account covers the Malla empire in western Nepal from the 12th to the 14th centuries and describes temples and sculptures dating from the period or shortly afterwards. The description assumes some knowledge of standard technical terms in Hindu architecture and in ethnography. The author shows that the temple styles derive from those of Kumaon. He argues for a connection between the Thakuri caste and the Gujaras of western India, and for Malla expansion from Nepal into Tibet rather than

vice-versa as suggested in Giuseppe Tucci's *Preliminary report* (q.v.). The original English is accompanied by a French translation and the text is illustrated by black-and-white photographs taken by Gaborieau.

**185 The land system of the Licchavis of Nepal.**

Prayag Raj Sharma. *Kailash*, vol. 10, nos. 1-2 (1983), p. 11-62.  
bibliog.

In this stimulating re-examination of the Licchavi inscriptions, the author finds evidence for a pre-Licchavi system, perhaps similar to the traditional rights of chieftains of the Limbu tribe over the communal *kipat* land in later times. He suggests that this system was phased out through the restrictions on entry to villages of certain categories of officials. He also sees in the land grants to *panchalis* and other groups an attempt by the rulers to encourage communal settlements and argues that this might be responsible for the present highly nucleated pattern of Newar villages.

**186 Preliminary report on two scientific expeditions in Nepal.**

Giuseppe Tucci. Rome: Istituto Italiano per il Studio del Medio ed Estremo Oriente, 1956. 153p. bibliog. map. (Serie Orientale Roma X, Materials for the Study of Nepalese Culture and History, 1).

Describes the author's discoveries in Nepal, made mostly during an exploration of the Jumla region in 1954, which brought to light the existence of the medieval Khas or Malla kingdom. Sanskrit and Tibetan inscriptions are given in transcription, and a reconstruction of the kingdom's expansion in western Tibet and Nepal is attempted.

**187 The discovery of the Malla.**

Giuseppe Tucci. Translated from the Italian by Lovett Edwards.  
London: George Allen & Unwin, 1962. 96p.

This is a straightforward account for the non-specialist of the author's 1954 expedition and of the archaeological discoveries reported in detail in Giuseppe Tucci's *Preliminary report* (q.v.). The text is accompanied by sixty photographs, including maps of local people and art objects. A concluding 'Historical note' covers Nepalese history up to the royal *coup* of 1960.

**188 The Gopalarajavamsavali.**

Edited by Dhanavajra Vajracarya, Kamal Prakash Malla. Foreword by A. Wezler. Wiesbaden, GFR: Franz Steiner, 1985. 238p. bibliog.

This work gives the text of the oldest extant Nepalese chronicle, the 14th-century Sanskrit and Newari *Gopalarajavamsavali*, in Devanagari transcription, together with a facsimile of the original, and translations in English and Nepali. Also included are a general introduction, a glossary of Newari words, a place-name index and facsimiles of a fragmentary *vamsavali* from the collection of General Kaisher Shamsheer and also of another *vamsavali* discovered at Gorkha by Vajracharya. Although the book is primarily for specialists in medieval history and Newari linguistics, the introduction and English translation are of interest to the general reader. Just after its publication, Malla discovered a more complete version of the chronicle of which the Kaisher *vamsavali* is a fragment, and this longer text is published in *Contributions to Nepalese Studies*, vol. 12, no. 2 (April 1985), p. 75-101.

**History. 1769–1951**

**A journey of literary and archaeological research in Nepal and north India.**  
*See* item no. 19.

**I missionari italiani nel tibet e nel Nepal.**  
*See* item no. 52.

## 1769–1951

**189 Nepal under Jang Bahadur, 1846-77. Volume one.**

Krishna Kant Adhikari. Kathmandu: Buku, 1984. 364p. bibliog.

This is the first volume of a two-part work examining the detailed functioning of the machinery of government under Jang, and based largely on Nepalese documents. After a general introduction to 19th-century Nepal and an account of Jang's career, there are chapters on the central government, the army, district administration and the legal system. The original Nepali texts of some of the key documents are given as appendices.

**190 Anglo-Nepalese relations from the earliest times of the British rule in India till the Gorkha war.**

K. C. Chaudhuri. Calcutta: Modern Book Agency, 1960. 181p. map. bibliog.

Provides a competent account, written from British records, of the abortive British attempt to intervene in support of the last Newar king of Kathmandu against Prithvi Narayan Shah in 1767, and of subsequent attempts to establish commercial and political relations with the country down to 1814, including the Kirkpatrick and Knox missions in 1793 and 1801. Though less satisfactory as a treatment of the period as a whole than Ludwig F. Stiller's *The rise of the house of Gorkha* (q.v.), it is a useful supplement on points of detail.

**191 Papers respecting the Nepaul war.**

London: J. L. Cox, 1824. 996p. Reprinted, New Delhi: Bimla, 1983. 2 vols.

This extensive collection of documents on the 1814-16 war was published by order of the East India Company to assist in assessing the Marquess of Hastings' claims for additional remuneration at the end of his period as Governor-General of India.

**192 British attitude to Nepal's relations with Tibet and China, 1814 to 1914.**

Ravuri Dhanalaxmi. Chandigarh, India: Bahri, 1981. 182p. bibliog.

Drawing on British sources for this well-constructed account, Dhanalaxmi concludes that British India and China were for long jointly interested in restraining Nepalese designs on Tibet, but that towards the end of the period the British were also anxious to detach Tibet from Chinese influence and had assumed *de facto* control of Nepal's policy towards both Tibet and China.



**193 Patrimonial and bureaucratic administration in Nepal: historical change and Weberian theory.**

Daniel W. Edwards. Ph.D. thesis, University of Chicago, 1977.

Edwards examines the working of the Rana administration, basing his thesis largely on case studies from official Nepalese records. He argues that the Weberian dichotomy between a modern, rational bureaucratic system and a traditional, personalized one is not valid in the Nepalese case. Edwards has also produced a brief outline of the Nepalese administrative system in the early 1840s, based on the papers of the then British Resident, Brian Hodgson: 'Nepal on the eve of the Rana ascendancy', *Contributions to Nepalese Studies*, vol. 2, no. 1 (Feb. 1975), p. 99-118. Copies of Edward's thesis are available from the University of Chicago Library, Photoduplication Department, 1100 East 57th Street, Chicago, Illinois 60637, order no. T-26587 407P.

**194 Life of Brian Houghton Hodgson, British Resident at the court of Nepal, etc.**

Sir Wiliam Winter Hunter. London: John Murray, 1896. 390p. bibliog.

This enthusiastic account, by a family friend and former Indian civil servant, recounts the life of the man who is both the most celebrated British Resident in Nepal and the most famous Western student of the country. Hodgson was in Nepal for most of the period 1820 to 1843, and lived just outside its borders in Darjeeling for much of the next fifteen years, keeping in touch with personal friends in the country and continuing his research work. The author's depiction of Hodgson's role in Nepalese politics is not always reliable, especially when it depends on Hodgson's reminiscences in later years, but he gives a valuable portrait of him as a man and a scholar. Appendices give details of Hodgson's published works, of his manuscript collections and of the new genera and species that he discovered.

**195 British India's relations with the kingdom of Nepal: 1857-1947.**

Asad Husain. London: George Allen & Unwin, 1970. 408p. bibliog. map.

For this diplomatic history, the author had the advantage of access to the Indian National Archives up to 1935, these records being available to most scholars only up to 1914. The study stresses Nepal's independent status, and includes comparative material on the status of Hyderabad and Thailand *vis-à-vis* the British. It should be used with caution, as there are a number of inaccuracies. In particular, a letter to Maharaja Bir Shamsheer printed in an appendix and purporting to be from a Russian general is in fact the work of a Calcutta eccentric who had no official position.

**196 The emergence of a new aristocracy in Nepal.**

M. S. Jain. Agra, India: Sri Ram Mehra, 1972. 220p. bibliog.

This history of Nepalese politics from 1837 to 1857 covers the rise of Jang Bahadur and the establishment of the Rana régime, which is seen as the replacement of an old political élite by a new one. The book is a little difficult to read as so much of the material is cast as polemical footnotes to the main narrative, and it advances some ill-supported revisionist arguments on political intrigue in the 1830s and 1840s and on Jang Bahadur's codification of Nepalese law. It is nevertheless a creditable attempt to look critically at the sources and their orthodox interpretation.

## **History. 1769–1951**

### **197 Rana polity in Nepal: origin and growth.**

Satish Kumar. London: Asia Publishing House, 1967. 196p. map.

This is a pioneering study of the Rana period, which has to some extent been supplanted by more recent research. It remains a useful sketch, despite some errors.

### **198 Nepal: the years of trouble.**

Tri Ratna Manandhar. Kathmandu: Purna Devi Manandhar, 1986.  
296p. bibliog.

Provides a detailed study of internal politics and foreign relations under Maharaja Ranodip Rana, who succeeded Jang Bahadur in 1877, but was assassinated in 1885 by his Shamsher nephews. The author supplements the accounts previously written from the British side with material from archives in Nepal, thus giving the most complete available picture of court intrigue. A number of original documents are included as appendices. Manandhar has also published a collection of papers on Rana administration, *Some aspects of Rana rule* (Kathmandu: Purna Devi Manandhar, 1983. 160p.) and, with Tirtha Prasad Mishra, a study of the 'tribute' missions sent to Peking from 1792 to 1906, *Nepal's Quinquennial Missions to China* (Kathmandu: Purna Devi Manandhar & Pushpa Mishra, 1986. 110p.).

### **199 Les Rana et le pouvoir 1846-1951. (The Ranas and power.)**

Jean-Claude Marize. Thèse de troisième cycle, Université de Rouen, France, 1980. 350p. maps. bibliog.

Offers an account of the Rana period, focusing on political history, the legal framework and the caste structure. The work is particularly valuable for its incorporation of translations of a number of contemporary documents. A copy of this thesis can be obtained in Western Europe through inter-library loan from the Library of the Centre National de la Recherche Scientifique, 1, Place Aristide Briand-92195, Meudon, France. The author plans to publish this in English, illustrated with contemporary photographs.

### **200 Anglo-Nepalese relations in the 19th century.**

Kanchanmoy Mojumdar. Calcutta: K. L. Mukhopadhyay, 1973. 195p. 2 maps. bibliog.

This collection of previously published papers covers the same period as Ramakant's *Indo-Nepalese relations, 1816-77* (q.v.), but focuses on particular topics in greater detail. Especially useful are 'Nepal and Indian States, 1800-1850'; 'Nepal and the Indian Mutiny'; and 'Recruitment of Gorkhas in the Indian Army' (in which the time span is extended up to the 1920s). Other essays are: 'Maharani Jhinda in Nepal'; 'Last days of Nana Saheb'; and 'British attitudes to Nepal's relations with Tibet and China in the 19th century'.

### **201 Indo-Nepalese relations, 1877-1923.**

Kanchanmoy Mojumdar. New Delhi: Munshiram Manoharlal, 1973.  
331p. map. bibliog.

Based on British sources, this is a clear account of relations from the death of Jang Bahadur Rana to the 1923 treaty recognizing Nepal's fully independent status. The author stresses the evolving identity of interest between the Rana régime and the British in India, and the fact that the latter came to accept and even to value Nepal's isolationist policy as a precaution against 'subversive' influences. An opening chapter

summarizes earlier relations, and there is also a chapter on the overall British impact on Nepal.

**202 Nepal and the Indian nationalist movement.**

Kanchanmoy Mojumdar. Calcutta: K. L. Mukhopadhyay, 1975.  
110p. bibliog.

Discusses the links between the Indian struggle for independence and the Nepalese opposition to the Rana régime. The study covers the period 1907 to 1947.

**203 The invasion of Nepal: John Company at war.**

John Pemble. Oxford: Clarendon Press, 389p. 6 maps. bibliog.

Studies the Anglo-Gorkha war of 1814-16 and its background. The author's main interest is in the campaigns, and the light that they shed on the Bengal army as a military institution, and he writes almost solely on the basis of British sources. However, the book is well-written and remains the only detailed, modern account. The discussion of trans-Himalayan trade and of British misconceptions about it is also particularly interesting.

**204 Biography of Juddha Shamsheer J. B. Rana.**

Ishwari Prasad. New Delhi: Ashish, 1975. 348p.

A panegyric account by a personal friend, emphasizing Juddha's achievements, in particular the reconstruction programme after the 1934 earthquake, and playing down or ignoring the darker side of his rule. Despite its failings the book contains some interesting and useful information.

**205 History of the political and military transactions during the administration of the Marquess of Hastings, 1813-23.**

Henry T. Prinsep. London: Kingsbury, Parbury & Alen, 1825. 2 vols.  
3 maps.

This account of the Marquess of Hastings' time in India was written by a senior East India Company administrator who served under him. The first volume includes an account of the Anglo-Gorkha war which remains an important historical source. An appendix gives a translation of a famous letter from Amar Singh Thapa, commander of the Nepalese forces in the west of the country (now Indian territory) urging the government in Kathmandu not to sue for peace despite recent setbacks.

**206 Indo-Nepalese relations, 1816-77.**

Ramakant. Delhi, Bombay: S. Chand, 1968. 390p. bibliog.

Offers a straightforward chronological treatment of events from the end of the Anglo-Gorkha war to the death of Maharaja Jang Bahadur Rana. The book is written from the British records, often using their actual words even where no indication of direct quotation is given, and tends to accept its sources too uncritically. Nevertheless, it is a reliable and readable account of the main facts.

## **History. 1769–1951**

### **207 Nepal, rule and misrule.**

Daman Shamsheer Jang Bahadur Rana. New Delhi: Rajesh, 1978. 240p.

This political history of the Rana period from 1896 concentrates principally on events from the 1930s onwards. The author, a member of the ruling Rana family, served as a diplomat from the time of Maharaja Juddha Shamsheer (1934-1945) and was able to continue in the same rôle after 1951. There is a tendency to concentrate on personal and even trivial aspects, but the book does give some insight into the Rana régime in its final days.

### **208 Rana Nepal – an insider's view.**

Pramode Shamsheer Rana. Foreword by R. Allen. Kathmandu: R. Rana, 1978. 175p.

This account of Rana rule is written by a member of the family, although, despite the book's title, the author was not really a member of the inner circle. Rana relies mainly on oral tradition, and, in particular, on information given to him by the eminent Nepalese historian, Babu Ram Acharya. For information on the final years of the Rana régime, he also draws on his own recollections. The emphasis is on the racier and more sensational side of court life, but the book is of some value to the historian as well as to the general reader.

### **209 Life of Maharaja Sir Jung Bahadur Rana, C.G.B., C.G.S.I. of Nepal.**

Pudma Jung Bahadur Rana. Edited by Abhay Charan Mukerji. Allahabad, India: Pioneer, 1909. 314p. Reprinted, Kathmandu: Ratna Pustak Bhandar, 1974.

This panegyric biography of Jang Bahadur by his son was written when the latter was in exile in India following the Shamsheers' *coup* of 1885, and was intended principally to introduce the author and his family to Indian princely society. The book includes material on the early history of the family, mostly taken from a Hindi account written by one of Jang's former servants. The main narrative is partly based on diaries written by Jang or a close associate. Pudma Rana gives a partial and often inaccurate view of his subject, but this is the only full-length bibliography available, and is also interesting for the tone of earnest Victorian moralizing which Rana or his editor sometimes adopts.

### **210 Modern Nepal.**

Dilli Rahman Regmi. Calcutta: K. L. Mukhopadhyay, 1975. 2 vols. 2nd ed. 2 maps. bibliog.

Provides an account of the unification and expansion of Nepal from the reign of King Prithvi Narayan Shah to the outbreak of the Anglo-Gorkha war in 1814, with an introductory chapter on the pre-unification mini-states of the Gandaki and Karnali basins. The book incorporates a wealth of information from both British and Nepalese sources, but this is not very well organized. The study is valuable as a reference work, but those wishing for a general introduction to the period would be better served by Ludwig F. Stiller's *The rise of the house of Gorkha* (q.v.).

**211 A study in Nepali economic history, 1764-1846.**

Mahesh Chandra Regmi. New Delhi: Manjusri, 1971. 235p. map. bibliog.

This study of the period from Nepal's unification to the establishment of the Rana régime is the first in a series of studies by Regmi which are essentially extensions of the research undertaken for his *Land tenure and taxation in Nepal* (q.v.). The author relies mainly on Nepalese government records, which focus on revenue collection. Following this broader survey, the author has also published *Thatched huts and stucco palaces: peasants and landlords in 19th century Nepal*, (New Delhi: Vikas, 1978), a study of agrarian institutions and social relations; and *The state and economic surplus. Production, trade and resource mobilization in early 19th century Nepal* (Varanasi, India: Nath, 1984), which examines revenue collection from all sources, including state monopolies and commodity procurement.

**212 An economic history of Nepal, 1846-1901.**

Mahesh Chandra Regmi. Varanasi, India: Nath, 1988. 284p. bibliog.

In this examination of the early Rana period, up to the death of Maharaja Bir Shamsher, Regmi concentrates on the fiscal system, including the growing importance of the export of timber to India. He argues that although total state revenue increased substantially during this period, this increase was mainly the result of the bringing of greater areas of the *tarai* under cultivation rather than of any increase in the efficiency of production. Despite the strengthening of the administrative system, and new opportunities from the extension of the Indian rail system to the Nepal border, the government's need to allow a share in the surplus to the traditional élite at all levels has prevented full maximization of revenue potential.

**213 Nepal – strategy for survival.**

Leo E. Rose. Los Angeles, Berkeley, California: University of California Press, 1971; Delhi: Oxford University Press, 1973. 310p. bibliog. map.

This influential study examines Nepal's relations with India and China from the 1780s to the 1960s. The volume focuses on the confrontation period of wars with Tibet, China and British India (1789-1816), the alliance with the British developed by the Ranas after 1846, and the success of the Nepalese monarchy after 1945 in first ending Rana rule with Indian assistance and then fostering friendly relations with China to counteract Indian influence. Rose argues that the traditional policy of balancing one neighbour against the other, which was necessarily modified by the Ranas as British power increased and Chinese lessened, became feasible again in the 1950s. However, it was still necessary to take into account Nepal's greater economic and strategic dependence on India than on China.

**214 Nepal and the East India Company.**

Bhairava Dat Sanwal. London: Asia, 1965. 347p. bibliog. map.

This work is an account of Nepal's relations with British India from the reign of King Prithvi Narayan Shah down to the Indian Mutiny and the substitution of direct British government control for the East India Company's rule. Based on earlier published work rather than on archival sources, it is less reliable than the studies by K. C. Chaudhuri (*Anglo-Nepalese relations from the earliest times of the British rule in India till the Gorkha war* (q.v.)), Ramakant (*Indo-Nepalese relations, 1816-77* (q.v.));

## History. 1769–1951

Kanchanmoy Mojumdar (*Anglo-Nepalese relations in the 19th century* (q.v.)); and Ludwig F. Stiller (*The rise of the house of Gorkha* (q.v.)); *The silent cry – the people of Nepal; 1816–39* (q.v.).

### 215 **Modern Nepal: a political history 1769-1955.**

Rishikesh Shaha. New Delhi: Manohar, [1990]. 2 vols. map. bibliog.

A synthesis of research on the period from King Prithvi Narayan Shah's conquest of the Kathmandu Valley to the death of King Tribhuvan in 1955, this is the best one-volume treatment available, even though a little prolix in places. The treatment of the end of Rana rule is particularly valuable because Shaha was personally acquainted with most of the leading actors, and because he has made use of correspondence between London and the British Embassy in Kathmandu preserved in the Public Record Office and not yet examined by other historians. (Publication of this volume is imminent and proofs were viewed by the author.)

### 216 **Prithvi Narayan Shah in the light of Dibya Upadesh.**

Ludwig F. Stiller. Ranchi, India: Catholic Press, [1968]. 74p. bibliog.

Stiller translates the *Dibya Upadesh* (divine counsel), the political testament of the founder of modern Nepal. The translation is preceded by a good, summary account of the unification of the country, and is followed by a discussion of the king's internal and external policy in the light of the document.

### 217 **The rise of the house of Gorkha.**

Ludwig F. Stiller. Ranchi, India: Patna Jesuit Society, 1973. 388p. 11 maps. bibliog.

Describes the unification of Nepal under King Prithvi Narayan Shah of Gorkha in the 18th century and traces the country's subsequent expansion up until the defeat by the British in the 1814-16 war. The study combines a clear narrative of the main events with careful analysis of the economic and political situation before reunification and discussion of the interconnection between state, army and land assignments. The strength of the forces making for fragmentation, and thus the magnitude of the achievement in overcoming them, is highlighted, but the author argues that the need for land in order to remunerate a growing army forced the new state into too rapid expansion without the necessary consolidation. The book relies partly on British documents, but more especially on Nepalese primary sources and on research work published in Nepali.

### 218 **The silent cry – the people of Nepal; 1816-39.**

Ludwig F. Stiller. Kathmandu: Sahayogi, 1976. 344p. 2 maps. bibliog.

Examines Nepalese politics and society from the Treaty of Sagauli, which ended the war with the British, to the fall from power and death in prison of Bhimsen Thapa, who had dominated the country as *mukhtiyar* (minister) since before the war. The author argues that Bhimsen secured support for his long predominance by maintaining an over-large army and consequently placing an excessive burden on village Nepal; and that with territorial expansion no longer available as a safety valve, competition amongst the political élite for land assignments produced unmanageable tensions. The book includes analysis of revenue policy and of the assimilation of different groups to the dominant Hindu pattern, with a detailed study of appointments received by members of prominent families.

**219 Letters from Kathmandu: the Kot Massacre.**

Edited by Ludwig F. Stiller. Kirtipur, Nepal: Research Centre for Nepal and Asian Studies, 1981. 388p. map

Presents a selection of correspondence from the National Archives of India, mostly letters from the British Residency in Kathmandu preserved in the 'foreign secret' and 'foreign political' series, which are also found in the India Office Records in London. The letters illustrate the political history of Nepal from the appointment of Ranjang Pande as minister in 1840 to the British recognition of King Surendra in 1847. The editor has simplified the language in places, and provided linking commentary and introductions, with chronological charts of the main events in each section of the book. An 'Epilogue' gives a plausible reconstruction of the events leading immediately to the massacre of principal *bharadars* (courtiers) at the Kot (Kathmandu armoury) in September 1846, which brought Jang Bahadur to power and inaugurated the Rana régime.

**220 Indo-Nepalese relations (1858-1914).**

Sushila Tyagi. Delhi: D. K. Publishing, 1974. 183p. map. bibliog.

This account of the period between the Indian mutiny and the First World War adds little that is new, but may be convenient for those who need a detailed, one-volume account of the period, rather than consulting Ramakant's *Indo-Nepalese relations, 1816-77* (q.v.) and Kanchanmoy Mojumdar's two volumes, *Anglo-Nepalese relations in the 19th century* (q.v.) and *Indo-Nepalese relations, 1877-1923* (q.v.) for pre- and post-1877 developments.

**221 Nepal-Tibet relations 1850-1930.**

Prem R. Uprety. Kathmandu: Puga Nara, 1980. 250p. bibliog.

An account of early relations between Nepal and Tibet is followed by a detailed narrative, from the Nepal-Tibet war of 1855-56 to disputes concerning the Tibetan government's jurisdiction over alleged Nepalese subjects in Tibet in the 1920s. Whilst not radically revising the general picture given by earlier works, the author fills in details, making considerable use of Nepalese sources. He emphasizes Nepal's failure right from the beginning to make a reality of the theoretical advantages it received under the 1856 treaty with Tibet.

**222 Nepal – a small nation in the vortex of international conflicts, 1900-1950.**

Prem R. Uprety. Kathmandu: Pugo Mi, 1984. 344p. bibliog.

This diplomatic history of Nepal in the first half of this century concentrates on her involvement in the two World Wars and in lesser conflicts, through her alliance with British India and then with the Indian Republic. Uprety also emphasizes the radicalizing influence of international developments on many Nepalese.

**223 Jang Bahadur in Europe: the first Nepalese mission to the west.**

John Whelpton. Introduction by Rishikesh Shaha. Kathmandu: Sahayogi, 1983. 320p. 3 maps. bibliog.

Offers a translation, with commentary, of *Jang Bahadurko Belait Yatra*, an account by a travelling companion of Jang Bahadur Rana of the prime minister's journey to Britain and France in 1850, written to glorify Jang but also presenting the genuine reactions of its unsophisticated author to European civilization. The translation is preceded by an account of Jang's career, an analysis of Anglo-Nepalese relations down to 1850, and

## **History. 1769–1951**

discussion of the document's origin and perspective. Also included are extracts from British and French newspaper coverage of the visit, and appendices on the conflicting accounts of the Kot Massacre and on Shersingh Rana's narrative of his 1911 stay in London. Rishikesh Shah's introduction provides a narrative of events from 1837 to 1846 from a draft chapter of his *Nepal Modern: a political history* (q.v.).

### **224 Kings, soldiers and priests: Nepalese politics and the rise of Jang Bahadur Rana, 1830-1857.**

John Whelpton. New Delhi: Manohar, 1990. ca. 275p.

This is the most thorough analysis yet made of internal politics from the downfall of Bhimsen Thapa to the establishment of Jang Bahadur's rule. The study examines the interrelationship of the monarchy and the leading families within the political élite, bringing out the important rôle played by the Basnets and providing a clearer picture than hitherto of the erratic policy pursued by Brian Hodgson in the 1830s and 1840s. The working of the political system is analysed with particular emphasis on traditional Hindu political values, and on the importance of the Brahman *rajgurus* and of the army.

### **Rough notes on the state of Nepal.**

See item no. 30.

### **Reminiscences of an Indian official.**

See item no. 31.

### **Nepal.**

See item no. 45.

### **With a king in the clouds.**

See item no. 47.

### **Sketches from Nepal, historical and descriptive.**

See item no. 49.

### **Friends in high places – a season in the Himalayas.**

See item no. 106.

### **Land ownership in Nepal.**

See item no. 684.

### **Nepal rediscovered. Court life from 1846 to 1951.**

See item no. 815.



# Population, Family Planning and Health Services

**225 Primary health care in the hills of Nepal.**

Thomas Achard. Kathmandu: Integrated Hill Development Project, His Majesty's Government/Swiss Agency for Technical Assistance, 1983. 105p. map. bibliog.

The author, who was head of the health sector for the Integrated Hill Development Project in 1979/1982, gives an account of the health situation in Dolakha district, Janakpur zone, and of the project staff's attempts to remedy it. Results of a sample demographic survey, including causes of deaths, are included.

**226 Immunization cover of children in a semi-urban village panchayat in Nepal, 1985.**

Indu B. Ahluwalia, Steven D. Helgerson, Frank J. Bia. *Social Science and Medicine*, vol. 26, no. 2 (1988), p. 265-68. bibliog.

This survey of a village panchayat near the capital, shows that while fifty-four per cent of children aged three or under had received at least one immunization, only four per cent had received the full recommended programme. Mothers had normally become aware of the availability of vaccination through word of mouth. The researchers' recommendations include the timing of immunization teams' visits to fit in better with mothers' schedules, and the involvement of local traditional healers in the publicity campaign.

**227 Approaches to illness in the Nepalese hills.**

Nicholas J. Allen. In: *Social Anthropology and Medicine*. Edited by Joseph B. Loudon. London, New York: Academic Press, 1976, p. 500-52.

Allen discusses concepts of illness amongst the Thulung Rai of eastern Nepal, taking as his starting point the terms used by the tribe's religious practitioners for the conditions they claim to be able to deal with: these include items such as 'envy' and 'curses' as well as medical complaints as they are understood in the west. Similarly, the Thulung Rai's word nearest in meaning to health (*seor*) combines the notions of individual

## **Population, Family Planning and Health Services**

physical well-being and good fortune with that of a relation to ancestors. Illness is generally attributed to evil spirits or to witchcraft, but the distinction between the two is not clearcut and the author warns against trying to apply precise Western categories to the situation. There is also a discussion of the relationship between 'tribal priests' and 'spirit mediums' and of the former's lesser ability to withstand competition from Brahmans and Hindu ascetics.

### **228 The population dynamics of Nepal.**

Judith Banister, Shyam Thapa. Honolulu, Hawaii: East-West Center, 1981. 119p. 2 maps. bibliog. (East-West Population Center Papers, 78).

This survey examines the demographic pattern from the early 1950s to the late 1970s, finding that population growth remained high despite the government family planning programme. The linked problems of declining agricultural productivity and environmental deterioration are discussed, and a population of over twenty million is forecast for the end of the century. A figure of between 26.7 and 51.1 million is projected for the year 2030.

### **229 The child in Nepal.**

Edited by M. R. Baral. Kathmandu: Nepal Medical Association, 1979. 204p. bibliog.

This volume contains a collection of articles by various authors on child health care in Nepal, including contributions on malnutrition, blindness, common children's diseases, health education and child welfare. The book highlights existing conditions in these areas and considers policy implications. It was presented as a souvenir at the International Year of the Child Seminar held in Kathmandu in December 1979. Copies can be ordered from the Nepal Medical Association, P.O. Box 189, Kathmandu.

### **230 Sex and motherhood among the Brahmans and Chetris of Nepal.**

Lynn Bennett. *Contributions to Nepalese Studies*, vol. 3 (Special Issue on Anthropology, Health and Development) (1976), p. 1-52. bibliog.

Offers a useful survey of attitudes and practices concerning sexual relations, fertility, menstruation, pregnancy, childbirth, and the care of young children. The author reports a belief among women that sexual intercourse tends to debilitate and that practising birth control can have the same effect. However, women suggested that in both cases the ill effects could be counteracted by eating especially nutritious food!

### **231 Population and society in Nepal: an overview.**

D. D. Dani. In: *Nepal Himalaya: geo-ecological perspectives*. Edited by S. C. Joshi et al. Naini Tal, India: Himalayan Research Group, 1986, p. 163-73.

This survey article describes the distribution of the Nepalese population on the basis of the 1981 census, and discusses population growth since 1920. Migrations and ethnic diversity are also considered.

**232 Medical bibliography of Nepal.**

Hemang Dixit. Kathmandu: Tribhuvan University Institute of Medicine, 1978. 62p.

This bibliography includes nineteen published books, forty-three cyclostyled items, 120 World Health Organisation reports, 427 articles published in Nepalese and foreign professional journals (arranged under alphabetical order of subjects), forty-six items in languages other than English or Nepali, and titles in Nepali (in Devanagari script).

**233 The fabulous Flemings of Kathmandu: the story of two doctors in Nepal.**

Grace Nies Fletcher. New York: Dutton, 1964; London: Hodder & Stoughton, 1965. 219p. map.

The author describes the work of Bethel Fleming, who established the United Mission to Nepal's Shanta Bhawan hospital in Kathmandu in 1956, and of her husband, Robert Fleming, the prominent Himalayan ornithologist. Details of the United Mission's expansion to Tansen and other parts of the country are included. The author, who writes from a similar Christian perspective to her subjects, visited the Flemings in Nepal in 1963/64. Shanta Bhawan hospital has since moved to new premises in Patan.

**234 The quality of data in the Nepal fertility survey.**

Noreen Goldman, Ansley Coale, Maxine Weinstein. Voorburg, Netherlands: International Statistical Institute; London: World Fertility Survey, 1979. 38p. (Scientific Reports, 6).

Offers a detailed analysis of the reliability of the Ministry of Health's 1976 fertility survey, pointing out in particular that respondents' recollection of births more than a few years before the survey date may be inaccurate. The authors' main findings are discussed in Jayanti Man Tuladhar's *The persistence of high fertility in Nepal* (New Delhi: Inter-India Publishers, 1989).

**235 The role of non-governmental and class organisations in family planning programmes.**

Kathmandu: Himalaya Studies Centre, 1984. 251p. bibliog.

Commissioned by the National Commission on Population, this report examines the work in family planning of non-governmental organizations and of the class organizations set up under the panchayat constitution, with the help of a questionnaire administered to policy makers, field-workers, and contraceptive users. The study concludes that such organizations are better suited to increase motivation and awareness rather than to provide a technical medical service.

**236 Politics, plans and people: culture and health development in Nepal.**

Judith Justice. Berkeley, Los Angeles, California: University of California Press, 1986. 202p. 2 maps. bibliog.

This study, which was carried out in 1977-79, surveys Nepal's Integrated Community Health Programme. Originally formed by the amalgamation of separate projects for the control of smallpox, malaria, leprosy, tuberculosis, family planning and maternal and child health, the Community Programme was intended to be expanded into a comprehensive health care service. The author examines the whole process, from formulation of policy at national and international level down to implementation in the villages. She emphasizes the cultural gulf between the foreign consultants and Nepalese

## **Population, Family Planning and Health Services**

administrators, and also between the villagers and the urban and educated health workers. She finds that a key rôle in bridging the gap between villagers and health workers is played by the locally recruited *peons* (unskilled assistants). Some of her conclusions are also presented in two articles: 'Can socio-cultural information improve health planning? A case study of Nepal's assistant nurse midwives', *Social Science and Medicine*, vol. 19, no. 3 (1983), p. 193-98; and 'The invisible worker: the role of the peon in Nepal's health service', *Social Science and Medicine*, vol. 17, no. 14 (1983), p. 967-70.

### **237 Law and population in Nepal: some strategy for action.**

Balaram Kafle. Kathmandu: Legal Services and Research Centre, 1983. 85p. bibliog.

The author surveys the population situation in general, and then examines the laws which affect it. He recommends a number of changes, including the liberalization of provisions on abortion, which might help contain population growth.

### **238 Resources and population: a study of the Gurungs of Nepal.**

Alan Macfarlane. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1976. 364p. maps. bibliog. (Cambridge Studies in Social Anthropology, 12).

This study, which focuses particularly on the village of Thak, north of Pokhara, uses Gurung legends, 19th-century British documents and other sources to trace the Gurungs' transition from pastoralism and slash-and-burn cultivation down to the intensive agriculture now practised. The author traces demographic trends in detail and concludes that although various factors still keep Gurung fertility below that of other Nepalese groups, it is unlikely to be reduced by voluntary birth control. He uses the case study, together with extensive material on other societies and periods, to argue that increasing populations are not the result of the reduction of the death rate by modern medicine but rather the normal trend in most countries throughout history, and that the consequent imbalance between population and resources has usually been corrected by intermittent catastrophe rather than reduction of the birth-rate.

### **239 Faith-healers in the Himalayas.**

Casper J. Miller. Foreword by Dor Bahadur Bista, introduction by Alexander Macdonald. Kathmandu: Centre for Nepal and Asian Studies, 1979. 201p.

Presents a study of the *jhankris* (or faith-healers) of Dolakha district in the eastern hills of the Himalaya. Miller stresses that the faith-healers are regarded as being possessed by spirits, while, at the same time, managing to exert control over them. He argues that the *jhankris* differ clearly from priests, who operate on the spirit world 'at a distance' through prayers and offerings, and also from Western-style doctors, who, as seen from the traditional perspective, operate on the physical symptoms rather than the spiritual causes of illness. The author also stresses the absence of hierarchical organization amongst the *jhankris* and suggests that attempts to co-opt them into the government's health services are misguided: they should be left to work on their own alongside expanding conventional medicine.

**240 Nepal fertility and family planning survey report.**

Ministry of Health, Nepal Family Planning and Maternal Child Health Project. Kathmandu, 1987. 199p. bibliog.

Provides a survey of over 5000 households, offering the most up-to-date picture available of fertility, infant mortality, family size preferences, breast-feeding and knowledge of and use of contraceptives. Results are measured against the baseline established by a similar survey in 1976 (a smaller survey was carried out in 1981). The total fertility rate is found to have declined only marginally from 6.38 to 6.02 children per ever-married woman, but use of contraception climbed from 2.9 per cent to 15.1 per cent of women of reproductive age; the last figure is said by some critics to be still too low as it does not tally with statistics of condom sales. The survey includes a message from Gunjeswori Prasad Singh, a foreword by T. B. Prasai, a preface by Tara B. Khetri and acknowledgements by the project coordinator, Jayant M. Tuladhar.

**241 Internal and international migration in Nepal – summary and recommendations.**

National Commission on Population, Task Force on Migration. Preface by Harka Gurung. Kathmandu, 1983. 76p.

Offers an English summary of the controversial report prepared by a working party under the chairmanship of leading Nepalese geographer, and former minister, Harka Gurung. The group examined principally population movements into the Kathmandu Valley from elsewhere in Nepal and into the *tarai* from India. A political furore was created by their recommendations that the latter problem be tackled by ending the open border system, requiring those crossing to produce passports, and placing restrictions on the rights of naturalized citizens and on the trading activities of non-citizens. This was seen by the mass of the *tarai* population, who are mostly of recent Indian origin, as a direct threat to their position. Harka Gurung's *Regional patterns of migration in Nepal, 1952-54 – 1981* is shortly to be published by the East-West Centre, Honolulu, Hawaii.

**242 Population monograph of Nepal.**

National Planning Commission, Central Bureau of Statistics. Kathmandu, 1987. 358p. map.

Despite some lapses in editing (different figures are given on pages 260 and 283 for the 1981 crude birth rate, whilst the chapter on population projections referred to on page 16 is not included but actually published separately), this is the most thorough and up-to-date analysis available. Using data from the 1981 census and a number of sample surveys, this monograph largely supersedes the United Nations' report of 1980, *Population of Nepal* (q.v.). Coverage includes population growth and distribution, age, sex, mother tongue and religious composition, nuptiality, internal migration, urbanization, economic activity, female status and fertility and mortality trends. Chapters on family planning, education and health services summarize progress in these areas, whilst appendices discuss data sources and reliability, including causes of census error and of the failure to make the recently introduced compulsory registration of deaths and births completely effective. There is an admission that net international migration cannot be accurately ascertained.

## **Population, Family Planning and Health Services**

### **243 Population projection of Nepal: national, regional and sectoral 1981-2001.**

National Planning Commission, Central Bureau of Statistics.  
Kathmandu, 1986. 83p.

This booklet provides the information omitted from *Population monograph of Nepal* (q.v.). It includes four sets of projections (high, medium, low and plausible), at national and regional level, together with projections for urban and rural areas, of labour force and of school-age population. Details of fertility, mortality, and migration rates are also given.

### **244 Demographic sample survey, 1986/7. First report.**

National Planning Commission, Central Bureau of Statistics.  
Kathmandu, 1987. 89p.

Publishes the results of the first round of a survey intended to provide data on fertility, mortality and migration, and to investigate the factors causing them to change. An explanation of the survey methodology and of the general results obtained is followed by tables giving details of age and sex distribution; literacy; educational attainment; school enrolment; nuptiality; mean age; age differentials at marriage; fertility; infant mortality; and immigration. Main results include a literacy rate of thirty-five per cent for those over six years old; net primary school enrolment still below fifty per cent; fertility remaining at six births per woman; infant mortality of 110 to 113 per thousand; and immigration at twenty-eight per thousand (the figure of sixteen in the 1981 census is ascribed to under-reporting).

### **245 Breast feeding in Nepal: religious and culture beliefs.**

Sudha Paneru. *Contributions to Nepalese Studies*, vol. 8. no. 2 (June 1981), p. 44-53. bibliog.

This article gives statistics on the prevalence of breast-feeding in Nepal, and shows that the practice is supported by the country's religious and cultural framework. Breast-feeding is still predominant in Nepal, but the trend of younger women to abandon it for bottle-feeding should be resisted, and the relatively poor nutrition of women compared to men can still pose a threat to child health. The author has also published *Traditional and prevailing child-rearing practices in Nepal* (Kirtipur, Nepal: Centre for Nepal and Asian Studies, 1980), which examines child care among Thakuris, Newars, Sherpas and Tharus.

### **246 Population growth and employment opportunities in Nepal.**

Yadav Prasad Pant. New Delhi: Oxford University Press,  
IBH, 1983. 131p. bibliog.

Although general and perhaps slightly superficial, this survey includes data on unemployment and underemployment taken from the National Planning Commission's 1977 *Survey of employment, income distribution and consumption patterns in Nepal* (q.v.), suggesting a figure for unutilized labour days of sixty-four per cent in rural and forty-six per cent in urban areas. The author describes current population and employment practices and makes detailed recommendations, including an incentives-based birth-control programme and the creation of non-agricultural work opportunities in agro-based industries.

247 **Ritual coordination of medical pluralism in highland Nepal.**

Barbara Parker. *Social Science and Medicine*, vol. 27, no. 9 (1988), p. 919-26. bibliog.

Provides an account of the traditional curing network and of the *mu tu* divination ceremony practised among the Thakali population of the upper Kali Gandaki valley. Arguing on lines similar to those of Ramesh M. Shrestha and Mark Lediard in *Faith healers: a force for change* (q.v.), the author advocates the employment of traditional healers as agents in government health programmes. She suggests that the integration of differing medical systems can be facilitated by the syncretic attitudes common in Hindu-influenced social systems.

248 **What does distance matter? Leprosy control in west Nepal.**

Maggie Pearson. *Social Science and Medicine*, vol. 26, no. 1 (1988), p. 25-36. bibliog. maps.

The author outlines the consequences in Lamjung district, central Nepal, of the decision to move responsibility for the leprosy control programme to village health posts. She argues that although facilities were in theory within easier reach of those who required them, the move was counter-productive because of the justified lack of confidence of local people in the health posts' competence and because the stigma still attached to the disease caused many sufferers to prefer to seek treatment anonymously at a distant centre.

249 **Ecstasy and healing in Nepal: an ethnopsychiatric study of Tamang shamanism.**

Larry C. Peters. Introduction by Jacques Maquet. Malibu, California: Undena, 1981. 179p. bibliog. (Other Realities, vol. 4).

This unusual study was written by a researcher who apprenticed himself to a shaman, and experienced the characteristic trance. Peters sees the shaman's rôle as strongly analagous to that of a Western psycho-analyst. The book includes a general introduction to shamanism: the term itself comes from Siberia, but derives ultimately from the Sanskrit root *sram* (to practise austerities), which was transmitted to northern Asia via tantric Buddhism. There is also background information on the Tamangs of Boudha (the area around the Boudhanath stupa on the north-east side of Kathmandu) and the neighbouring hamlet of Tin Chuli.

250 **Surgeon in Nepal.**

Peter Pitt. John Murray: London, 1970. 225p. map.

A doctor who worked for two years at the British Military Hospital in Dharan recounts his experiences, concentrating mostly on the cases of villagers who came to the hospital for treatment. The author often goes into considerable medical detail, as well as commenting on life in the hills as reflected in his patients' condition. Appendices contain a glossary of medical terms and a list of the distances from Dharan to other places mentioned in the text. Although the author's work took place in the late 1960s and there has since been some expansion of Nepalese government facilities, the book still offers a valid portrait of the range of medical problems in the hills and of the rôle of the British Medical Hospital. Another account of a British doctor's experiences in Nepal is *Kingdom in the sky* (London: Souvenir Press, 1975), by John S. Cunningham, who set up the Britain-Nepal Medical Trust clinics in the country in the late 1960s.

## **Population, Family Planning and Health Services**

### **251 Patterns of change in the Nepal Himalaya.**

M. Poffenberger. New Delhi: Macmillan, 1980. 117p. map. bibliog.

Provides a clear and concise exposition of the population and ecological problem in Nepal. Poffenberger emphasizes the fact that, given current economic conditions in the hills, it continues to be rational from the individual couple's point of view to produce more children than the country as a whole can support. Like Alan Macfarlane in *Resources and population* (q.v.), the author ascribes the population explosion in Nepal to the disappearance of factors such as war, slavery and excessive taxation, rather than to improvements in health. He argues from the experience of China and Bali that a birth control programme needs grassroots organizations and that traditional collective institutions such as *kipat* (land tenure) and the *dhikur* (rotating credit associations) in the hills might be suitable for this rôle.

### **252 The role of massage in South Asia: child health and development.**

Nadja Reissland, Richard Burghart. *Social Science and Medicine*, vol. 25, no. 3 (1987), p. 231-39.

The authors describe the practice of daily massage of young babies by the women of Mithila, a region covering part of the eastern Nepalese *tarai* and of the Indian state of Bihar. They deal both with technique and with the local belief that such massage affects the child's future development, both physical and psychological. The article is illustrated with black-and-white photographs.

### **253 The quality of a mother's milk and the health of her child: beliefs and practice of the women of Mithila.**

Nadja Reissland, Richard Burghart. *Social Science and Medicine*, vol. 27, no. 5 (1988), p. 461-69. bibliog.

This article describes in considerable detail customary practices and their supposed rationale, including the prohibition on breast-feeding by the mother for the first twenty-four hours after birth. Both the mothers themselves and the practitioners of medicine in the Ayurvedic tradition see mother's milk as crucial to a child's physical and psychological development, and disease in childhood is regularly attributed to deficiencies in the milk.

### **254 Barriers to effective family planning in Nepal.**

Sydney Ruth Schuler, E. Noel Mackintosh, Melvyn C. Goldstein, Badri Raj Pande. *Studies in Family Planning*, vol. 16, no. 5 (Sept./Oct. 1985), p. 260-70. bibliog.

The authors describe an interesting experiment, in which Nepalese of differing class and caste posed as prospective clients at family planning clinics in and around Kathmandu, an area where opinion surveys suggest many couples would now like to limit their families. It was found that clinic personnel often gave inaccurate information and even tried to dissuade enquirers from using family planning if they had not yet had a son. Staff were often rude and domineering towards clients of low social class or caste, and the latter were not confident enough to challenge the responses they were given. The authors recommend improved staff training and the breakdown of social barriers by requiring that workers visit people in their own homes rather than remaining in the formal environment of the clinic.



**255 A preliminary report on population pressure and land resources in Nepal.**

Nanda R. Shrestha. *Journal of Developing Areas*, vol. 16, no. 2 (Jan. 1982), p. 197-212. map. bibliog.

The author uses census data to calculate indices of population pressure and of product per capita in the primary sector for different parts of the country. He stresses that the severity of the problem differs greatly from area to area, and argues that changes in the socio-political structure are required, rather than reliance on technology alone.

**256 Faith healers: a force for change: preliminary report of an action-research project.**

Ramesh M. Shrestha, Mark Lediard. Kathmandu: The Authors, with assistance from UNFPA/UNICEF, 1981. 129p. bibliog.

Reports an experiment in the use of *dharmis* and *jhankris* (traditional faith-healers) to promote acceptance of birth control and basic health care. A hundred such practitioners (twenty-five each from Dolakha, Ilam, Kanchanpur and Syangja districts), were given training in a four-day workshop, at which no attempt was made to challenge their own existing beliefs. Interviews with them immediately before and after the training and six months later indicate considerable success: for example, trainees claimed to have induced 1,364 persons to accept family planning by the end of the initial period. The authors argue that given the great number of faith healers in the kingdom (they put the figure at between 400,000 and 800,000) and also villagers' trust in them, their enlistment is by far the most cost-effective way of tackling the problem.

**257 Concepts of illness and curing in a central Nepal village.**

Linda Stone. *Contributions to Nepalese Studies*, vol. 3 (Special Issue on Anthropology, Health and Development), (1976), p. 55-80. bibliog.

In this article, based on work in a village in the Nuwakot district, fifty miles north-west of Kathmandu, the author argues that the villagers do not in general see traditional and Western medicine as mutually exclusive alternatives and are willing to make use of both. Some conflict has, however, been brought about by specific distrust of the government hospital at Trisuli, and by the attitude of some development workers. The author has now published a full-length study, *Illness beliefs and feeding the dead in Hindu Nepal - an ethnographic analysis* (Lewistown, New York: Edward Mellen, 1988).

**258 Primary health care for whom? Village perspectives from Nepal.**

Linda Stone. *Social Science and Medicine*, vol. 22, no. 3 (1986), p. 293-302. bibliog.

This article identifies three factors contributing to the problems which the Primary Health Care programme in Nepal has encountered: failure to take into account villagers' own wish for curative services rather than health education; a generally negative view of the villagers' own culture and beliefs; and the mistaken belief that traditional healers are in a position of authority over fellow-villagers and are in total command of a passive patient during the curing process. The author criticizes the book by Ramesh M. Shrestha and Mark Lediard, *Faith healers: a force for change* (q.v.), for encouraging this last misconception, although she does not oppose the strategy of involving practitioners of traditional medicine in government health programmes. The conclusions are based on field-work undertaken in Central Nepal in 1973-75 and on subsequent visits in 1979, 1980 and 1983.

## **Population, Family Planning and Health Services**

### **259 Population and development in Nepal: an annotated bibliography.**

Edited by Prabha Thacker. Foreword by Kul Shekhar Sharma, introduction by Bedh Prakash Upreti. Kathmandu: National Commission on Population, 1984. 99p.

This bibliography comprises 152 entries, grouped under the following subject headings: demographic aspects; family planning and health (including methods and delivery systems); social, economic, cultural and psychological aspects of population and family planning; information, education and communication; policy and programmes. There are author and title indexes and a list of subject divisions within each chapter heading. Published books, unpublished reports and theses are included, but not journals or journal articles. Helpful annotations include the source of the information.

### **260 Population and family planning in Nepal.**

Jayanti Man Tuladhar, B. B. Gubhaju, John Stoeckel. Foreword by Mohan Man Sainju. Kathmandu: Ratna Pustak Bhandar, 1978. 125p. 3 maps. bibliog.

Based on research conducted in 1972-73, this study gives a description of the country's population structure and of government population programmes. The authors outline the results of studies of the effectiveness of various family planning techniques, and tentatively suggest an alternative approach to encourage smaller families with a combination of incentives and penalties. Tuladhar has recently published *The persistence of high fertility in Nepal* (New Delhi: Inter-India, 1989).

### **261 Population of Nepal.**

United Nations Economic and Social Commission for Asia and the Pacific. Bangkok, 1980. 219p. (ESCAP Country Monograph Series, 6).

Produced through the collaboration of the ESCAP secretariat and Nepalese experts, and mostly written by the latter, this analysis has largely been superseded by the Nepalese government's own more recent *Population monograph of Nepal* (q.v.), produced by the National Planning Commission. However, much of the discussion is still valid, and the chapters by Chapla Pandey on 'Population growth and health development', and by Dhurba Bar Singh Thapa on 'Law and population' (covering family law and the census itself) are particularly valuable. The chapter by B. S. Rajbanshi and B. B. Gubhaju reviews various population projections without choosing between them, the latest including a population forecast of twenty-four to twenty-six million for the end of the century. The financial implications of the different projections are discussed in Meena Acharya's chapter. Annexes cover the data sources (contributed by the ESCAP secretariat) and evaluate data quality.

### **262 Children and women of Nepal. A situation analysis.**

Aditya Man Shrestha, Harka Gurung, Maria Carla Roncoli, Rosalyn Morris, Sara Cameron. Kathmandu: UNICEF, 1987. 202p. maps. bibliog.

Surveys the development of children up to the age of fifteen and offers recommendations on how their conditions and those of their mothers could be improved. Areas focused on include health, disability, mortality, education and socialization.

**263 Nepal health survey 1965-6.**

Robert M. Worth, Narayan K. Shah. Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1969. 158p. bibliog.

The statistical information included is outdated, and the nutritional situation has deteriorated since this survey was conducted of the population of one village in fifteen hundred in Nepal. However, the survey is still of some use as a guide to the major varieties of illness encountered in the hills. There is a discussion of the issues of sanitation, ventilation and water supplies, and details of infestation of animals and birds as well as of humans in the sample areas. The authors recommend the training of local people as health workers.

**Sacred and useful trees and plants of Nepal.**

*See* item no. 129.

**Spirit possession in the Nepal Himalayas.**

*See* item no. 333.

**Land and migration in far-western Nepal.**

*See* item no. 362.

**The seventh plan 1985-90 (a summary).**

*See* item no. 615.

**Drive against poverty – Nepal.**

*See* item no. 620.

**Earth, man, trees: development aid in Nepal.**

*See* item no. 664.

**Population, labour force and employment.**

*See* item no. 695.

**Nepal Himalaya: geo-ecological perspectives.**

*See* item no. 703.

**Population census 1981.**

*See* item no. 885.

**The use and misuse of social science research in Nepal.**

*See* item no. 909.

# Languages

## General

264 **Nepali and Pahari.**

Thomas Welbourne Clark. In: *Current trends in linguistics*. Edited by Thomas A. Seboek. Paris; The Hague: Mouton, 1969. vol. 5, p. 249–76. bibliog.

In this survey article, the author uses 'Pahari' as a group label for the non-Indo-European languages of Nepal, rather than in its usual sense of Nepali and the Indian dialects closely related to it. In his treatment of Nepali, Clark is particularly interested in the problem of standardizing the orthography, and discusses disapprovingly some radical proposals for reform put forward by individual scholars of the language.

265 **Seminar papers in linguistics – problems and perspectives in linguistic studies.**

Edited by Lindsay C. Friedman. Foreword by Prayag Raj Sharma. Kirtipur, Nepal: Institute of Nepal and Asian Studies, 1976. 176p.

Comprises a collection of papers presented at a seminar in November 1974, with summaries of ensuing discussions. One or two contributions are quite technical but the majority are suitable for the general reader. Particularly interesting are Kamal Prakash Malla's review of previous linguistic studies in Nepal with special emphasis on the rôle of the Summer Institute of Linguistics (p. 1-9); Churamani Bandhu's discussion of problems in Nepali orthography, though this presupposes some prior knowledge of terminology (p. 103-13); Beth Morton's suggestions for the bilingual education of those who are not native speakers of Nepali (p. 117-35); Balabh Mani Dahal on 'Linguistic perspectives and priorities in Nepal' (p. 161-71); and Subhadra Subba's survey of the main languages currently spoken in the country (p. 139-50).

**266 The linguistic survey of India.**

Edited by Sir George Grierson. Calcutta: Superintendent of Government Printing, 1909. 11 vols. Reprinted, Delhi: Motilal Banarsidass, 1967.

The main Tibeto-Burman languages of Nepal (including the Newari, Gurung and Tibetan dialects) are treated in volume three, part one, p. 106-567 of this classic work on the languages of South Asia, while Nepali itself (as part of the Pahari group, including the dialects of Kumaon and Garhwal) is discussed in volume nine, part four, p. 1-99. While the statistical information is, of course, completely out-of-date, the grammar summaries and specimen texts, with Roman transliteration and English translation, are still of value, as is the discussion of the origins of Nepali.

**267 Clause, sentence and discourse patterns.**

Edited by Austin Hale, David Watters. Kathmandu: Summer Institute of Linguistics, 1973. 4 vols.

Represents work by a number of linguists carried out under the Summer Institute's linguistics research programme in Nepal in the early 1970s. The first two volumes include separate detailed studies of Nepali, Maithili, Kham, Sherpa, Sunwar and Tamang, whilst more general chapters, seeking to establish a universal set of categories for grammatical analysis, also draw examples from Newari and other languages. Whilst this material is only for the specialist, the Nepali, Sherpa, Jirel and Magar texts, with translations and word lists for these and five other languages in volumes three and four, may be of wider interest. Hale is also co-editor, with Kenneth L. Pike, of *Tone systems of Tibeto-Burman languages in Nepal* (Urbana, Illinois: Department of Linguistics, University of Illinois, 1970) in the Wolfenden Society on Tibeto-Burman Linguistics' Occasional Papers Series.

**268 Bibliographical index of the lesser-known languages and dialects of Nepal.**

Richard D. Hugoniot. Waxhaw, South Carolina: Summer Institute of Linguistics, 1970. 312p.

This bibliography, which classifies Nepali itself as a 'minor language', comprises 2218 entries, marked according to whether they are primarily of linguistic, anthropological or miscellaneous interest. The entries are arranged alphabetically by author, with an index of languages at the front, including information on location, language family and group and dialects. There are around thirty entries on Nepali and a similar number for Newari.

**269 Diversity and change in the languages of highland Nepal.**

Michael James Hutt. *Contributions to Nepalese Studies*, vol. 14, no. 1 (Dec. 1986), p. 1-24. bibliog. map.

Provides a useful summary of the language situation in Nepal, supplying greater detail on minority languages than is provided in the author's monograph, *Nepali: a national language and its literature* (q.v.). After outlining the predominant position of Nepali in the country as a whole and of 'Indian' languages in the *tarai*, he discusses the Tibeto-Burman languages, concentrating in particular on Newari, Limbu, Gurung and Thakali. As in the monograph, statistical information is taken mainly from the 1971 census but also draws on some preliminary results from that of 1981.

## Languages. General

### 270 Nepali: a national language and its literature.

Michael James Hutt. New Delhi: Sterling; London: School of Oriental and African Studies, 1988. 252p. bibliog. map.

The author gives an introduction to the present status of Nepali in its national and regional context, discussing its links with the development of Nepalese nationalism, and progress towards standardization of grammar and spelling. The greater part of the book is devoted to an examination of Nepali literature including sections on: the earliest writings, from the 14th-century Karnali basin inscriptions to the early 19th century; the *adikavi* ('founder poet'), Bhanubhakta and his biographer, Motiram Batta; the three most celebrated 20th-century writers, Lekhnath Paudyal, Bal Krishna Sama and Lakshmi Prasad Devkota; and modern literature in general.

### 271 Newari language and linguistics: conspectus.

Tej R. Kansakar. *Contributions to Nepalese Studies*, vol. 8, no. 2 (June 1981), p. 1–18. bibliog.

This survey article provides a brief account of the position of Newari in the Nepalese linguistic context, followed by a review of work published on it. The author concentrates in particular on the divergent attempts to place Newari in its correct position within the Tibeto-Burman language family.

### 272 Language.

Kamal Prakash Malla. In: *Nepal in perspective*. Edited by Pashupati Shumshere J. B. Rana and Kamal Prakash Rana. Kathmandu: Centre for Economic Development and Administration, 1973, p. 101–18.

After reference to the past use of Sanskrit, Newari and Maithili by governments in the Kathmandu Valley, this survey catalogues the principal languages now spoken, their mutual relationships, and the number of speakers as shown by the 1961 census. The author emphasizes the unchallengeable predominance of the Nepali language and discusses attempts at standardization and the controversy over the extent to which Sanskrit loan-words should be admitted. He ends by suggesting that it may not in fact be in the best interests of national integration to ignore completely the claims of minority languages. Though figures are outdated, this remains a good introduction to the subject, since later censuses have shown the persistence of the earlier pattern and trends.

### 273 Bibliographical research report. Learning Nepali: textbooks, dictionaries and other aids.

Ruth Laila Schmidt, Krishna Bhai Pradhan. *Himalayan Research Bulletin*, vol. 7, no. 1 (1987), p. 5–9.

This annotated bibliography of twenty-three items offers the learner the fullest currently available survey of the field.

### 274 Origin and development of the Nepali language.

Dayanand Shrivastava. Foreword by Sukumar Sen. Calcutta: Calcutta University Press, 1962. 145p. bibliog.

Traces the development of the sounds and grammatical forms of Nepali from Old Indo-Aryan through Middle Indo-Aryan. An introductory chapter discusses the relationship of the language to the rest of the Indo-Aryan group, and this is followed

by detailed treatment of phonology and morphology. The book is mainly of interest to the historical linguist, but also serves the needs of learners of the language who have become curious about the origins of peculiarities such as the number system and the verb forms incorporating an internal negative. The bibliography lacks full details of works cited.

**275 Bibliography of the Summer Institute of Linguistics.**

Alan C. Wores. Dallas, Texas: Summer Institute of Linguistics, 1979, 1985, 1986. 2 vols. supplement.

The Summer Institute of Linguistics was founded with the ultimate aim of making Christian scripture available in languages where it remains unwritten, but the Institute has also conducted general linguistic work of high quality. This bibliography includes publications resulting from their activity in Nepal in the 1960s and 1970s. Volume one covers 1935 to 1975, volume two 1976 to 1982 and a supplement covers works published to the end of 1985.

**276 Maithili phonetics and phonology.**

Ramawatar Yadav. Mainz, GFR: Selden & Tamm, 1984. 130p. bibliog.

This technical work provides a brief introduction to the Maithili language (after Nepali, the most widely spoken language in the country). This is followed by a detailed treatment of segmental phonology and an acoustic analysis of individual sounds.

**277 Maithili language and linguistics: some background notes.**

Ramavatar Yadav. *Kailash*, vol. 8, no. 1-2 (1981), p. 71-87.

Presents a survey of the language and its area: Maithili has twenty-one million speakers in the eastern and northern regions of Bihar and in the adjoining Nepal *tarai*. The author gives examples of the language's vocabulary, and discusses earlier surveys. He rejects Sir George Grierson's classification of Maithili as a dialect of eastern Hindi (*The linguistic survey of India* (q.v.)), arguing that it is an independent language within the Indo-Aryan family. He also refers to the earliest extant text written in the language, the 14th-century *Varna-Ratnakar*.

**Essays on the languages, literature and religion of Nepal and Tibet.**

See item no. 11.

**The linguistic archaeology of the Nepal valley.**

See item no. 180.

**The formation of the concept of nation state in Nepal.**

See item no. 463.

**Kirata-Jana-Kriti.**

See item no. 547.

## Grammars and textbooks

278 **Sketch of Thulung grammar with three texts and glossary.**

Nicholas J. Allen. Foreword by Nicholas C. Bodman. Ithaca, New York: Cornell University, 1975. 254p. bibliog. (Cornell East Asia Papers, 6).

This systematic presentation of the phonology and grammar of the language of the Thulung Rai of eastern Nepal is followed by three texts transcribed from the author's own tape recordings. A glossary, with broader coverage than the examples in the bulk of the book, is added. The introduction gives a brief sketch of earlier work on the language from that of Brian Hodgson onwards.

279 **Introduction to Nepali: a first-year language course.**

Thomas Welbourne Clark, John Burton-Page. London: School of Oriental and African Studies, 1977. revised ed. 421p.

This edition of Clark's *Introduction to Nepali* is revised by John Burton-Page. An introductory section on pronunciation, with practice sentences which also exemplify a range of grammatical forms, is followed by a systematic treatment of the grammar with accompanying exercises. A final section repeats the exercises in Devanagari script, Roman transliteration alone being used in the main body of the course. The book has now been superseded by David J. Matthews' work, *A course in Nepali* (q.v.), but references to it will frequently be found in older books, and it may be the only course available in some libraries.

280 **Basic colloquial Maithili. A Maithili-Nepali-English vocabulary with some structure.**

Alice Irene Davis. Foreword by Elizabeth Smith. Delhi: Motilal Banarsidass, 1984. 242p. bibliog.

Containing around 3,000 words, this vocabulary is in Roman script, but is arranged according to the order of the Devanagari script, with Nepali and English equivalents. Pronunciation is shown where this does not correspond to the conventional spelling. A brief skeleton grammar is also provided. The work is not really adequate for self-instruction, but will remain the most readily available aid for the learner until the course now under preparation by Richard Burghart is published. For fuller accounts of Maithili grammar, see Subhadra Jha, *The formation of the Maithili language*, (London: Luzac, 1958), and Sir George Grierson's now rather outdated *An introduction to the Maithili dialect of the Bihari language as spoken in north Bihar* (Calcutta: Asiatic Society of Bengal, 1908, 2nd ed.).

281 **Conversational Gurung.**

Jessie R. Glover, Dev Bahadur Gurung. Canberra: Australian National University, Research School of Pacific Studies, Department of Linguistics, 1979. 216p. bibliog. (Pacific Linguistics, Series D, no.13).

Primarily an introduction to the dialect of the Seti valley villages north-west of Pokhara, this course is intended mainly for anthropologists or other field-workers studying with a native speaker in a Gurung village. The lessons present dialogues illustrating different aspects of village life, followed by structure drills. The last thirteen



lessons cover medical topics. The course is designed for use in conjunction with Warren Glover's *Gurung phonetic summary* (Kathmandu: Summer Institute of Linguistics, 1969) and Warren and Jessie Glover's *A guide to Gurung tone* (Kathmandu: Summer Institute of Linguistics, 1972).

**282 Tibetan for beginners and travellers.**

Melvyn Goldstein. Kathmandu: Ratna Pustak Bhandar, 1982. 62p.

Basically a phrase book, with a little grammar included, this work is intended to allow simple communication with Tibetan speakers. Romanization is used throughout. The sound system of the language is introduced in terms of approximate English equivalents, and tone and length are disregarded.

**283 Conversational Nepali.**

Anna Mari Hari. Kathmandu: Summer Institute of Linguistics, Institute for Nepal and Asian Studies. 1971. 559p. bibliog.

This course of 120 lessons, comprises short dialogues, grammar notes, and exercises generally, including build-up drills and other manipulations. An appendix gives examples of letter writing, and grammatical tables. References are given to Thomas Welbourne Clark's textbook *Introduction to Nepali* (q.v.) for more detailed grammatical explanations. The first thirty lessons are given in transliteration, but the text of previous dialogues is repeated in Devanagari at the rate of two per new lesson from lesson sixteen onwards, and Devanagari alone is used from lesson thirty-one onwards. The Devanagari characters are presented gradually from the first lesson. The course is intended for use with a class of at least two students and a native-speaker as instructor.

**284 A Nepali newspaper reader.**

Champa Jarmul, John D. Murphy. Kensington, Maryland: Dunwoody, 1984. 274p.

Presents a selection of material from the *Gorkhapatra* (q.v.), Nepal's oldest and most widely-read newspaper, carefully graded from one line extracts to complex passages. There is also a long extract from an American Nepali-language publication on aid programmes in Nepal. All passages are comprehensively glossed and accompanied by grammatical notes. The book is an excellent introduction to the language of journalism, with its strong Sanskrit element, and is especially useful for students working largely on their own.

**285 A grammar of the classical Newari.**

Hans Jørgensen. Copenhagen: Ejnar Munksgaard, 1941. 108p. bibliog. (Det. Kgl. Danske Videnskabernes Selskab. Historisk-filogiske Meddelelser, XXVII-3).

This descriptive grammar of the language of the manuscripts, from the 14th to the 19th century, has sections on phonology, accidence and syntax. There is no comparative material from other languages. A summary of the main differences between classical Newari and the modern language is given in Thakur Lal Manandhar's *Newari-English dictionary* (q.v.).

## **Languages. Grammars and textbooks**

### **286 A basic course in colloquial Newari.**

Tej Ratna Kansakar. Kathmandu: Campus of International Languages, Tribhuvan University, 1984. 150p.

Contains six units, the first three on pronunciation and the remainder treating respectively the grammar of nouns, pronouns and adjectives; verbs and verb phrases; adverbs and sentence connectors. There are a few dialogues, but the emphasis is overwhelmingly on systematic exposition of, and drilling in grammatical structure. For the beginner, the explanations may be difficult to follow, and the native speaker who acts as teacher (the book is not intended for self-study) will need to be able to expand on these as well as providing a model for pronunciation.

### **287 Basic course in spoken Nepali.**

Tika B. Karki, Chij K. Shrestha. Kathmandu: The Authors, 1985.  
2nd ed. 266p. bibliog.

Based on materials developed for teaching Peace Corps Volunteers, this course covers the essentials needed for everyday conversation. A simplified, core grammar is presented, which corresponds more to the Nepali of the ethnic groups who use it as a second language than to that of Brahmans and Chetris who speak it as their mother tongue. Each unit includes new vocabulary, followed by dialogues and notes on grammar. Lists of general vocabulary, arranged thematically, and of idioms and proverbs are also given. The lessons are in Roman script only, but the introductory section on pronunciation uses both this and Devanagari in parallel, and Devanagari is presented in detail in an appendix on reading and writing. This is the best book available for those who need a less rigorous and academic approach than that used in David Matthews' *A course in Nepali* (q.v.).

### **288 The Newari language: a working outline.**

Kamal P. Malla. Tokyo: Institute for the Study of Languages and Cultures of Asia and Africa, 1985. 111p. bibliog. (Monumenta Serindica, 14).

Compiled by a native speaker, who has drawn on the considerable work by both Newar and foreign scholars during the 1970s, this is a meticulous summary of the main features of Newari phonology, morphology and syntax. The book is intended as a preliminary to a full reference grammar and presumes some knowledge of linguistics. It is not suitable for use as a textbook for those learning the language, but gives the best available overview of its structure.

### **289 A course in Nepali.**

David J. Matthews. London: School of Oriental and African Studies; New Delhi: Heritage, 1984. 344p.

This textbook, based on materials used for teaching Nepali at London University, employs the grammatical terminology developed by Thomas Welbourne Clark (*Introduction to Nepali* (q.v.)), but presents it rather more clearly. After an introductory section on script and pronunciation, twenty lessons demonstrate all the principal structures of the language, explanations being followed by reading passages and sentences for translation from and into Nepali. Devanagari script is used throughout, with an accompanying transliteration in the explanatory sections but not in the exercises. The book is the best choice for anyone who prefers a traditional approach to language learning and is particularly interested in learning to read Nepali.

However the reading passages also contain some colloquial material of use whilst trekking in the hills.

**290 Nepali conversation manual.**

Ruth Laila Schmidt. Philadelphia: University of Pennsylvania, Department of South Asian Regional Studies, 1968. 140p.

Provides drills, conversation and background information to supplement Thomas Welbourne Clark's *Introduction to Nepali* (q.v.), to which the user has to refer for fuller grammatical explanation. Some of the material is now slightly outdated.

**291 Beginning Nepali.**

Taranath Sharma. Kathmandu: Sajha, 1983. 232p.

Written by a prominent Nepalese linguist, this manual includes very full grammatical tables, especially of verb forms. Despite the title, it is not very suitable for the beginner, but provides a handy summary of the grammar for those who already have a grounding in the language. There is also a twenty-two page thematically arranged basic vocabulary. Devanagari script is used throughout.

**292 Conversational Newari.**

Iswaranand Sresthacharya, Jagan Nath Maskey, Austin Hale. Kathmandu: Summer Institute of Linguistics, Institute of Nepal and Asian Studies, 1971. 245p.

This text was intended as the first part of a course in Newari, the remainder of which was in fact never brought out. The course concentrates on basic grammar, and consists of twenty-five lessons organized around dialogues dealing principally with buying, selling, eating and visiting friends. Elaborate grammatical explanations and transformation and substitution exercises are provided. Transcription is employed throughout the lessons, but the dialogues are repeated in Devanagari at the rear. The course is intended for use with a native speaker of Newari as guide.

**293 Conversational Newari.**

Iswaranand Sresthacharya. Kathmandu: Kaanibhaa, 1987. 2nd revised ed. 108p.

This is a revised version of part of the textbook which Iswaranand Sresthacharya co-authored in 1971, *Conversational Newari* (q.v.). The standard of production is not very high – the introduction, in particular, is written in abysmal English – but the book has the advantage of cheapness. There is an accompanying cassette.

**294 Khaling.**

Sueyoshi Toba. Tokyo: Institute for the Study of the Languages and Culture of Asia and Africa, 1984. 2nd ed. 40p. bibliog. (Asian and African Grammatical Manuals, 13d).

Provides a basic grammar of the Khaling Rai language, which has some 12,000 speakers in the Solu Khumbu region. The explanations are clear and well illustrated with examples. The book's pocket size makes it easy to take along whilst trekking or on field-work.

## Languages. Dictionaries

### 295 **A grammar of Limbu.**

George Van Driem. Berlin; New York; Amsterdam: Mouton, 1987. 565p. 2 maps. bibliog. (Mouton Grammar Library, 4).

This work describes the second-most important Limbu dialect, Phedappe, as spoken in the village of Tamphula, in Terhathum district, Koshi zone. The main chapters analyse phonology, and nominal and (at greatest length) verbal morphology; the Limbu language is especially important for students of Tibeto-Burman linguistics because of its highly intricate morphology. Appendices give specimen texts, verbal paradigms, a Limbu-English glossary and an anthology of Limbu (Kiranti) scripts.

### 296 **Intermediate Nepali structure. Intermediate Nepali reader.**

M. K. Varma, T. N. Sharma. New Delhi: Manohar, 1979. 2 vols.

In this two-volume work, the authors provide a set of materials for those who have already completed a basic course. The first volume presents grammatical structures with drills, whilst the second is a collection of glossed readings, including some newspaper material.

### 297 **Concise Limbu grammar and dictionary.**

A. Weidert, B. Subha. Amsterdam: Lobster, 1985. 409p. bibliog.

A less elaborate presentation than that of George Van Driem's *A grammar of Limbu* (q.v.), this collaborative effort by a German and a Limbu scholar is based on the principal Limbu dialect, Panthare, which is spoken in the Panchthar district of Mechi zone, but also increasingly accepted as a *lingua franca* by Limbus elsewhere. The book consists of a general grammar, followed by noun and verb paradigms of particular complexity and interest, and by Limbu-English and English-Limbu vocabularies.

## Dictionaries

### 298 **Yakthung-pene-mikphula-panchekva. Limbu-Nepali-English dictionary. Limbu-Nepali-Angreji shabdakosh.**

Iman Singh Chemjong. Kathmandu: Royal Nepal Academy, 376p.

This tri-lingual dictionary gives both Nepali and Limbu words in Devanagari. Some photographs are included.

### 299 **Angreji nepali sajha samkshipta shabdakosh.** (Sajha concise English-Nepali dictionary.)

Narendra Mani Dixit. Kathmandu: Sajha, 1987. 2nd ed. 920p. bibliog.

This is probably the best English-Nepali dictionary currently in print. The author, a prominent civil servant under both the Rana and the post-1951 régimes, began work on this dictionary in 1934 and continued until his death in 1985, whilst the second edition was in preparation. Taking as his starting point the *Concise Oxford Dictionary*, he enlarged the collection from his own voluminous reading. There are approximately 26,000 main entries, with additional common phrases or compound words given under many of the head words. Many technical words, some of them the author's own

coinages, are included. As many synonymous or near-synonymous Nepali words as possible are given for each English word, and the foreign learner will need to use the work in conjunction with a Nepali-English or monolingual-Nepali dictionary to find the best equivalent for a particular context.

300 **R. Kilgour's Dictionary, English-Nepali.**

Edited by H. C. Duncan, G. P. Pradhan. Darjeeling, India:

Government Press, 1923. 391p. Reprinted, New Delhi: Cosmo, 1987.

This dictionary is based on materials assembled by Kilgour in Darjeeling in the early years of the present century. It contains around 12,000 head words, with Nepali equivalents given both in Devanagari and in Romanized forms. Appendices provide lists of some of the commonest words. The material which Kilgour had collected for a Nepali-English dictionary was handed over to Ralph Lilley Turner and used in the preparation of his own work, *A comparative and etymological dictionary of the Nepali Language* (q.v.).

301 **Gurung-Nepali-English dictionary with English-Gurung and Nepali-Gurung indexes.**

Warren W. Glover, Jessie R. Glover, Deu Bahadur Gurung.

Canberra: Department of Linguistics, Research School of Pacific

Studies, Australian National University, 1977. 316p. bibliog. (Pacific

Linguistics Series C – 51).

Contains about 4,000 words from Deu Bahadur Gurung's west Gurung dialect. The orthography employed is a transliteration from Devanagari, but Devanagari itself is used for the Nepali-Gurung index. Entries include some etymological information, such as Chepang cognates, or reconstructed proto-Tamang-Gurung-Thakali or Tibeto-Burman forms. Appendices treat kinship and religious terms. The introduction gives a brief account of Gurung phonology but not of grammatical structure.

302 **Nepali samkshipta shabdakosh.** (Concise Nepali dictionary.)

Edited by Surya Bikram Gyawali, Kumar Dhar Sharma 'Gyani,' Giri

Raj Joshi. Forewords by Lain Singh Bangdel, Madhav Prasad

Ghimire. Kathmandu: Royal Nepal Academy, 1983. 803p.

This monolingual dictionary uses the same spelling conventions as Bal Krishna Pokhrel's *Nepali brihat shabdakosh* (q.v.), but is an independent compilation. The dictionary contains some 30,000 words, and is a convenient size for desk use. Etymological information is not included, but idioms involving special uses of each word are explained. This is a good choice for a foreign learner wishing to graduate from English-Nepali dictionaries.

303 **A dictionary of the classical Newari.**

Hans Jørgensen. Copenhagen: Levin & Munksgaard, 1936. 178p.

(Det Kgl. Danske Videnskabernes Selskab. Historisk-filologiske

Meddelelser XXIII-1). Reprinted, New Delhi: Asian Educational

Services, 1989.

This is a companion volume to the author's *Grammar of the classical Newari* (q.v.) and is thus a dictionary of the language of the manuscripts, rather than of current, spoken

## Languages. Dictionaries

language. Manuscripts consulted are cited in chronological order. Etymological details are given, and the dictionary covers both Indo-Aryan loans and pure Newari words.

### 304 **Newari-English dictionary.**

Thakur Lal Manandhar. Edited by Anne Vergati, Austin Hale. New Delhi: Agam Kala (for Ecole Française d'Extrême Orient), 1986. 284p. bibliog.

This volume includes about 16,000 main entries and sub-entries arranged in alphabetical order of the phonetic transcription, but with the Devanagari form also given. Details of usage, idiomatic expressions and ethnographic background are included within entries. The editor's introduction surveys work done on the ethnology and history of the Newars, the compiler outlines the development of the language and its literature including the major differences between the modern language and its classical form analysed by Hans Jørgensen, *A grammar of classical Newari* (q.v.), while Austin Hale explains the principles of the dictionary and gives a grammatical outline of the language.

### 305 **Basic Gurkhali Dictionary.**

M. Meerendonck. Singapore: Straits Times Press, 1959. 257p.  
Reprinted, Folkestone, England: Bailey Brothers & Swinfen, 1986.

This dictionary is small enough to slip into almost any pocket, but still contains English-Nepali and Nepali-English vocabularies of around 8,000 words each. It is a revision and extension of the vocabulary included in the original (1957) edition of the author's *Basic Gurkhali grammar* (Kuala Lumpur: Caxton, 1959, revised ed.). As the work was prepared with the needs of the Brigade of Gurkhas primarily in mind, there are a number of military terms but it will also be of use to the ordinary traveller. Roman script alone is used in the main body of the dictionary, but an appendix gives details of Devanagari.

### 306 **Nepali brihat shabdakosh.** (Comprehensive Nepali dictionary.)

Bal Krishna Pokhrel et al. Introduced by Madhav Prasad Ghimire.  
Kathmandu: Royal Nepal Academy, 1983. 1431p.

Although it contains some errors, and, in some ways, does not present its material as clearly as Bal Chandra Sharma's dictionary, *Nepali shabdakosh* (q.v.), which it supersedes, this work is the most up-to-date and comprehensive dictionary of the language, and is now the accepted authority within Nepal. It contains around 40,000 head words, with derivatives and compounds also given under some of them. Because Nepalese authors continue to borrow words unrestrictedly from Sanskrit, and, to a lesser extent, from Hindi, the foreign learner will still sometimes need to supplement this work with Sanskrit-English and Hindi dictionaries. The book contains a message from His Majesty King Birendra and a preface by Lain Singh Bangdel.

### 307 **New standard dictionary: English-Nepali.**

Paras Mani Pradhan, Nagendra Mani Pradhan. Kalimpong, India: Bhagyalaxmi, 1988. 3rd ed. 830p.

This work, which bears the alternative title, *The standard dictionary: English-Nepali* on the front cover, was compiled by a Darjeeling scholar who assisted in the preparation of Ralph Lilley Turner's dictionary, *A comparative and etymological dictionary of the*

*Nepali language* (q.v.) and by his son, and is intended primarily for use by Nepali students of English. Foreign learners of Nepali will need to use a Nepali-English dictionary in conjunction with this work in order to tell which of several Nepali equivalents is appropriate for a particular context. The main body of the dictionary contains about 29,000 entries, with pronunciation and parts of speech indicated. Appendices list words and phrases from other languages commonly used in English, common abbreviations, 850 basic English words, suggestions for a reformed English spelling, proverbs and technical (administrative, legal and scientific) terms.

**308 Ratna trekker's pocket pal.**

Ratna Pustak Bhandar. Kathmandu, 1986. 36p.

Organized by topics, this vocabulary, with useful phrases, covers basic needs on the trail. A pronunciation guide is included, and lists of greetings, interrogatives, directions, seasons, days and months are provided.

**309 A learner's glossary of Nepali.**

Ruth Laila Schmidt, M. Singh, R. N. Ghimire. Berkeley, California: University of California, Centre for South and Southeast Asian Studies, 1980. 127p.

This vocabulary, which is available from Berkeley in draft form, consists of 1,249 Nepali-English entries, with illustrative phrases and some grammatical information. A revised edition is being prepared in Kathmandu by Grace Terrell and Raghu Ghimire.

**310 A vocabulary of the Limbu language of eastern Nepal.**

H. W. R. Senior. Foreword by R. K. Sprigg. Kathmandu: Ratna Pustak Bhandar, 1977. 86p. (Bibliotheca Himalayica, Series II, vol. 13).

This work was originally published in 1908, but as only twenty copies appear to have been printed, the 1977 edition is the only one likely to be encountered. The author, a British Gurkha officer, supplies an English-Limbu vocabulary of around 3,000 words, followed by a list of useful sentences.

**311 Nepali shabdakosh. (Nepali dictionary.)**

Bal Chandra Sharma. Kathmandu: Royal Nepal Academy, 1962. 1146p.

This dictionary, long out-of-print and now superseded by the Academy's publication of Bal Krishna Pokhrel's dictionary, *Nepali brihat shabdakosh* (q.v.), will nevertheless be found in many university libraries and probably remains the most convenient reference work for the advanced student of the language.

**312 Nepali-English dictionary.**

Chandra Lal Singh, Matshyendra Lal Singh. Kathmandu: Educational Enterprises, 1983. 2nd ed. 586p.

Containing about 9,000 entries, this is a handy, 'pocket-sized' dictionary. Words are given in Devanagari script, and in Devanagari order, with pronunciation indicated in Romanized form. The script is explained in an introductory section. The need for a similar, small English-Nepali dictionary has now been met by Kamal R. Adhikary's *A*

## **Languages. Dictionaries**

*concise English-Nepali dictionary with transliteration and Devanagari* (Kathmandu: Vijay, 1988).

### **313 Newari root verbs.**

Iswaranand Sresthacharya. Kathmandu: Ratna Pustak Bhandar, 1981. 174p. (Bibliotheca Himalayica, Series II, vol. 1).

Intended mainly for those learning Newari as a foreign or second language, this work describes the inflectional system and usage of Newari verbs and gives a complete list of verbal roots. The book is a useful guide for those who already have a grasp of the basics of the language, but is not suitable on its own as an introductory textbook.

### **314 Concise dictionary (Newar-English).**

Iswaranand Sresthacharya. Kathmandu: Kaanibhaa, 1987. 317p.

Still in pre-publication draft form at present, this volume has been reviewed in the *Himalayan Research Bulletin*, no. 3 (1988). A compilation of about 11,000 entries, it is a spin-off from the compiler's continuing work towards a more comprehensive dictionary. Idiomatic expressions are not included and definitions are often just synonyms, without elaboration. There is a discussion of Newari kinship terms and an essay on 'Verb paradigms' is reprinted from the author's *Newari root verbs* (q.v.).

### **315 A comparative and etymological dictionary of the Nepali language.**

Ralph Lilley Turner, Dorothy Rivers Turner. London: Routledge & Kegan Paul, 1931. 932p. bibliog. Reprinted, New Delhi: Allied Publishers, 1980.

Still the standard Nepali-English dictionary, this work is intended also as a research tool for comparative linguists. The indices of cognates from other languages compiled by Dorothy Rivers Turner occupy 278 pages and the etymological information accounts for half the space in the main body of the work. The dictionary is not fully comprehensive, in particular omitting many loan words from Sanskrit which have become common in written Nepali since its original publication. There are approximately 26,000 entries.

### **Concise Limbu grammar and dictionary.**

See item no. 297.

### **Newar towns and buildings – an illustrated dictionary.**

See item no. 826.



# Religion

316 **Buddhism without monks: the Vajrayana religion of the Newars of Kathmandu Valley.**

Michael R. Allen. *South Asia*, no. 2 (Aug. 1973), p. 1-14. bibliog.

This important early article on Newar Buddhism concentrates on the rôle of the Vajracharya caste as priests, and the means by which this is legitimized. Initiated Vajracharyas are 'masters of the diamond way' (*vajryana*), the tantric form of Buddhism regarded by its devotees as its highest development.

317 **The cult of Kumari – virgin worship in Nepal.**

Michael R. Allen. Foreword by Prayag Raj Sharma. Kathmandu: Madhab Lal Maharjan, 1986. 2nd ed. 114p. bibliog.

This study begins with an account of virgin worship in Hinduism generally, and particularly in Nepal, where selected girls are treated as goddesses until first menstruation, or until they shed blood from some other cause. Since the Nepalese virgins wear red clothes (colours generally associated with fertility and motherhood) and elaborate make-up, the author suggests that the cult combines the conflicting Hindu principles of life renunciation, which involves putting a high value on the maintenance of purity through non-involvement in life processes, and of life affirmation. He gives a detailed account of the rituals associated with the royal Kumari (virgin) of Kathmandu and the nine other kumaris worshipped in the valley. The book ends with an account of the mock marriage and seclusion at menarche necessary for all Newar girls. Since Newar women have generally enjoyed greater independence than their Brahman and Chhetri counterparts, he sees such rituals as a means of accepting imposed Brahminical values formalistically, whilst trying to minimize their practical impact.

## Religion

**318 Svayambhu Purana: English. Mythological history of the Nepal Valley from the Svayambhu Purana.**

Edited by Warren W. Smith. Translated from the Sanskrit by Mana Bajra Bajracharya. Kathmandu, 1978. 78p.

The *Svayambhu Purana*, of which the oldest known copy dates from 1558, is one of a family of texts which explain the divine origins of shrines and natural features of the Valley. The Nagas, or serpent gods, are believed to have originally lived in the lake which once filled the Valley and their goodwill is considered to be essential to ensure the coming of the monsoon rains. A useful summary of the *Purana* is also provided by Bernard Kölver, 'Stages in the evolution of a world picture', *Numen*, vol. 32, no. 2 (1985), p. 131-68. In addition to this basically Buddhist version, there is also a Hindu account of the mythological history of the Valley, which is the subject of Horst Brinkhaus' *The Pradyumna-Prabhavati legend in Nepal: a study of the Hindu myth of the draining of the Nepal valley* (q.v.).

**319 The Indian Buddhist iconography, mainly based on the Sadhanamala and cognate tantric texts of rituals.**

Benoytosh Bhattacharya. Calcutta: K. L. Mukhopadhyay, 1959. 2nd ed. 478p. bibliog.

This standard work on its subject is illustrated with photographs and line drawings by an anonymous Nepalese artist who is able to reproduce any required deity from memory. The author catalogues the gods of the tantric Buddhist pantheon and their characteristic modes of representation. A general introduction details the evolution of the pantheon and the general principles behind it. For a study of the iconography of the Hindu god Vishnu, see Pratapaditya Pal, *Vaisnava iconography in Nepal* (Calcutta: Asiatic Society, 1985. 2nd ed.).

**320 Le culte du kuldevata au Népal, en particulier chez certains Ksatri de la Vallée de Kathmandu.** (The cult of the *kuldevata* in Nepal, in particular among certain Chetri of the Kathmandu Valley.)

Khem Bahadur Bista. Paris: Editions Nove, in collaboration with Centre Nationale de la Recherche Scientifique, 1972. 169p. bibliog.

Examines the worship by members of a particular clan or lineage (*kul*) of their patron god. The author sees this as incorporating some aspects of the pre-Hindu religion of the area. The first part of the work describes Nepal's dominant Chetri (Ksatri) caste, whilst the second examines the cult itself, including a brief account of its operation amongst other castes and ethnic groups. The English introduction provides a brief summary of the book.

**321 Legends of Khotan and Nepal.**

John Brough. *Bulletin of the School of Oriental and African Studies*, vol. 12 (part 2), (1948), p. 333-39.

The author identifies close parallels between the legends connected with Khotan in Chinese Turkestan, the site of the early Buddhist civilisation discovered by Sir Aurel Stein, and those of the Kathmandu Valley. The original Tibetan name for Khotan appears later to have been applied to the Valley, and Brough suggests that Tibetan Buddhist pilgrims, who remembered the Khotanese legends but had lost the memory of their true location, transferred them to a new site.

**322 The history of Janakpurdham: a study of asceticism and the Hindu state.**

Richard Burghart. Ph.D. thesis. University of London, 1978. 578p.  
maps. bibliog.

Copies of this thesis are available from the University of London Library, Senate House, Malet Street, London WC1E 7HU. The author provides a detailed study of the Vaishnavite monastic communities in the town of Janakpur in the Mithila region, which straddles the border between the Nepalese *tarai* and Bihar. Janakpur is reputedly the home of the legendary King Janak and his daughter Sita, the heroine of the *Ramayana*. The author includes a general treatment of the caste structure of the Maithili community, a discussion of the history of the ascetic communities and of modern Janakpur, and an analysis of the view of the relationship between the ascetics and the royal power from the perspectives of both sides. This is an important contribution both to the understanding of the region and to the study of the religious aspects of Hindu kingship. Some of the more important findings are included in two articles by Burghart, 'The disappearance and reappearance of Janakpur'. *Kailash*, vol. 6, no. 4 (1978), p. 257-84. (q.v.) and 'Hierarchical models of the Hindu social system.' *Man*, vol. 13 (n.s.), no. 4 (Dec. 1978), p. 519-36 (q.v.).

**323 The disappearance and reappearance of Janakpur.**

Richard Burghart. *Kailash*, vol. 6, no. 4 (1978), p. 257-84. bibliog.

The article relates the oral traditions of the ascetic communities of Janakpur on the miraculous 'rediscovery' of the site of King Janak's capital. The author contrasts these with archaeological and documentary evidence, mostly in the form of royal land grants. He suggests that the initial endowments to ascetics in the area were in fact the result of local kings' anxiety to buy divine assistance during the 18th century struggles between the hill states. He uses this as a case study to highlight the different concepts of 'truth' held by the ascetics themselves and by the modern historian.

**324 Hierarchical models of the Hindu social system.**

Richard Burghart. *Man*, vol. 13 (N.S.), no. 4, (Dec. 1978), p. 519-36.  
bibliog.

The author examines the differing conceptions of the Hindu social structure held by king, ascetics and Brahmans in Nepal, showing how each has constructed a model which gives the highest place to themselves, whilst also accommodating to some extent the claims of the others. He argues that the existence of such differing models helps to resolve the conflict between the views of Louis Dumont (*Homo hierarchicus*, London: Weidenfeld and Nicolson; Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1967) and Frederick George Bailey ('For a sociology of India?' *Contributions to Indian Sociology*, vol. 3 (1959), p. 88-101). Both see the caste system as a homogeneous whole but differ over whether ritual purity or economic power should be seen as more fundamental within it.

**325 Consultations with Himalayan gods: a study of oracular religion and alternative values in Hindu Jumla.**

J. Gabriel Campbell. Ph.D. thesis, Columbia University, New York, 1978. 560p. (Available from University Microfilms, Ann Arbor, Michigan, order no. 7811119).

Campbell examines the two contrasting religious traditions of Jumla in north-west Nepal: Brahminical Hinduism and oracular religion (or spirit possession). He argues that while the value systems of the two are opposed in many ways, they are nonetheless successfully accommodated within the one society.

## Religion

### 326 **Hinduism. A religion to live by.**

Nirad C. Chaudhuri. New Delhi: B.I.Publications, 1979. 340p. bibliog.

This book should be used with caution, as the author advances some highly idiosyncratic analyses of the development of Hinduism, and is sometimes carried away by his delight in paradox and provocation. Nonetheless, his characterization of Hinduism as in practice concerned fundamentally not with escape from the world but with obtaining worldly power is a useful corrective to accounts which overstress the 'life renunciation' element in the religion. In addition, his interpretation of the cult of Kali/Durga is relevant for Nepal as well as for his native Bengal.

### 327 **Rhythms of a Himalayan village.**

Hugh R. Downs. San Francisco: Harper & Row, 1980. 228p.

This interpretation of Sherpa religion consists of black-and-white photographs with a descriptive text, and extracts from the Buddhist scriptures and from works on Buddhism. Topics highlighted include the Sherpas' general culture and the Mani-Rimdu ritual, monastery life, the production of books, woodblock prints and paintings, and scenes from funeral rituals as described in the *Tibetan Book of the Dead*. The author's 'committed' approach contrasts strongly with that of Sherry Ortner in *Sherpas through their rituals* (q.v.).

### 328 **Mani Rimdu. Nepal. The Buddhist dance drama of Tengpoche.**

Mario Fantin. Translated from the Italian by R. S. Ahlawalia. Singapore: Toppan, 1976. 170p. 4 maps.

This title is also published as *Tibetan Buddhism in Nepal – Mani-Rimdu: a dance drama of Tengpoche monastery* (New Delhi: The English Book Store, 1979). Fantin presents a detailed account, illustrated with coloured plates, of the Mani Rimdu, a Buddhist mystery play which has been performed at the monastery of Tengpoche in Solu Khumbu (Mount Everest region) since the 1930s, and which the author witnessed in December 1972 (it is now held in the spring). The book includes a general introduction, line drawings of artefacts used in the ritual and of costumes with their Tibetan names, and a glossary of Buddhist terms, with lengthy explanations of the most important terms. The maps include two pictorial representations of the mountains with routes and place-names added. Although attractively produced, the book is ethnographically inaccurate in many details. Another account of the play is Luther C. Jerstad's *Mani-Rimdu: Sherpa dance-drama in Nepal* (Seattle, Washington: University of Washington; Calcutta: Oxford University Press, IBH, 1969. 192p. bibliog.), but this has only monochrome illustrations.

### 329 **Monk, householder and priest: Newar Buddhism and its hierarchy of ritual.**

David N. Gellner. D.Phil. thesis. Oxford University, Oxford, England, 1987, 586p. bibliog.

A revised version of Gellner's thesis is to be published by Cambridge University Press under the title, *Monk, householder and tantric priest* (?1991). Copies are currently available from the Department of Western Manuscripts, Bodleian Library, Oxford OX1 3BG, or through the inter-library loan system. Gellner analyses the Mahayana and Vajrayana Buddhism of the Newars of the Kathmandu Valley, examining its relationship to Hinduism on the one hand and to Theravada Buddhism (the form

practised in Sri Lanka and the countries of South-East Asia) on the other. The author stresses the importance of the existence within Newar Buddhism of three different levels: the 'disciples' way', embodying the values of monasticism: the 'great way' (*mahayana*), embracing the rôle of householder and the ideal of the compassionate *bodhisattva*, who postpones his own salvation to work for the good of others; and the 'diamond way' (*vajrayana*) of tantricism, with its promise of supernatural power. In addition to a detailed account of Newar religious practices within this framework, the thesis also suggests causes for the present decline of the traditional religion. Some of the central ideas are presented briefly in the author's *Monkhood and priesthood in Newar Buddhism* (q.v.).

**330 The Newar Buddhist monastery: an anthropological and historical typology.**

David N. Gellner. In: *The heritage of the Kathmandu Valley*. Edited by Niels Gutschow, Axel Michaels. Sankt Augustin, GFR: VGH Wissenschaftsverlag, 1987. p. 365-415.

Gellner analyses the different types of Vajrayana Buddhist 'monastery' in Nepal, concentrating particularly on the distinction between *baha* and *bahi*. Both present-day oral tradition and the Buddhist *vamshavali*, used by Daniel Wright in his *History of Nepal* (q.v.), suggest that *bahi* members claim to be closer to the original Buddhist ascetic tradition in contrast to those of the *baha*, who has compromised further with the secular world. The author argues that in fact the real difference is synchronic rather than diachronic, since the tension within Buddhism between its more and less worldly aspects has existed right from the beginning of the religion.

**331 Hinduism and Buddhism in the Kathmandu Valley (Nepal).**

David N. Gellner. In: *The world's religions*. Edited by S. Sutherland, C. Houlden, P. Clarke, F. Hardy. London: Croom Helm; Boston: G. K. Hall, 1988, p. 739-55.

Offers a useful, simply written introduction to the day-to-day religious life of the Newars, and to the blending together of Hindu and Buddhist elements within it.

**332 Monkhood and priesthood in Newar Buddhism.**

David N. Gellner. In: *Prêtrise, pouvoirs et autorité en Himalaya*. Edited by Véronique Bouillier, Gérard Toffin. Paris: Editions de l'EHESS, 1989, p. 165-192.

Presents a discussion of the different types of priesthood in Newar Buddhism, leading to an analysis of the ideological and ritual structure of the religion. The author argues that although the Vajracharya priests are principally characterized as expert practitioners of tantric (Vajrayana) Buddhism, this does not exclude involvement in the 'lower' levels of the religion, and that they are seen as combining the rôle of the tantric *siddha* ('realized one') and the compassionate *bodhisattva* central to Mahayana Buddhism. Gellner's other articles on Newar Buddhism include: 'Monastic initiation in Newar Buddhism' (In: *Indian ritual and its exegesis*. Edited by Richard F. Gombrich. New Delhi: Oxford University Press, 1988. p. 42-112 (Oxford University Papers on India, vol. 2, part 1)); 'Priesthood and possession: Newar religion in the light of some Weberian concepts', *Pacific Viewpoint*, vol. 29, no. 2 (Nov 1988), p. 119-43.

## Religion

### 333 **Spirit possession in the Nepal Himalayas.**

Edited by John T. Hitchcock, Rex L. Jones. Translations from the French by Harriet Leva Beegun. Warminster, England: Aris & Philips; New Delhi: Vikas, 1976. 401p. map. bibliog.

In their introduction, the editors state that this book is intended for the curious tourist as well as for the specialist, and they suggest that spirit possession should be seen as a third religion, alongside the more publicly prominent Hinduism and Buddhism. There are two general treatments of the topic, and seventeen papers on specific aspects, divided into four sections, dealing respectively with eastern Nepal, western Nepal, Nepal and adjacent areas, and spirit possession and the literary tradition.

### 334 **Tamang ritual texts, I: preliminary studies in the folk-religion of an ethnic minority in Nepal.**

Andras Höfer. Wiesbaden, GFR: Franz Steiner, 1981. 184p. bibliog. (Beiträge zur Südasiensforschung, vol. 65).

This study of the non-Buddhist religion of the Tamangs of Dhading district (in the central hills west of Kathmandu), is based on field-work carried out in 1969-74. Texts recorded by the author, normally during rituals, are presented in transcription with translation and commentary. There are introductory sections on the Tamangs generally, on the classes of supernatural beings which they recognise, on their ritual specialists and on the overall nature of their religion, which is seen as 'this-worldly', in contrast to the soteriological preoccupations of Buddhism and Hinduism. The work is illustrated by black-and-white photographs.

### 335 **Ritual paradoxes in Nepal: comparative perspectives on Tamang religion.**

David Holmberg. *Journal of Asian Studies*, vol. 43, no. 4 (Aug. 1984), p. 197-222. bibliog.

Based on the author's fieldwork amongst the western Tamangs of Nuwakot and Rasuwa districts in 1975-77 and 1983, this article gives a brief, general account of Tamang religion, and then concentrates on the interrelationship between their two principal classes of religious specialist: Buddhist *lamas* who recite written Tibetan texts and carry out rites for the dead, and shamanist *bombos* who minister to the problems of the living. Whilst the *lamas* are seen as concerned with the maintenance of order in the universe, the *bombos'* sphere is the unpredictable.

### 336 **The Jala Pyakha: a classical Newar dance drama of Harisiddhi.**

Linda L. Iltis. In: *The heritage of the Kathmandu Valley*. Edited by Niels Gutschow, Axel Michaels. Sankt Augustin, GFR: VGH Wissenschaftsverlag, 1987. p. 199-213. bibliog.

Presents an illustrated account of the annual dance drama at Harisiddhi (Newari *Jala*), a small town one mile south of Patan, in which hereditary priests of the temple of *Jaladyah* ('the gods of Jala') take the part of the gods. Participants are themselves then regarded as gods for the rest of their lives. The author contrasts this with dance dramas elsewhere, in which the identification with the god lasts only for the duration of the performance. As most of the townspeople are related to one or more of the priests, the population can be regarded as 'devotees of their own identity'.

**337 The sacred complex in Janakpur - Indological, sociological, anthropological and philosophical study of Hindu civilization.**

Makhan Jha. Foreword by L. P. Vidyarthi. Allahabad, India: United Publishers, 1971. 152p. 2 maps. bibliog. (Social Studies, 1).

A revised and updated version of this book was published in 1978: *Aspects of a great traditional city in Nepal* (Varanasi, India: Kishor Vidya Niketan, 196p.). The author presents a study of the town in the Nepalese *tarai* that is reputedly the birthplace of Sita. Jha examines the religious sites, the pilgrimage activities, the ascetic communities, the religious specialists, and the effect of regulation by the *Gutisansthan*, the government body set up to regulate religious trust funds. The functioning of the complex as a whole is presented as exemplifying the integrative aspect of Hinduism, linking together different localities and traditions.

**338 Theravada Buddhism in Nepal.**

Ria Kloppenberg. *Kailash*, vol. 5, no. 4 (1977), p. 301-21. bibliog.

Offers a history of Theravada Buddhism in Nepal and a description of its present status. This branch of Buddhism, which is established in Sri Lanka and Burma, contrasts with traditional Newar Vajryana Buddhism because of its simpler and more rationalistic structure. Its influence in Nepal stems from the work of the reformist Ceylonese Maha Bodhi Society. This first international Buddhist organization was founded in 1891 and is involved in the promotion of radical social and political as well as religious ideas. The article includes a catalogue of Theravada monasteries, monks and nuns in Nepal in March 1977. Another article on this topic is by H. Bechert and J. V. Hartmann, 'Observations on the reform of Buddhism in Nepal', *Journal of the Nepal Research Centre*, vol. 8 (1988), p. 1-30.

**339 Images of the Hindu fierce mother goddess and experiences of mother.**

Vivian Kondos. *Kailash*, vol. 12, no. 3-4 (1985), p. 223-76. bibliog.

The author takes issue with Ashis Nandy (*At the edge of psychology: essays in politics and culture*, Delhi: Oxford University Press, 1980) and Sudhir Kakar (*The inner world*, Delhi: Oxford University Press, 1978). She argues they are wrong to interpret blood sacrifice and worship of the fierce goddess as an acting-out of fear of castration by an aggressive mother, since worshippers actually perceive the goddess's ferocity as a power to be harnessed rather than a threat to be appeased. She suggests that their picture of son as potential victim of mother obscures the essential fact that these rituals, like many others in Hinduism, act out the dominion of men over women, who are excluded from the sources of supernatural power.

**340 The Tuladhars of Kathmandu: a study of Buddhist tradition in a Newar merchant community.**

Todd Thornton Lewis. Ph.D. thesis. Columbia University, New York, 1984. 658p. maps. bibliog. (Available from University Microfilms, Ann Arbor, Michigan, order no. DA 8506008).

This thesis focuses on the Tuladhars (a Newar Buddhist caste) of Asan Tol, a major commercial area of the old city. There is an account of the religious geography of the Kathmandu Valley as a whole and of the immediate area, and a description of the rituals associated with particular locations. The second part examines the structure of traditional Newar 'Baha Buddhism', including the rôle of the *viharas* (former monasteries) and relations between the Vajracharya priests and the lay community as

## Religion

well as between Hindus and Buddhists. The final section discusses recent changes, such as the growing tendency for surplus wealth to be spent on modern consumer goods rather than on the support of religion, and the impact of the Tibetan and Theravada Buddhist traditions. The study includes biographies of four merchants with details of their families and house-plans.

### 341 **Max Weber and the relation of religions to social change; some considerations from Nepal and Sikkim.**

Trevor Ling. In: *Max Weber in Asian Studies*. Edited by A. E. Buss, Leiden, Netherlands: E. J. Brill, 1985. p. 115-28.

The author disputes Chie Nakane's suggestion in her *A plural society in Sikkim* (q.v.) that the greater economic success of Nepalese immigrants in Sikkim compared to the Lepcha and Bhotias can be explained by Hinduism being more conducive to enterprize than Buddhism. Arguing that her theory is a misapplication of Weber's view, he claims that the real explanation lies in the background of poverty and oppression to which the Nepalese had been subjected in their own country.

### 342 **Karunamaya.**

John K. Locke. Kathmandu: Sahayogi for the Research Centre for Nepal and Asian Studies, Tribhuvan University, 1980. 524p. bibliog.

'Karunamaya' ('embodiment of compassion') is one of the titles of the god known as Matsyendranath in the Hindu, and as Avalokiteshvara in the Buddhist tradition. The cult of this deity is one of the most prominent in the Kathmandu Valley, and the annual procession of the chariot of 'Red Matsyendranath' from the village of Bungamati to the town of Patan is one of the best known festivals in Nepal. In this detailed, but highly readable study, the author brings out the fundamentally Buddhist nature of the cult, but also shows that in origin it was concerned with a purely local deity, Bunga-dya, who only later became identified with figures in the Buddhist and Hindu pantheons. The whole process exemplifies the blending together of different traditions typical of Newar religion. With its detailed analysis of rituals, and its introduction to the structure of Shakya and Vajracharya monasteries, it is the standard study of Newar Buddhism.

### 343 **Newar Buddhist initiation rites.**

John K. Locke. *Contributions to Nepalese Studies*, vol. 2, no. 2 (1975), p. 1-23. bibliog.

Provides an account of the *bare chuyegu* rite, or ceremony of initiation as temporary Buddhist monks undergone by Newar boys of the *shakya* caste. There is also a brief account of the Valley's 'monasteries', which are treated in much greater detail in Locke's book, *Buddhist monasteries of Nepal* (q.v.). Another account of the initiation ceremony is provided by David Gellner in *Monastic initiation in Newar Buddhism* (q.v.).

### 344 **Buddhist monasteries of Nepal: a survey of the bahas and bahis of the Kathmandu Valley.**

John K. Locke. Kathmandu: Sahayogi, 1985. 542p. 3 maps. bibliog.

Presents a comprehensive survey of all known *bahas* and *bahis* – Buddhist institutions inhabited by clans of the Newar 'Bare' (monk) caste. The author provides details for each monastery of its present physical structure and of its history. In the introduction



he describes how the tradition of monkish celibacy was completely lost before the end of the Malla period, and how the modern 'monasteries' became inhabited by families on the basis of hereditary right. He also outlines the division of the 'Bare' caste into Vajracharya and Shakya sub-groups, and gives details of the rituals still associated with these institutions.

**345 The coronation rituals of Nepal – with special reference to the coronation of King Birendra (1975).**

Axel Michaels. In: *Heritage of the Kathmandu Valley*. Edited by Niels Gutschow, Axel Michaels. Sankt Augustin, GFR: VGH Wissenschaftsverlag, 1987, p. 415-67.

This highly-detailed, Indological analysis is based on observation of King Birendra's coronation in 1975, and also on various texts, especially the *Rajyabhisekavidhana* (Rules for the royal consecration) attributed to Drabya Shah, who made himself king of Gorkha in 1559. The author concentrates in particular on identifying elements from the Vedas and the Puranas (older and more recent Hindu scriptures) and on tracing the development of the tradition.

**346 The Sanskrit Buddhist literature of Nepal.**

Translated and edited by Rajendralal Mitra. Calcutta: Asiatic Society of Bengal, 1882. 340p. Reprinted, Calcutta: Sanskrit Pustak Bhandar, 1971.

This book consists of translated abstracts of the Buddhist Sanskrit manuscripts which were collected by Brian Hodgson in the mid-19th century, and presented to the Asiatic Society. Apart from the English translation, each entry also includes the opening and closing lines of the original manuscript printed in Devanagari. The editor's introduction gives a full account of Hodgson's contribution to all fields of scholarship, and argues that many of the Sanskrit versions of the scriptures predate the Pali ones of the Theravada Buddhist canon.

**347 A history of Buddhism in Nepal. A.D. 704-1396.**

Rajendra Ram. Patna, India: Janabharata, 1977; Delhi: Motilal Banarsidass, 1978. 249p. bibliog.

Presents a controversial account of the religion from Licchavi times down to the triumph of the Hindu social order under King Jayasthiti Malla at the end of the 14th century. The author accepts as historical the legends of visits to Nepal by various prominent Indian religious figures including Gorakhnath and Shankaracharya, tying these in with an interpretation of the struggle between Buddhism and orthodox Hinduism as one between popular forces and those of reactionary vested interests.

**348 The divinities of the Karnali basin in western Nepal.**

Prayag Raj Sharma. In: *Contributions to the anthropology of Nepal*. Edited by Christoph von Fürer-Haimendorf. Warminster, England: Aris & Philips, 1974. p. 244-60.

The author discusses the religion of the Karnali basin in western Nepal, considering, in particular, the various deities under the generic title of 'Masta.' He sees in these cults a mixture of Brahmanism and of an older Khas tradition, and also the prototype for the *kuldevata* (lineage god) worship among present-day Khas Chetris.

## **Religion**

**349 Buddhist Himalaya: travels and studies in quest of the origin and nature of Tibetan religion.**

David Llewellyn Snellgrove. Oxford, England: Bruno Cassirer, 1957; New York: Philosophical Library, 1958. 324p. bibliog. 2 maps.

To some extent now superseded by the author's *Indo-Tibetan Buddhism* (q.v.), this work deals with the origins of Buddhism and of developments in the Himalayan region, in particular from the 8th century onwards. These developments include the evolution of the ritualistic form known as tantricism (sometimes known by the alternative title of 'mantrayana', 'the way of spells'). The narrative is linked to the author's travels in 1952-54 to the Indian sites associated with the birth of the religion and along the borders of western Tibet, and an account of present-day Buddhism is given on the basis of practices in the monasteries of Solu Khumbu. The Buddhism of the Kathmandu Valley is discussed on pages 91-120 and seen as a negation of the essence of Buddhism under pressure from the surrounding Hinduism.

**350 Himalayan pilgrimage, a study of Tibetan religion by a traveller through western Nepal.**

David Llewellyn Snellgrove. Oxford, England: Bruno Cassirer; Boulder, Colorado: Prajna, 1981. 2nd. ed. 304p. maps. bibliog.

This work, originally published in 1961, is a journal of a trek taken in 1956 up the Bheri valley and eastwards behind the Himalayas, returning to Kathmandu through the Buri Gandaki valley. The author combines vivid description of the physical environment with detailed study both of Buddhist and Bon shrines, and of art and doctrine as suggested by the localities visited. Appendices discuss the correct form of Tibetan place names (as contrasted with corruptions presented by the Survey of India maps) and names of divinities, with Sanskrit and/or classical Tibetan equivalents. The 1981 edition includes a preface which describes briefly the author's return visits to the area in 1960-61 and in 1978, and the changes that he noted. The 1960-61 visit is described in greater detail in *Four lamas of Dolpo* (q.v.).

**351 Four lamas of Dolpo. Tibetan biographies.**

Edited and translated by David Llewellyn Snellgrove. Oxford, England: Bruno Cassirer, 1967. 2 vols. 2 maps.

These biographies are of three individuals from the 15th and 16th centuries and one from the 18th century, and include information on meditation technique and experience, the requests made by the local population for rituals and charms, and relations with local rulers. An introduction gives details of the author's journey, on which he was accompanied by the French anthropologist Corneille Jest, and also of the area and its religion. The original Tibetan texts, from manuscripts discovered in Dolpo, are reproduced in volume two, together with commentaries and glossaries.

**352 Indo-Tibetan Buddhism – Indian Buddhists and their Tibetan successors.**

David Llewellyn Snellgrove. London: Serindia; Boulder, Colorado: Prajna, 1987. 640p. 6 maps. bibliog.

This masterly compilation is intended by the author to be a summing up of thirty years' research on the subject. Five chapters cover the origins of Buddhism in India; later developments there including the origins of the Mahayana school; the establishment of Buddhist communities outside India; the emergence of tantric Buddhism; and the

conversion of Tibet. The last of these suggests that the Bon religion which, like Tibetan Buddhism, has adherents in Nepal, is partly a survival of Buddhist influences reaching western Tibet from Central Asia, before direct influence from India and Nepal reached the remainder of the country. In his discussion of the Buddhism of the Kathmandu Valley, Snellgrove accepts the theory advanced in John Brough's *Legends of Khotan and Nepal* (q.v.), according to which traditions originating in Chinese Turkestan were transferred to the Kathmandu Valley by Tibetan visitors who remembered the stories but not their true location. Under the influence of John K. Locke's *Karunamaya* (q.v.), this work is less tendentious than Snellgrove's earlier account of Newar Buddhism in *Buddhist Himalaya* (q.v.).

**353 Dieux souverains et rois dévots dans l'ancienne royauté de la vallée du Népal.** (Sovereign gods and devout kings in the ancient royalty of the Nepal Valley).

Gérard Toffin. *L'homme*, vol. 26, no. 3 (1986), p. 71-95. bibliog.

Religious aspects of Newar kingship are explored in this important study. Whilst stressing the significance of these aspects, the author argues that the king was not actually worshipped as Vishnu, as were the god-kings of south-east Asia. Toffin has published a number of other influential articles on this and related topics, including 'Aspects religieux de la royauté Néwar au Népal' (Religious aspects of the Newar royalty in Nepal), *Archives des Sciences Sociales des Religions*, vol. 48, no. 1 (1979), p. 53-82. ; 'De la nature au surnaturel' (From nature to the supernatural); 'Dieux du sol et démons dans les religions himalayennes' (Earth gods and demons in himalayan religions), *Etudes Rurales*, nos. 107-08 (1987), p. 85-106; and 'La voie des 'héros': tantrisme et héritage védique chez les Brahmanes Rajopadhyaya du Népal' (The way of the 'heroes': tantricism and vedic heritage among the Rajopadhyay Brahmins of Nepal), *Purusartha*, vol. 12 (1989), p. 19-40.

**354 Kanphata - Untersuchungen zu Kult, Mythologie und Geschichte Sivaitischer Tantriker in Nepal.** (Kanphata – investigations into the cult, mythology and history of Shivaite tantricists in Nepal.)

Günter Unbescheid. Wiesbaden, GFR: Franz Steiner, 1980. 197p. bibliog. 2 maps. (Beiträge zur Südasiensforschung Südasiens-Institut Universität Heidelberg, 63).

Provides an account of the 'split-eared' (*kanphata*) sect, followers of the shadowy Bengali mystic, Gorakhnath, who probably lived in the 11th century AD. The author describes their rituals, and also their shrines in the Kathmandu Valley and elsewhere in Nepal, and outlines the myths associated with each site. He suggests that the *kanphata* entered the hills in the 14th century, assisted Rajput immigrants from the plains in the establishment of new principalities, and were also responsible for the fusion of many local hill deities with figures from the main Indian tradition. The sect had a special link with the Shah dynasty which now rules Nepal, and the name 'Gorkha' itself derives from Gorakhnath. There is an English summary on p. 193-97.

## **Religion**

### **355 Taleju: sovereign deity of Bhaktapur.**

Anne Vergati-Stahl. In: *Asie du sud - tradition et changements* (South Asia – tradition and change). Edited by Marc Gaborieau, Alice Thorner. Paris: Centre National de la Recherche Scientifique, 1979. pp. 163-67. (Colloques internationaux du C.N.R.S., no. 582).

The author discusses the religious and political significance of Taleju, a goddess principally associated with Bhaktapur but who became the patron goddess of the royal families of all three Newar kingdoms of the Kathmandu Valley after the introduction of her cult in the 13th century. This event is linked by Vergati-Stahl with the codification and elaboration of the Newar caste system.

### **356 Buddhist traditions and culture of the Kathmandu valley (Nepal).**

K. Vaidya. Kathmandu: Sajha, 1986. 299p. bibliog.

This informative compendium of various Newar Buddhist customs is illustrated by ninety-seven photographs. The focus is principally on Lalitpur (Patan).

### **Heritage of the Kathmandu Valley.**

See item no. 9.

### **Essays on the language, literature and religion of Nepal and Tibet.**

See item no. 11.

### **Nepalese cultural heritage in a nutshell.**

See item no. 15.

### **Faith-healers in the Himalayas. An investigation.**

See item no. 239.

### **Breast feeding in Nepal: religious and culture beliefs.**

See item no. 245.

### **Ritual coordination of medical pluralism in highland Nepal.**

See item no. 247.

### **Ecstasy and healing in Nepal: an ethnopsychiatric study of Tamang shamanism.**

See item no. 249.

### **Faith healers: a force for change: preliminary report of an action-research project.**

See item no. 256.

### **Concepts of illness and curing in a central Nepal village.**

See item no. 257.

### **Culture and religion: its historical background.**

See item no. 383.

### **The ambiguous position of renunciants in Nepal; interrelation of asceticism and the social order.**

See item no. 386.

**Language, caste, religion and territory: Newar identity ancient and modern.**

*See* item no. 398.

**Mâîtres et possédés: les dieux, les rites et l'organisation sociale chez les Tharu.**

(Masters and possessed: gods, rituals and social organization among the Tharu.)

*See* item no. 401.

**Sherpas through their rituals.**

*See* item no. 406.

**Tharus of Dan: Tharu religion.**

*See* item no. 414.

**Les Tamangs du Népal – usages et religion.** (The Tamangs of Nepal – customs and religion.)

*See* item no. 423.

**Société et religion chez les Newar du Népal.** (Society and religion among the Newars of Nepal.)

*See* item no. 426.

**A plural society in Sikkim: a study of the interrelations of Lepchas, Bhotias and Nepalis.**

*See* item no. 507.

**Ordered space concepts and functions in a town of the Kathmandu Valley.**

*See* item no. 713.

**Introduction a l'iconographie du tântrisme bouddhique. Tome 1.** (Introduction to the iconography of tantric Buddhism. Volume 1.)

*See* item no. 805

**Rati-lila: an interpretation of the tantric imagery of the temples of Nepal.**

*See* item no. 835.

# Society

## General

357 **Hindus of the Himalayas.**

Gerald D. Berreman. Berkeley, California: University of California Press, 1972. 2nd ed. 440p. 3 maps. bibliog.

This study of the Khas of the Himalaya west of the Nepal border, is based on field-work undertaken in the late 1950s and on a return visit in 1968-69 to a village near Dehra Dun in Garhwal. Although the details of the caste structure are somewhat different from Nepal, much of the material is still relevant to that country and particularly to its western region. The author identifies a common '*Pahadi*' (hill) culture throughout the Himalaya eastwards from Kumaon, which is distinguished from the the plains culture by features such as a less rigorous regulation of caste and sexual relations and the importance of spirit possession in religious life. It should be noted, however, that the village where the research was conducted differs from many other parts of the region because there are no Rajputs who reject the Khas label.

358 **The people of Nepal.**

Dor Bahdur Bista. Kathmandu: Ratna Pustak Bhandar, 1987. 5th ed. 210p. map. bibliog.

Originally published in 1967, this was the first major anthropological work to be written by a Nepalese scholar, and it remains an indispensable guide to Nepal's ethnic diversity. Clear accounts of the principal features of each major ethnic group and of many of the smaller ones are arranged in sections dealing with the hills, the *tarai*, the high Himalaya etcetera. The work's one weakness is that it does not give full consideration to the interrelationship of the different groups in a caste hierarchy which was enforced by law until the end of the Rana régime, and which still exercises an important effect on social relationships at village level.

359 **The people.**

Dor Bahadur Bista. In: *Nepal in perspective*. Edited by Pashupati Shumshere J. B. Rana, Kamal P. Malla. Kathmandu: Centre for Economic Development and Administration, 1973. p. 35-45.

Presents a brief but clear account of the principal elements making up Nepal's population. The treatment of the origin of the Khas is weakened by omitting any mention of their medieval empire in the Karnali basin and in western Tibet.

360 **Administration and politics in a Nepalese town.**

Lionel Caplan. London: Oxford University Press, 1975. 266p. 2 maps. bibliog.

The product of field-work carried out in 1969, this book examines the effect on 'Belaspur Bazaar', a small town in the Karnali basin in western Nepal, of the expansion of the administration and the influx of development funds after the overthrow of the Rana régime. The author focuses particularly on the relationship between townsmen and the surrounding villages, showing how this has changed from a largely complementary one to a relationship of intense competition for new resources. Caplan explains that this rivalry has given rise to political conflict under both the parliamentary and panchayat systems. Subsidiary themes include inter-caste marriage, the conflict for officials between government rôles and kinship obligations, and the extent and function of bribery. It is also argued that newly available resources from central government tend to be directed disproportionately not only towards socially privileged groups but towards townspeople and those villagers within easy reach of the town.

361 **Priests and cobblers.**

A. Patricia Caplan. Foreword by P. H. Gulliver, D. J. Parkin.

London: Intertext Books; San Francisco: Chandler, 1972. 103p. bibliog. 2 maps.

This study is based on field-work conducted in 'Duari village, two miles from the district town of 'Belaspur' in western Nepal where the author's husband was working. The book examines the changes which have occurred, mainly since 1951, in the relationship between upper castes (in particular the Brahmans) and lower castes (in particular the Sarkis, or cobblers), and shows how the availability of a new source of cheap grain has reduced the lower caste's dependence on the upper, and how this fact, together with the introduction of elections for the local panchayat, led first to the recruitment of cobblers as supporters of rival Brahman factions and then to a largely Brahman versus cobbler struggle. The overall economic status of the Sarkis has not, however, improved, and the author argues, on the basis of comparison with other communities in South Asia, that for success in the local arena, a depressed group generally needs outside help. In India this can be provided by political parties and caste associations, but in Nepal such forms of political activity are not allowed under the panchayat system. The book is illustrated with black-and-white photographs.

## Society. General

### 362 **Land and migration in far-western Nepal.**

Dilli Ram Dahal, Navin Kumar Rai, Andrew E. Manzardo. Preface by Prayag Raj Sharma. Kathmandu: Institute of Nepal and Asian Studies, 1977. 170p. bibliog.

Presents a study of migration patterns affecting the people of two village panchayats in Darchula district, on Nepal's western border with India. The authors discuss both temporary absence from the home village, for such activities as trading, transhumance and seasonal farm, and permanent ('non-reversible') migration. Economic causes of migration patterns, and the effects on the hill people are examined. The authors highlight people's anxiety to maintain contacts with their home village, and also argue that movement of the richer peasants to the *tarai* exacerbates the problem of regional imbalance.

### 363 **Himalayan anthropology.**

Edited by James T. Fisher. Foreword by Christoph von Fürer-Haimendorf. The Hague; Paris: Mouton, 1978. 567p. bibliog. (World Anthropology).

Thirty-five contributions, many of very high quality, are grouped into sections on: issues affecting the region as a whole; South Asia; Central Asia; and the Newars (regarded as a group combining both South Asian and Central Asian features).

### 364 **Caste in the multi-ethnic society of Nepal.**

Christoph von Fürer-Haimendorf. *Contributions to Indian Sociology*, vol. 6 (1962), p. 90-98.

The author draws mainly on his understanding of Chetri and Newar marriage systems to stress the flexibility of caste in Nepal. He argues that the practice of allowing the son of a higher caste man with a wife of lower caste to retain his father's caste contrasts strongly with the North Indian pattern of endogamy. The Indian practice leads to the proliferation of new sub-castes when irregular unions occur, whilst Nepalese tolerance preserves caste unity over a wide geographical area. Fürer-Haimendorf's conclusion has been disputed by Louis Dumont, who argues that the North Indian system is less rigid than the former claims it to be, although endogamy is the ideal in South India ('Marriage in India. The present state of the question: postscript to part 1 – Nayar and Newar', *Contributions to Indian Sociology*, vol. 7 (1964)).

### 365 **Caste and kin in Nepal, India and Ceylon.**

Edited by Christoph von Fürer-Haimendorf. Bombay: Asia Publishing House, 1966. 364p. 2 maps. bibliog.

Presents a collection of essays on the operation of the caste system in areas of contact between Hinduism and Buddhism, including the editor's discussion of the Chetris and of the Sherpas, a description of the Newar caste structure and a discussion of the position of Nepalese immigrants *vis-à-vis* other ethnic groups in Sikkim.



**366 Morals and merit – a study of values and social controls.**

Christoph von Fürer-Haimendorf. London: Weidenfield & Nicolson; Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1967. Reprinted, New Delhi: Sterling; London: East-West, 1979. 239p. bibliog. (The Nature of Human Society Series).

This comparative study of a number of different communities, includes tribal groups and caste Hindus in India and the Chetris and Sherpas of Nepal. The discussion of Chetri values emphasizes the effect offences against caste rules by an individual are believed to have on his kin and even on his ancestors, in contrast with the Sherpa concept of merit as a purely individual concern. The author also modifies the picture of Chetri homogeneity given in his earlier works, in the light of the caste's internal divisions and the greater sexual freedom allowed to women in the Jumla area of western Nepal. The title of the 1979 version of this book is: *South Asian Societies – a study of values and social controls*.

**367 Contributions to the anthropology of Nepal: proceedings of a seminar held at the School of Oriental and African Studies, University of London, June/July 1973.**

Edited by Christoph von Fürer-Haimendorf. Warminster, England: Aris & Philips, 1974. 260p. map. bibliog.

Presents a varied selection of papers, including three in French, on various ethnic groups, with one contribution giving statistics for the ethnic composition of eighteen districts from Dolakha in the east to Kaski in the central hills. Other topics covered include Shamanism, and the relatively little studied Sunwar and Chantel peoples. Another collection of papers edited by Fürer-Haimendorf is *Asian highland societies in anthropological perspective* (Delhi: Sterling, 1981; London: East-West, 1982), which includes several contributions on Nepal.

**368 Himalayan traders. Life in highland Nepal.**

Christoph von Fürer-Haimendorf. London: John Murray, 1975. 316p. 7 maps. bibliog.

The first four chapters form a sequel to the authors' earlier work on the Sherpas, *The Sherpas of Nepal: Buddhist highlanders* (q.v.), and examine the effect on their life-style of the disruption of trans-Himalayan trade by the Chinese occupation of Tibet in 1959. He also introduces comparative material on other communities engaged in that trade including the *bhotias* of the Arun-Tamar region, the Thakalis of the Kali Gandaki valley, and other groups in Mustang, Dolpo and Karnali zone. In the latter case, the disruption of traditional trade by competition from Indian salt, in addition to changes in Tibet, is identified as the major cause of change.

**369 Social change in a Himalayan region.**

Christoph von Führer-Haimendorf. In: *The Himalaya: aspects of change*. Edited by J. S. Lall, A. D. Moddie, Delhi: Oxford University Press, 1981. p. 175-203.

This article is effectively an updating of some of the contents of Haimendorf's book, *Himalayan traders* (q.v.). The author examines changes in life in the Upper Gandaki valley between 1962 and 1976, highlighting the different responses of Thakalis and other communities to the decline in the traditional trade with Tibet. While most Thakalis have chosen to relocate themselves further south, the people of Marpha, and of the

## Society. General

Panchgaon and Baragaon villages have retained their home base whilst diversifying into new activities. In Mustang, the power of the local monarchy has been virtually abolished by the central government, but the old nobility retains a predominant position. Marphalis and Panchgaonis are working in transport and developing fruit farming, while Baragaonis have been peddling textiles.

### 370 **An anthropological bibliography of South Asia together with a directory of recent anthropological fieldwork.**

Elizabeth von Fürer-Haimendorf, Helen Kanitkar. Foreword by Christoph von Fürer-Haimendorf. Paris, The Hague: Mouton, 1958, 1964, 1970. 3 vols. (Le Monde d'Outre-Mer Passé et Présent, 4th series, bibliography III, IV, VIII).

The first volume incorporates material on pre-1940 publications collected by David Mandelbaum, with a separate section for the period 1940 to 1954. The volume is divided regionally, Nepal being included in the Central Himalaya section (p. 75-105). The second and third volumes cover publications up to 1959 and 1964 respectively. Kanitkar is the compiler of volume three.

### 371 **Regionalism and national unity in Nepal.**

Frederick H. Gaige. Berkeley, Los Angeles: University of California Press; Delhi: Vikas, 1975. 234p. 10 maps. bibliog.

Offers a regional study of the *tarai* combined with a discussion of the problems of national integration. The author contrasts the political and cultural dominance of the hill dwellers in the Nepalese state with the greater economic resources of the *tarai*. He argues that the plainsmen's difficulties have been increased by the proscribing of political parties and by King Mahendra's use of anti-Indianism as a buttress to his own position. As aids to a solution Gaige advocates direct elections from individual districts to the Rastriya Panchayat, official status for Hindi, and quotas for *tarai* people in the military and administration, as well as an end to discriminatory citizenship laws. Much of the analysis remains valid, but direct elections were conceded in the 1980 amendment to the constitution. This is beginning to increase the access of *tarai* people to political power, but at the same time tensions have been increased by calls from the hills for stricter control of the open border with India.

### 372 **An additional perspective on the Nepalese caste system.**

John Hitchcock. *Himalayan anthropology: the Indo-Tibetan interface*. Edited by James F. Fisher. Paris; The Hague: Mouton, 1978. p. 111-20. bibliog.

Compares the caste system in Nepal with that of the Indian Himalaya to the west of the country, both of which systems distinguish between groups of (real or supposed) Indian origin and older inhabitants. He argues that the stronger position of the older groups *vis-à-vis* newcomers in Nepal stems from the organization of the former in the medieval Malla empire in the Karnali basin, and from the support they received from non-Hindu tribal groups.

- 373 The caste hierarchy and the state – a study of the Muluki Ain of 1854.**  
 Andras Höfer. Innsbruck, Austria: Universitätsverlag, Wagner 1979.  
 bibliog. 216p. map. (*Khumbu Himal*, vol. 13/2).

Presents an analysis of the Nepalese caste system in the light of its codification in the *Muluki Ain* (Civil Code) compiled under the first Rana prime minister, Jang Bahadur Rana. Careful study of the text of the Code is supplemented by reference to anthropological field studies. The author argues that the Nepalese system differed from that of India in that the state assumed direct responsibility for regulating and maintaining it, rather than merely acting as the enforcer of decisions made by Brahman priests.

- 374 Caste, state and ethnic boundaries in Nepal.**  
 Nancy Levine. *Journal of Asian Studies*, vol. 46, no. 1 (Feb. 1987),  
 p. 71-88. bibliog.

A general introduction to Nepal's ethnic diversity is followed by an analysis of relations between communities in Humla, in the extreme north-west of the country. The author focuses on the interaction between the groups and their perceptions in law before 1951. She argues that inter-group boundaries are often fluid, and that villages have sometimes adopted a different caste or ethnic label in order to claim the status ascribed to it by the political system.

- 375 Essays on the ethnology of Nepal and South Asia.**  
 Alexander W. Macdonald. Kathmandu: Ratna Pustak Bhandar,  
 1984. 317p. bibliog. (*Bibliotheca Himalayica*, Series III, 3).

Offers English translations of articles previously published by the author in French. Items on Nepal include two essays on the *gaine* (musician caste) and their songs, and descriptions of festivals.

- 376 Village and household economy in far western Nepal.**  
 Charles McDougal. Kathmandu: Tribhuvan University, 1968. 127p.  
 maps. bibliog.

Presents a study based on field research conducted in 1967-68 in the districts of Doti, Salyan, Kailali and Dang-Deukhuri, and thus including both hill and *tarai* areas. Five villages were selected from each district for investigation. Topics covered include land ownership and the organization of production, household expenditure and income, and dependence by hill households on income from non-agricultural sources.

- 377 Marriage customs in Nepal: ethnic groups, their marriage customs and traditions.**

Indra Majupuria, Trilok Chandra Majupuria. Kathmandu: The Authors, 1978. 206p. bibliog.

Illustrated with drawings and photographs, this survey includes details of the marriage customs of different ethnic groups as well as the standard high-caste Hindu pattern. The special rituals associated with royal marriages are also described.

## Society. General

### 378 Youth of Nepal.

Trilok Chandra Majupuria, Indra Majupuria. Lashkar, India: M. Devi, 1985. 316p. bibliog.

Produced to mark International Youth Year, 1985, this study looks at Nepalese youth from socio-economic, psychological, and political standpoints. The book is illustrated with photographs and drawings.

### 379 Parallel trade and innovation in central Nepal: the cases of the Gurung and Thakali subbas compared.

Don Messerschmidt, Nareshwar Jang Gurung. In: *Contributions to the anthropology of Nepal*. Edited by Christoph von Fürer-Haimendorf, Warminster, England: Aris & Philips, 1974, p. 197-221.

The authors summarize the well documented story of the rise in importance of the Thakali élite who obtained positions as *subbas* (local administrators and revenue contractors) in the 19th century, and compare this with the similar story of a Gurung Lamichane family in the Bhot Khola region (upper Marsyangdi valley), east of the Thakalis' homeland in the Kali Gandaki Valley. The first Gurung *subba* displaced a Thakali contractor in Bhot Khola, and later his family temporarily took over from them in their own territory also. However, the Thakalis were more successful over the long term, partly because their families were strengthened by the system of agnate succession.

### 380 Gurkhas.

C. John Morris. Delhi: Government of India, 1936. 2nd ed. 182p. bibliog. (Handbooks for the Indian Army). Reprinted, Delhi: B.R.Publishing, 1985.

The Indian reprint of this book in 1985 is entitled *The Gurkhas. An ethnology*. It is the most scholarly of the various editions through which this army handbook has gone, and the source of much of the material in the current, 1965 edition by R. C. Leonard & A. V. A. Mercer, *Nepal and the Gurkhas* (q.v.). Morris was a British Gurkha officer with a strong anthropological interest in Nepal. His work is nevertheless written very much from a recruiting point of view, and the section on the history of the country strongly reflects the view of the Shamsheer branch of the Rana family then in power. Much of the material is also found in *The Gurkhas: their manners, customs and country* (q.v.), which the author wrote with W. Brook Northey. An earlier edition (1890) of the handbook, edited by Eden Vansittart, was reprinted in 1980 (New Delhi: Ariana).

### 381 Changes in rigidity and flexibility of caste in the Kathmandu Valley.

Gopal Singh Nepali. In: *Heritage of the Kathmandu Valley*. Edited by Niels Gutschow, Axel Michaels. Sankt Augustin, GFR: VGH Wissenschaftsverlag, 1987. p. 315-332.

Presents an account of the caste hierarchy as perceived by the dominant Parbatiyas (Indo-Nepalese), and also of the Newars' own internal hierarchy. The author discusses how this is changing with new socio-economic circumstances, including mention of the status of foreign (European) women who have married into the hierarchy.

**382 Dictionary of Himalayan people.**

Jagdish Chandra Regmi, Sheshraj Shiwakothi. Kathmandu: Office of the Nepal Antiquary, 1983. 220p. map. (*Nepal Antiquary*, nos. 50-55).

This survey of many different ethnic groups and castes, includes details of legends and customs, and provides statistics for speakers of different languages in different districts and for the total strength of various groups at different census dates. Statistics used appear to be drawn from the 1971 census.

**383 Culture and religion: its historical background.**

Prayag Raj Sharma. In: *Nepal in perspective*. Edited by Pashupati Shumshere J. B. Rana, Kamal Prakash Malla. Kathmandu: Centre for Economic Development and Administration, 1973. p. 65-77.

Concentrating rather more on the cultural than the religious part of its label, this essay identifies the main currents which have combined to produce the present Nepalese milieu, including the Kirata substratum, relations with the Mithila region of north India in the medieval period and the westward movement of the Khas through the Himalaya. The author has also written on the present clash between traditional Hindu norms and western values, arguing strongly for wholesale adoption of the latter: 'Values in the doldrums – does the west meet the east in Nepal?' (*European Journal of Sociology*, vol. XXX (1989), p. 3-21).

**384 Caste, social mobility and sanskritization: a study of Nepal's old legal code.**

Prayag Raj Sharma. *Kailash*, vol. 5, no. 4 (1977), p. 272-300. bibliog.

An examination of the Nepalese caste system in the light of its systematization in the *Muluki Ain* (National Code) of 1854, stressing in particular the pivotal rôle of the Chetri caste and the integrative mechanism of Nepalese society. This article is particularly valuable for those who need a briefer and simpler account of the *Ain* than is provided in Andras Höfer's *The caste hierarchy and the state* (q.v.).

**385 Nepal: Hindu-tribal interface.**

Prayag Raj Sharma. *Contributions to Nepalese Studies*, vol. 6, no. 1 (Dec. 1978), p. 1-14. bibliog.

The author argues that the dichotomy between tribal and Hindu is less sharp in Nepal than in India, but is made to appear starker than it really is both by anthropological studies which focus on one particular group and by the hierarchical presentation of the different communities in the *Muluki Ain* (National Code). He points out that in traditional Nepalese usage 'Hindu' is understood as including tribal religion, and excluding only alien religions such as Islam and Christianity, and stresses that the Chetri caste in particular is seen as a bridge between the two categories.

**Népal et ses populations. (Nepal and its peoples.)**

See item no. 7.

**Essays on the languages, literature and religion of Nepal and Tibet.**

See item no. 11

**Society.** Castes and ethnic groups

**Miscellaneous essays on Indian subjects.**

See item no. 12.

**Nepal: profile of a Himalayan kingdom.**

See item no. 20.

**Himalayan Gazetteer.**

See item no. 162.

**The history of Janakpur: a study of asceticism and the Hindu state.**

See item no. 322.

**Hierarchical models of the Hindu social system.**

See item no. 324.

**Aspects of a great traditional city in Nepal: an anthropological appraisal.**

See item no. 337.

**Nepal Himalaya and change.**

See item no. 697.

## Castes and ethnic groups

**386 The ambiguous position of renunciants in Nepal; interrelation of asceticism and the social order.**

Véronique Bouillier. Translated from the French by Joe P.

Richmond. *Journal of the Nepal Research Centre*, vol. 8 (1985), p. 199-229. bibliog.

This article examines the status in Nepal of *sannyasis* (ascetics) of the Shaivite ascetic sect founded by the 9th century Hindu reformer, Shankaracharya. The author shows how their renunciation of the world is necessarily incomplete unless they choose to live as isolated individuals. *Sannyasis* living in any kind of community, including those in monasteries and *sannyasis* by birth, are allocated a place in the caste structure and controlled and regulated by the state. Special emphasis is placed on the rôle of the government's *Gutisansthan* (office for religious trusts).

**387 Land and social change in eastern Nepal.**

Lionel Caplan. London: Routledge & Kegan Paul, 1970. 224p. map. bibliog.

Based on field-work undertaken in 1964-65, mainly in a cluster of settlements in Ilam district, this book is a study of the relations between the indigenous Limbu tribe of eastern Nepal and the Brahmans who have settled in the area since its incorporation into the Nepalese state in the late-18th century. Even though the Limbu were officially allowed to retain their traditional form of communal land tenure (*kipat*) until the nationwide abolition of the system after 1960, land has gradually passed into Brahman hands. The Limbus themselves granted plots to Hindu settlers when land was plentiful, and, at the end of the 19th century, when pressure on land was already causing migration away from Nepal, the government converted these into ordinary, individual

tenure (*raikar*). Remaining *kipat* land was made inalienable, but the usufruct was mortgageable and many Brahmans thus gained the use of Limbu fields. The Limbu could theoretically reclaim possession by repayment at any time but this was normally not a practical possibility until Gurkha service with foreign armies and increased economic opportunities since 1951 enabled some to do so. The political/cultural Limbu movement, stronger than in any other tribal group, is partly fuelled by anti-Brahman resentment.

**388 An ethnographic study of social change among the Athpahariya Rais of Dhankuta.**

Dilli Ram Dahal. Foreword by Khadga Bikram Shah. Kathmandu: Centre for Nepal and Asian Studies, 1985. 139p. bibliog.

Based on field-work undertaken in 1973-74, this book looks at the Athpahariya Rai community, about 3,700 strong, living near Dhankuta bazar in Sagarmatha zone, eastern Nepal. The Athpahariyas themselves in fact claim to be Limbus, but do not intermarry with Limbus proper. Their language has been heavily influenced by Nepali, borrowing from it numerals from four upwards, and names of days, months and agricultural implements. The author looks at their social organization, religion (including alternative sets of funeral practices for natural and unnatural death) and village economy. Their traditional livelihood is now under threat as the construction of the Dharan-Dhankuta highway has reduced the demand for the portering services they provided.

**389 Notes on the origin of the Newars of the Kathmandu Valley of Nepal.**

Victor S. Doherty. In: *Himalayan anthropology: the Indo-Tibetan interface*. Edited by James F. Fisher. Paris and The Hague: Mouton, 1978, p. 433-46.

The author uses linguistic and cultural evidence to argue for an original immigration of the Newars from the north rather than east along the southern flank of the Himalaya.

**390 Trans-Himalayan traders. Economy, society and culture in north-west Nepal.**

James F. Fisher. Berkeley, Los Angeles, London: University of California Press; Delhi: Motilal Banarsidass, 1987. 232p. 5 maps. bibliog.

Presents a study of the Magars of 'Tarangapur', a village in Dolpo district two weeks' walk from the nearest road. The author, who spent a year in the village towards the end of the 1960s, presents the people of the area as a 'hinge' community between Hindu and Buddhist areas. He describes how the older trading pattern, in which surplus millet and buckwheat was traded for Tibetan salt and this then exchanged for rice in the south, is now being replaced by the sale for cash of animals and woollen products, the purchase of manufactured goods in the south and the sale of these in the north. The changing economic pattern has been accompanied by an increasing Hindu influence on the community, at least in externals.

## **Society. Castes and ethnic groups**

### **391 The Himalayan household: Tamang demography and domestic processes.**

Thomas Fricke. Ann Arbor, Michigan: UMI Research, 1986. 227p. 2 maps. bibliog.

This account of fertility patterns and environmental adaptation in the village of Timling in the Ganesh Himal area of central Nepal, combines careful demographic analysis with a sensitive account of Tamang culture. The author argues that fertility is well below the theoretical maximum because of delayed marriage to retain the children's labour in the parental household and because of prolonged lactation, but that the villagers nevertheless aim for large families to maximize household labour and the size of kinship networks within which exchange normally takes place. This is a rational strategy given the nature of the household economy, but the resultant population growth is now outrunning the availability of land. As the traditional trade of grain for Tibetan salt is also now halted, the Tamangs will be forced increasingly into the labour market outside the village, where they are at a disadvantage in competition with other groups. The present relatively egalitarian social structure will be increasingly eroded.

### **392 Ethnographic notes on the Tamangs of Nepal.**

Christoph von Fürer-Haimendorf. *Eastern Anthropologist*, IX (3-4 March 1956), p. 166-77.

Based on field-work undertaken in 1953, this article gives a brief outline of Tamang kinship structure, marriage and religion. A much fuller account of the Tamangs is now provided by Brigitte Steinman's *Les Tamangs du Népal* (q.v.).

### **393 Unity and diversity in the Chetri caste of Nepal.**

Christoph von Führer-Haimendorf. In: *Caste and kin in Nepal, India and Ceylon*. Bombay: Asia Publishing House, 1966, p. 1-67.

Provides a clear exposition of the structure of the caste, with particular emphasis on the distinction between pure (*gharra*) and impure descent, and on the caste's fundamental solidarity and ability to reinforce itself through the absorption of the offspring of inter-caste marriages.

### **394 The Sherpas of Nepal-Buddhist highlanders.**

Christoph von Fürer-Haimendorf. London: John Murray; Berkeley, California: University of California Press, 1972. 2nd ed. Reprinted, New Delhi: Sterling, 1979; London: East-West, 1979. 298p. 2 maps. bibliog.

Originally published in 1964, this study is based on field-work undertaken in the 1950s and early 1960s. During most of this time the border with Tibet was still open, so that religious life could be sustained by contact with centres in that country. The author emphasizes the importance of monastic organization and also of the Sherpas' active concern with reincarnation, contrasting this with the background rôle of the doctrine in Hindu society. He argues that each Sherpa sees himself as responsible for his own salvation, which is not linked with that of his fellows, but that concern for others is seen as a good way of acquiring merit, while the individualist emphasis leads to a tolerant attitude towards others' faults. The 1972 edition has a preface in which the author refers to his 1971 return visit, on the basis of which the Sherpa sections of his *Himalayan traders* (q.v.) were written.



- 395 **The Sherpas transformed – social change in a Buddhist society of Nepal.**  
Christoph von Fürer-Haimendorf. New Delhi: Sterling, 1984. 197p.  
map. bibliog.

This account was written after the author's 1983 visit to Solu Khumbu. Fürer-Haimendorf found changes since 1971 even greater than those between then and his original field-work, and describes a new pattern in which most able-bodied males are away from Khumbu most of the year working for the trekking and touring industry, thereby increasing the household management burden on women. The book includes an inventory of houses in the village of Khumjung, detailing changes since his first stay in the area. He suggests that the Sherpas now appear less happy than before.

- 396 **Minorités musulmanes dans le royaume hindou du Népal.** (Muslim minorities in the Hindu kingdom of Nepal.)  
Marc Gaborieau. Nanterre, France: Laboratoire de l'Ethnologie;  
Paris: Klincksieck, 1977. 282p. bibliog. maps. (Recherches sur la Haute Asie, 4).

Based both on anthropological field-work and on the study of historical documents, this meticulous work is the only account so far published of Nepal's three distinct Muslim communities, who together make up around three per cent of the population: the descendants of Kashmiri traders settled in Kathmandu; the *churautes* ('bangle makers') who have lived in the hills in association with the Indo-Nepalese since before the unification of Nepal; and the north Indian plains Muslims of the *tarai*. Some of the author's main conclusions may also be seen in his *Népal et ses populations* (q.v.) and in his 'Peasants, urban traders and rural artisans: Muslim minorities in the kingdom of Nepal', *Journal of the Institute of Muslim Minority Affairs*, vol. 3, no. 2 (winter, 1981), p. 190-205.

- 397 **The history of the Thakaalis according to the Thakaali tradition.**  
Surendra Gauchan, Michael Vinding. *Kailash*, vol. 5, no. 2 (1977),  
p. 97-184. map. bibliog.

This article outlines the traditions of the Thakali people of the upper Kali Gandaki region concerning their own early history, and in particular presents documents telling the stories of the four principal clans (Gauchan, Tulachan, Sherchan and Bhattachan).

- 398 **Language, caste, religion and territory, Newar identity ancient and modern.**  
David N. Gellner. *European Journal of Sociology*, vol. 27 (1986),  
p. 102-48. bibliog.

The author gives a clear description of the structure of Newar society, and of the Newars' position within the Nepalese ethnic mosaic. He argues that despite their linguistic affinity with hill 'tribal' groups, such as the Gurungs and Magars, their complex caste system and essentially urban civilization make it totally misleading to apply the tribal label to the Newars. He also analyses the modern development of a movement to preserve the cultural identity of the Newars in the face of pressures from the dominant Indo-Nepalese society. Gellner is co-editor with Declan Quigley of a proposed forthcoming volume, *Newar society*.

## **Society. Castes and ethnic groups**

### **399 A mountain village in Nepal.**

John T. Hitchcock. New York: Holt, Rinehart & Winston, 1980.  
143p. map. bibliog.

This is a reissue, with an additional chapter discussing the experience of field-work, of the author's 1966 *The Magars of Banyan Hill*. The work is based on Hitchcock's 1960-62 stay in Banyan Hill, a hamlet south-east of Pokhara. The settlement was selected as typical of the lower altitude Magar villages, where the Magars are more Hinduized than the more northerly section of the tribe, who migrate between winter and summer settlements and speak a related but not mutually comprehensible language. The book presents a general picture of life in the community, also drawing detailed portraits of the individual households. The relationship of the Magars to Brahmins and to occupational castes, groups respectively above and below them in the traditional hierarchy, is highlighted. There is also mention of emerging electoral competition between castes and of the rôle of ex-soldiers in the village. When the book was written, landlessness had still not become a problem, but a concluding section on future developments sees this as a danger with increasing pressure on the land and increasing commercialization of agriculture. The study is clearly written, with a minimum of anthropological jargon, and illustrated with black-and-white photographs.

### **400 A new rural elite in west central Nepal.**

Andras Höfer. In: *Himalayan anthropology: the Indo-Tibetan interface*. Edited by James F. Fisher. Paris; The Hague: Mouton, 1978, p. 179-86.

This article describes the leadership rôle assumed in a Tamang village by returned Gurkha soldiers. The author has also compiled 'A select bibliography of works on the Tamangs of Nepal' (*Bulletin of the Nepal Studies Association*, vol. 10 (1976), p. 34-36.).

### **401 Maîtres et possédés: les dieux, les rites et l'organisation sociale chez les Tharu. (Masters and possessed: gods, rituals and social organization among the Tharu.)**

Gisèle Krauskopff. Paris: Editions du Centre Nationale de la Recherche Scientifique, 1989. 276p. maps. bibliog.

This work is the only full ethnography so far published on the Tharus of the Dang valley in western Nepal's inner *tarai*. Those who do not read French must still rely on Drone Rajaure's articles in *Kailash* (q.v.) or on Surendra Kumar Srivastava's study of Tharus in the Indian Himalaya. (*The Tharus: a study in cultural dynamics* (q.v.)).

### **402 The Kulunge Rai: a study in kinship and marriage exchange.**

Charles McDougall. Kathmandu: Ratna Pustak Bhandar, 1979. 169p.  
3 maps. bibliog.

This work contains a general introduction to the Kirata (Rai and Limbu) peoples of the eastern hills and to the history of their area, followed by a study of the Kulunge tribe as represented by the remote village of Chemsing in the Hongu valley. At the time that the field-work was undertaken, there was no land shortage in the area and the traditional *kipat* communal tenure system was still functioning to a large degree, though it had been legally abolished. As there had been little encroachment by Brahmins and Chetris, and only some settlement by Sherpas and Indo-Nepalese occupational castes, the village was scarcely affected by the Hindu religion and

probably reflected the traditional Rai pattern. The author concentrates on household organization, kinship and marriage, suggesting that the highly endogamous marriage pattern perpetuated parochialism and prevented the creation of wider alliances. This very readable book includes an interesting account of the Kulunge tradition of horseplay and humour, which is frequently of a sexual nature.

**403 The Gurungs of Nepal.**

Donald A. Messerschmidt. Warminster, England: Aris & Philips;  
New Delhi, Oxford University Press, IBH, 1976.  
151p. 2 maps. bibliog.

As a general ethnography of the Gurungs, this work provides a briefer alternative to the more elaborate studies by Bernard Pignède (*Les Gurungs – une population himalayenne du Népal* (q.v.)) or Alan Macfarlane (*Resources and population: a study of the Gurungs of Nepal* (q.v.)). The work's general approach is combined with a focus on conflict and change in the village of Ghaisu near Lamjung. The author identifies the division of the tribe into the *char jat* (four clans) and the allegedly lower-status *sora jat* (sixteen clans) as a prime source of tension.

**404 The Newars: an ethno-sociological study of a Himalayan community.**

Gopal Nepali. Bombay: United Asia Publications, 1965. 476p. map.  
bibliog.

Provides a straightforward account of Newar society, emphasizing its grafting of Indian features onto a Mongoloid base and its subordination of the individual to the group. Although superseded by Gérald Toffin's *Société et religion chez les Néwar du Népal* (q.v.) as the standard treatment, it still contains much of value and remains the most complete account in English.

**405 Geschichte und Sozialordnung der Sherpa. (Sherpa history and social organization).**

Marc Oppitz. Innsbruck: Universitätsverlag Wagner, 1968. 170p. 2  
maps. bibliog.

The author uses documents discovered during a German anthropological expedition of 1965, together with oral tradition, to reconstruct Sherpa history. The four 'proto-clans', from whom ninety per cent of the Solu Khumbu Sherpas trace their descent, appear to have left their home in Kham (Eastern Tibet) for west-central Tibet, and crossed the Himalayas into their present territory around 1540. Other groups now counted as part of Sherpa society, but not having the status of the descendants of the original settlers are: the 'new clans', who migrated from Tibet within the last 150 years; 'pseudo-clans' (the descendants of unions between Sherpa girls and other Nepalese ethnic groups); and Khambas, the most recent arrivals. The book also gives an account of demography, social structure (including marriage patterns) and Sherpa legends, including that of the *yeti*. The author summarizes and reassesses his findings in 'Myths and facts: reconsidering some data concerning the clan history of the Sherpas', *Contributions to the Anthropology of Nepal*, p. 232-43 (also published in *Kailash*, vol. 2, no. 1-2 (1974), p. 121-31).

**Society. Castes and ethnic groups**

**406 Sherpas through their rituals.**

Sherry Ortner. Cambridge, New York: Cambridge University Press, New Delhi: Vikas, 1978. 195p. bibliog. (Cambridge Studies in Cultural Systems, 2).

Based on research carried out in the village of 'Dzemu' in 1966-68, this study combines a general ethnography with detailed description of the *nyungne* ('atonement'), exorcism, and offering rituals. Ortner analyses the meaning of the rituals as an enactment of problems within Sherpa culture and a suggestion of strategies to deal with them. She sees the rituals as exemplifying the individualistic nature of Sherpa Buddhism as compared with the South Asian variety.

**407 Mustang, the forbidden kingdom: exploring a lost Himalayan land.**

Michel Peissel. New York: Dutton; Toronto: Clarke, Irwin, 1967.

318p. Reprinted, London: Collins Harvill, 1968. 288p. maps. bibliog.

This book was reprinted in 1968 as *Mustang – a lost Tibetan kingdom*. It presents an account of a journey in 1964 to Mustang, a Tibetan kingdom which had been a tributary of Nepal since the 18th century and which at the time of the author's visit was normally closed to outsiders. A straightforward narrative is interspersed with material on local customs. There is an account of a meeting with King Angun Tenzing Trandul and his son and later successor, Jigme Dorje Trandul. A background theme is the tension created by the recent Chinese subjugation of Tibet, and the resistance of the Khampa guerrillas using Mustang as a base.

**408 Les Gurungs – une population himalayenne du Népal. (The Gurungs – a Himalayan population in Nepal.)**

Bernard Pignède. Edited by Louis Dumont. Paris; The Hague:

Mouton, 1966. 414p. bibliog. 3 maps. (Le Monde d'Outre Mer Passé et Present, 3rd series, 21).

Though based on research carried out in 1958, this remains the standard ethnography of the Gurungs. The author worked principally in Mohariya in the Modi valley, the native village of his Nepalese collaborator Chandra Bahadur Gurung, but paid short visits to other settlements. The fifth chapter, on hierarchy and clan structure, is published in English translation in *Contributions to Indian sociology*, vol. 6 (1962), p. 102-19. The book was published after the author's death at the age of twenty-nine, and includes a biographical tribute by the editor. A general account of Gurung country and its economy is followed by sections on household structure, marriage and religion.

**409 Tinglatar: socio-economic relationships of a Brahmin village in East Nepal.**

Peter Hodge Prindle. Kathmandu: Ratna Pustak Bhandar, 1983.

157p. 6 maps. bibliog. (Bibliotheca Himalayica, Series III, 15).

This study is based on field-work undertaken in 'Tinglatar' itself (population 346) and in the neighbouring district headquarters of Okhaldunga (population 874), in Sagarmatha zone. The author emphasizes the extent of the village community's interaction with the outside world, and links this to the Brahmans' acknowledged cultural superiority in Nepalese society, notwithstanding the low economic level of the village studied. He uses his data to argue against the validity of Eric Wolf's typology of peasant communities as either 'closed' or 'open' (*Peasants*. Englewood Cliffs, New Jersey: Prentice Hall, 1966), since Tinglatar combines some features of both models.

The research was conducted mainly in 1970-72, but the final chapter covers developments to 1977.

**410 Introversion and isogamy: marriage patterns of the Newars of Nepal.**

Declan Quigley. *Contributions to Indian Sociology*, vol. 20, no. 1 (1986), p. 75-95. bibliog.

The author reviews earlier studies of Newar marriage and rejects the view that inter-caste marriage is common among Newars, except those who have moved away from their ancestral homeland, the Kathmandu Valley. He argues that the Newars' real preference is for marriage between families of equal status, and that the practice of marrying within a very tight geographical community is a way of ensuring that this is achieved.

**411 Ethnicity without nationalism: the Newars of Nepal.**

Declan Quigley. *European Journal of Sociology*, vol. 28 (1987), p. 152-70. bibliog.

In this reply to Gellner's *Language, caste, religion and territory* (q.v.), the author argues that there is in fact very little feeling of group solidarity among Newars as such, save for a small number of political activists. The author's other publications on the Newars include 'Household organisation among Newar traders', *Contributions to Nepalese Studies*, vol. 12, no. 2 (1985), p. 13-44; 'The *guthi* organisations of Dhulikhel Shresthas', *Kailash*, vol. 12, no. 1-2 (1985), p. 5-62; 'Social mobility and social fragmentation in the Newar caste system'. In: *Change and continuity in the Nepalese culture of the Kathmandu Valley*. Edited by S. Lienhard (forthcoming); and 'Shresthas'. In: *Newar society*. Edited by David N. Gellner, Declan Quigley.

**412 The people of the stones: the Chepangs of central Nepal.**

Navin Rai. Foreword by Khadga Bikram Shah. Kathmandu: Centre for Nepal and Asian Studies, 1985. 125p. bibliog.

Presents an ethnographic study of the Chepangs, one of Hodgson's 'broken tribes', whose name means 'on top of the stones', and who generally believe themselves to have originated from rocks. They currently number around 21,000 and are located in the districts of Makwanpur, Chitawan and Dhading. Their language belongs to the Central Himalayan section of the Bodic division of the Tibeto-Burman languages, and their social structure is characterized by a relatively simple clan system. The research was carried out in 1974.

**413 Tharus of Dang: the people and the social context.**

Drone P. Rajaure. *Kailash*, vol. 8, nos. 3-4 (1981), p. 155-82.

Describes the Tharus' Dangaura sub-group, living in Dang in the far-western *tarai*. The author outlines village organization, including the rôle of the *mahaton* (the traditional priest/administrator who leads the village) and the changes caused to this by the panchayat system of elected village councils. The author also outlines the clan structure and the system whereby specific lineages are bound to use a priest from another specific lineage.

## **Society. Castes and ethnic groups**

### **414 Tharus of Dan: Tharu religion.**

Drone P. Rajaure. *Kailash*, vol. 9, no. 1 (1982), p. 61-96.

Offers an account of tribal religion, including legends, and the spirits associated with specific clans or social structures. The author argues that the Hindu religion is having some effect, but that Westernization may in turn neutralize this and allow a return to traditional practices such as eating pork.

### **415 Tharus of Dang: rites de passage and festivals.**

Drone P. Rajaure. *Kailash*, vol. 9, nos. 2-3 (1982), p. 177-258.

This article gives a detailed account of life cycle ceremonies, such as childbirth, and various kinds of marriage and funeral, and describes the Tharus' five principal annual festivals.

### **416 Cultural patterns and economic change. (Anthropological study of Dhimals of Nepal).**

Rishikeshab Raj Regmi. Delhi: Motilal Banarsidass, 1985. 218p. map. bibliog.

Examines a small ethnic group in the eastern *tarai*, with linguistic and cultural links to the Limbus. The book is mainly based on field-work in Damak Panchayat, Jhapa district in 1981, but the author has visited the area on many separate occasions since 1971. He gives an account of Dhimal social organizations, culture and religion (a mixture of non-Hindu and Hindu elements), with the emphasis on changes since 1971. He describes the growth of political consciousness, and sees them as undergoing a process of Sanskritization (assimilation towards the practices of high-caste Hindus) but with secularizing tendencies affecting the younger Dhimals in parallel with local Brahmans. The situation is thus more complex than the model attested for some other areas of South Asia, where a lower caste is fully committed to becoming more orthodox whilst the higher caste begins to reject orthodoxy. Whilst stressing the group's integration into the 'national mainstream', and their good relations with local Brahmans, the author admits that the Kathmandu government is still perceived as an alien, imposed structure.

### **417 The Raute: notes on a nomadic hunting and gathering tribe of Nepal.**

Johan Reinhard. *Kailash*, vol. 2, no. 4 (1974), p. 233-71. map.

Provides an account of a small, little-studied tribe found scattered in the Karnali and Mahakali basins of western Nepal. The tribe are also found in Kumaon, where they are known as 'Raji'.

### **418 Social mobility in the Newar caste system.**

Colin Rosser. In: *Caste and kin in Nepal, India and Ceylon*. Edited by Christoph von Fürer-Haimendorf. Bombay: Asia Publishing House, 1966, p. 68-139. bibliog.

This influential article describes the way in which the author believes lower caste Newars have increasingly come to adopt a higher caste name (generally Shrestha) when they move from the village into the town. Other anthropologists, for example Quigley in *Introversion and isogamy* (q.v.), have suggested that Rosser exaggerates the extent of this practice.

419 **Le paysan limbu, sa maison et ses champs.** (The Limbu peasant, his house and his fields.)

Philippe Sagant. Paris; The Hague: Mouton with Ecole des Hautes Etudes en Sciences Sociales, 1976. 404p. 4 maps. bibliog. (*Le Monde d'Outre Mer Passé et Présent*, 1st series, 41).

Presents a study of changes in agricultural techniques and in house construction among the Limbus of far-eastern Nepal between the eve of the Gorkha conquest (ca.1770) and the 1970s, focusing principally on the Mewa valley. The author argues that the Limbus' present techniques are of a standard 'hill' pattern-and not ethnically specific (even though they were introduced by the Parbatiyas), and that these changes, in particular the transition from shifting cultivation to sedentary, intensive agriculture, are a response to demographic pressure and have in turn been responsible for the Limbus' conversion from an independent, tribal life-style, to the status of one group within a multi-ethnic, class society. In contrast to this change in social reality, Limbu social customs, such as the use of space within the house, continue to reflect the older life-style. The book incorporates detailed information on Limbu agricultural patterns, including details of crop varieties, cropping patterns and climatic information in the appendices. There are also drawings and plans of structures and implements and a glossary of terms for the latter. The work is illustrated with black-and-white photographs.

420 **Life among the Magars.**

Gary Shepherd. Kathmandu: Sahayogi, 1982. 269p. map.

This account by a linguist describes the twelve years that he spent with his wife and children among the Magars of central Nepal, mostly at the village of Arakhola, twenty miles north-west of Narayanghat. Although the book has been criticized as ethnocentric in places (for example in its explicit disapproval of the tribe's traditional animal sacrifices), it remains worth reading as an informally written narrative of everyday experiences combined with portraits of prominent local people and information on culture, religion and economic and environmental problems. The book is illustrated with colour photographs, and appendices include a list of village deities and an English-Nepali-Magar word list.

421 **The Nyishangba of Manang: geographical perspectives on the rise of a Nepalese trading community.**

Wim van Spengen. *Kailash*, vol. 13, nos. 3-4, p. 131-277. 10 maps. bibliog.

The author discusses the people of Nyishang, a valley in western Manang, behind the Annapurna range, who have been famous as traders since at least the 18th century and have been able to secure privileges from the government to assist their business activity. The article includes details of their trading ventures (legal and illegal) in the 'Golden Triangle' of south-east Asia and in Hong Kong, and also analyses the recent trend of deserting the valley as a home base in favour of Kathmandu or Pokhara.

**Society. Castes and ethnic groups**

**422 The Tharus: a study in cultural dynamics.**

Surendra Kumar Srivastava. Foreword by Dr. Sampurnanand, introduction by Christoph von Fürer-Haimendorf. Agra, India: Agra University Press, 1968. 343p. maps. bibliog.

This standard study of Indian Tharus in the Naini Tal *tarai*, west of the Nepal border, has some relevance to the Nepalese Tharu population as well. Specific treatments of the Nepalese group are provided in three articles by Drone P. Rajaure published in the periodical *Kailash* (q.v.) and by Gisèle Krauskopff's *Mâitres et possédés* (q.v.).

**423 Les Tamangs du Népal – usages et religion. (The Tamangs of Nepal - customs and religion.)**

Brigitte Steinman. Paris: Edition Recherche sur les Civilisations, 1987. 310p. 2 maps. bibliog.

Provides an examination of the Tamang way of life and of Tamang religion, which is seen as completely pervading the former. The study includes consideration of the three classes of Tamang religious practitioner - *lama*, *bompo* and *tamba*, with special emphasis on the third of these, who is a kind of minstrel-priest. The research was largely conducted in 1980 and 1986 at the village of Temal, south-west of Kathmandu, to which the author's attention was first drawn as the home of porters employed by herself and her colleagues. The analytical sections do not make easy reading, but the book remains the closest to a full ethnography of the Tamangs yet produced.

**424 Pyangaon, une communauté newar de la vallée de Kathmandou: la vie matérielle. (A Newar community in the Kathmandu Valley – material life.)**

Gérard Toffin. Paris: Centre Nationale de la Recherche Scientifique, 1977. 220p. maps. bibliog. (Cahiers népalais).

This study of a Newar village fourteen kilometres south-west of Kathmandu concentrates on the techniques employed by the villagers in their everyday life, including chapters on agriculture, food and drink, housing, and weaving and basket-making. The villagers are all members of one sub-caste of the *gyapu* (peasant caste) and the community thus has a social homogeneity which contrasts with the complex hierarchy found in the Valley's towns. Additional information about Newar brewing techniques is given in the author's 'La fabrication de la bière chez deux ethnies tibéto-birmanes du Népal: les Tamang et les Néwar.' (Beer-making among two Tibeto-Burman ethnic groups in Nepal: the Tamang and the Newars.) In: *De la voûte céleste au terroir, du jardin au foyer*. Edited by B. Koechlin, F. Sigaut, J. M. C. Thomas, G. Toffin. Paris: Editions de l'Ecole des Hautes Etudes en Sciences Sociales, 1987.

**425 Mutual assistance in agricultural work among the western Tamangs of Nepal; traditional and new patterns.**

Gérard Toffin. In: *Recent research on Nepal*. Edited by Klaus Seeland. Munich, Cologne, London: Weltforum, 1984. p. 83-96.

This article describes how, in Dhading and Nuwakot districts, the traditional, informal cooperative work gangs have given way, where more intensive agriculture has been introduced, to gangs under a definite leader and with an obligation to stay together through the main agricultural season. Whilst still working in rotation on each others' fields, the new gangs also work overtime for pay on wealthier landowners' fields, using



the proceeds for communal feasting. The author suggests that though the spirit of the original institution has thus been largely preserved, the increased opportunity for richer farmers to use hired labour and the non-inclusion of poor peasants in the gangs presage its eventual breakdown.

426 **Société et religion chez les Newar du Népal.** (Society and religion among the Newars of Nepal.)

Gérald Toffin. Paris: Centre Nationale de la Recherche Scientifique, 1984. 668p. 15 maps. bibliog.

The standard ethnography of the Newars, this massive study is based primarily on material collected during repeated periods of residence between 1970 and 1982 in the village of Pyangaon in the south of the Kathmandu Valley, and the small town of Panauti just beyond the Valley's eastern rim. The author stresses the importance of religion as the organizing principle of Newar society, and emphasizes the contrast between the homogenous village community, which he sees as still bearing marks of tribal origins, and the more elaborate and Indian influenced urban structure. Nevertheless he also highlights other features which characterize Newar society as a whole and distinguish it from the Indian model.

427 **An annotated bibliography of the Thakalis.**

Michael Vinding, Krishna Bahadur Bhattachan. *Contributions to Nepalese Studies*, vol. 12, no. 3 (August 1985), p. 1-24.

This bibliography on the much-studied Thakali community of the upper Kali Gandaki valley lists 140 titles, including both Nepali and western-language publications, and is preceded by a brief history of anthropological field-work in the Thak Khola region.

**Window on Annapurna.**

See item no. 116.

**The mallas of Mustang – historical, religious and oratorical traditions of the Nepalese-Tibetan borderland.**

See item no. 168.

**Approaches to illness in the Nepalese hills.**

See item no. 227.

**Resources and population: a study of the Gurungs of Nepal.**

See item no. 238.

**Le culte du kuldevata au Népal, en particulier chez certains Ksatri de la Vallée de Kathmandu.** (The cult of the *kuldevata* in Nepal, in particular among certain Chhetri of the Kathmandu Valley.)

See item no. 320.

**Rhythms of a Himalayan village.**

See item no. 327.

**Mani Rimdu. Nepal. The Buddhist dance drama of Tengpoche.**

See item no. 328.

## **Society. Women**

**Tamang ritual texts, I: preliminary studies in the folk-religion of an ethnic minority in Nepal.**

*See* item no. 344.

**Buddhist Himalaya.**

*See* item no. 349.

**Himalayan pilgrimage, a study of Tibetan religion by a traveller through western Nepal.**

*See* item no. 350.

**Four lamas of Dolpo.**

*See* item no. 351.

**Indo-Tibetan Buddhism.**

*See* item no. 352.

**Kanphata – Untersuchungen zu Kult, Mythologie und Geschichte Savaitischer Tantriker in Nepal.** (Kanphata – investigations into the cult, mythology and history of Shivaite tantricists in Nepal.)

*See* item no. 354.

**The Himalayan household: Tamang demography and domestic processes.**

*See* item no. 391.

**Two festivals among the Tharus (Holi and Maghe Sankranti).**

*See* item no. 864.

**To plough or not to plough? A Newar dilemma. Taboo and technology in Kathmandu Valley, Nepal.**

*See* item no. 687.

## **Women**

428 **Statistical profile of Nepalese women: a critical review.**

Meena Acharya. Foreword by Madhukar Shumshere Jung Bahadur Rana. Kathmandu: Centre for Economic Documentation and Administration, 1979. 102p. bibliog. (The Status of Women in Nepal, vol. I, part 1).

The 'Status of Women in Nepal' series presents the results of a major research programme conducted by Nepalese and foreign scholars under the direction of Tribhuvan University's Centre for Documentation and Administration (CEDA) and funded by United States Aid for International Development (USAID). Each volume contains a brief outline of the project as a whole. In this introductory volume, the author covers general demographic features, and includes data on marital status, education, political expression, and economic characteristics. The author points out the lower female life expectancy, lower literacy rate and the under-reporting of their contribution to the economy because of the restrictive census definition of economic activity. She calls for a revision of that definition.

**429 The Maithili women of Sirsia.**

Meena Acharya. Foreword by Govind Ram Agrawal. Kathmandu: Centre for Economic Development and Administration, 1981. 241p. maps. bibliog. (The Status of Women in Nepal, vol. II, part 1).

Studies the women of a Maithili village eighteen kilometres from Janakpur, the reputed birthplace of Sita, and the major urban centre of the Nepalese portion of Mithila. The author argues that the Maithili community is highly 'dichotomous', with the women's place seen as ideally restricted to the home. The study includes some material on the painting for which the women of the region are well known.

**430 The rural women of Nepal: an aggregative analysis and summary of 8 village studies.**

Meena Acharya, Lynn Bennett. Foreword by Govind Ram Agrawal. Kathmandu: Centre for Economic Development and Administration, 1981. 432p. map. bibliog. (The Status of Women in Nepal, vol. II, part 9).

This volume summarizes the individual results for each of the villages studied under the aegis of the Status of Women in Nepal project and cited individually in this bibliography. The authors present aggregated data and bring out the contrast between two types of communities: 'non-dichotomous', in which womens' activity in the market economy outside the home is valued, and 'dichotomous', in which entrepreneurship is inconsistent with female respectability and female participation in household decision making is relatively small. Recommendations are made with a view to increasing economic opportunities for women and specifically to establishing a quota system, initially set at ten per cent, for womens' involvement in regular sectoral programmes. Two studies of a Lohrung Rai and a Tamang community by Charlotte Hardiman and Indira Shrestha respectively, remain unpublished.

**431 Women in India and Nepal.**

Edited by Michael Allen, S. N. Mukherjee. Canberra: Australian National University, 1982. 297p. bibliog.

In his introductory essay to this interesting volume, Michael Allen discusses 'The Hindu view of women', concluding that it is an ideology which 'men consistently use to control and dominate women.' In the main body of the work, papers by Allen, John Gray, and Vivienne Kondos (q.v.) are on Nepalese themes.

**432 Girls' pre-puberty rites amongst the Newars of the Kathmandu Valley.**

Michael Allen. In: *Women in India and Nepal*. Edited by Michael Allen, S. N. Mukherjee. Canberra: Australian National University, 1982. p. 179-210.

The author describes the mock marriage ceremony undergone by the girls of the Newar community and among the Nayars of South India, and also the Newar rite of pre-puberty seclusion, involving groups of girls, usually aged six to eight, over a period of eleven days. He sees these as a formal concession to Brahmanical orthodoxy by previously un-Hinduized groups. The theme is also treated in the author's *The cult of kumari - virgin worship in Nepal* (q.v.)

## Society. Women

### 433 **Tradition and change in the legal status of women in Nepal.**

Lynn Bennett, Shilu Singh. Foreword by Madhukar Shumshere J.B. Rana. Kathmandu: Centre for Economic Development and Administration, 1969. 107p. bibliog. (The Status of Women in Nepal, vol. I, part 2).

After a brief account of the ambiguous position of women in Hindu society generally, the author describes provisions made for them in classical Hindu law, and analyses the present legal position, especially with regard to inheritance, marriage and divorce. She argues that, while less discriminatory than the traditional norms, the present laws still do not allow for equal treatment, and that, more importantly, they are in any case widely disregarded throughout rural Nepal. Her recommendations for improvement include the establishment of special family courts. The book concludes with comments on her suggestions from three Nepalese experts, Dhurba Bar Singh Thapa, Kusum Shrestha Shakha and Prayag Raj Sharma.

### 434 **Maiti-ghar: the dual role of high caste women in Nepal.**

Lynn Bennett. In: *Himalayan Anthropology*. Edited by James F. Fisher. Paris, The Hague: Mouton, 1978. p. 121-40.

This article, which summarizes the main argument of the author's *Dangerous wives and sacred sisters* (q.v.), provides an excellent introduction to the traditional position of Brahman and Chetri women in Nepal.

### 435 **Sitting in a cave: an analysis of ritual seclusion at menarche among Brahmins and Chetris in Nepal.**

Lynn Bennett. *Contributions to Nepalese Studies*, vol. 6, no. 1 (1978), p. 31-46.

Bennett discusses the *gupha basne* ('living in a cave') ritual, which involves high caste girls being kept in complete darkness for the first three days of their first menstruation and remaining out of sight of men, particularly their own blood relatives, for a further seven days. The author interprets the custom in terms of the need for a girl's natal family males to distance themselves from her at puberty in readiness for her transfer to another family.

### 436 **The Parbatiya women of Bakundol.**

Lynn Bennett. Foreword by Govind Ram Agrawal. Kathmandu: Centre for Economic Development and Administration, 1981. 290p. 2 maps. bibliog. (The Status of Women in Nepal, vol. II, part 7)

Presents a study of women in a village near Dhulikhel, just beyond the eastern rim of the Kathmandu Valley. The author argues that women may enjoy a degree of informal power within the family, but that this is dependent on their ability to influence men. Their dependence is the result both of the patrilineal inheritance system and of the ideology of female purity. Male domination of household decision-making is also linked with women's exclusion from production for the market, and the author recommends the implementation of projects to involve them more with the world outside.

**437 Dangerous wives and sacred sisters. Social and symbolic roles of high-caste women in Nepal.**

Lynn Bennett. New York: Columbia University, 1983. 354p. map. bibliog.

This book, based on field-work in Bakundol (here described under the synonym of 'Narikot'), analyses the contrast between women's honoured status as sisters in their natal homes and their subordinate rôle as wives and daughters-in-law in their marital homes. She argues that women are seen as a threat to their male affines, because their sexuality carries a potential risk to the purity of the lineage and because the emotional bond with their husband may weaken the latter's solidarity with his consanguineal relatives. By focusing on the problem of women, the author in fact provides a synoptic picture of Hinduism in a Nepalese village as practised by Brahmans and Chetris.

**438 Nepali ama: portrait of a Nepalese hill woman.**

Broughton Coburn. Santa Barbara, California: Ross-Erikson, 1982. 165p. map.

A former Peace Corps school teacher writes about Vishnu Maya Gurung, who was his landlady in Danda village, one day's walk south of Pokhara. Black-and-white photographs are combined with Gurung's reminiscences and with the author's comments. The book gives an accessible account of life in a hill village and a portrait of a strong and individual personality.

**439 Women and development.**

Edited by Durga Ghimire. Kathmandu: Centre for Economic Development and Administration, 1977. 77p.

Presents the proceedings of a seminar held to mark International Women's Year, including papers on different aspects of women's position in Nepal. The book serves as a brief introduction to many of the issues discussed in detail in other works. Particularly noteworthy is the editor's own contribution (p. 1-12) on 'The social status of Nepalese women', which includes basic statistics, explains the inferior esteem in which daughters are held compared to sons, and calls for equal property rights for both sexes.

**440 Chetri women in domestic groups and rituals.**

John Gray. In: *Women in India and Nepal*. Edited by Michael Allen, S. N. Mukherjee. Canberra: Australian National University, 1982, p. 211-41.

Gray examines contradictory views of women as reflected in the rituals of a Chetri lineage in a village in the Kathmandu Valley.

**441 The Himalayan woman.**

Rex L. Jones, Shirley Kurz Jones. Palo Alto, California: Mayfield, 1976. 155p. map. bibliog. (Explorations in World Ethnography).

Based on research undertaken in 1967-69, with follow-up interviews in 1975, this study of women in the Limbu tribe of east Nepal concentrates especially on marriage and divorce. The authors stress the relative autonomy of the women in being able to choose whether and whom to marry, and to terminate a marriage by absconding with another man. This is linked with their economic rôle of bringing money into the household, and

## Society. Women

is contrasted with the stereotype of the passive and dependant South Asian woman. The authors see their data as supporting John Rankine Goody and Stanley Jeyaraja Tambiah's hypothesis that societies where a bride price is paid allow greater equality amongst the sexes than those operating a dowry system (*Bridewealth and dowry*, Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1973). The book is written in a personalized and jargon-free style, well suited to the general reader.

### 442 **The triple goddess and the processual approach to the world: the Parbatiya case.**

Vivienne Kondos. In: *Women in India and Nepal*. Edited by Michael Allen, S. N. Mukherjee. Canberra: Australian National University, 1982. p. 242-86.

The author sees in the Dasai rituals, in notions of female pollution and in the caste order a reflection of the doctrine of three contrasting universal qualities (*gunas*) elaborated in classical Indian Sankhya philosophy.

### 443 **Nepalese women: a vivid account of the status and role of Nepalese women in the total spectrum of life, religious, social, economic, political and legal.**

Indra Majupuria. Lashkar, India: M. Devi, 1987. 2nd ed. 330p. bibliog.

This book is rather a 'hotch-potch', covering topics such as women in Hindu mythology, dress and ornaments, as well as social problems and the effect of post-1951 changes. Although naively written in places, it does convey a great deal of information.

### 444 **Marital patterns and women's economic independence: a study of Kham Magar women.**

Augusta Molnar. *Contributions to Nepalese Studies*, vol. 6, no. 1 (Dec. 1978), p. 15-27.

Presents a study of marriage among the Kham Magars of Rapti and Dhaulagiri zones in west-central Nepal, using data drawn principally from Thabang village panchayat, Rolpa district. Sexual relations before marriage are relatively free in the northerly parts of the region but more restricted further south. Polygamy and divorce are common. Although Kham Magar society is patrilineal, women enjoy considerable economic independence through entrepreneurial activity before and after marriage, and are able to leave their husbands if necessary.

### 445 **The Kham Magar women of Thabang.**

Augusta Molnar. Foreword by Govind Ram Agrawal. Kathmandu: Centre for Economic Development and Administration, 1981. 211p. 2 maps. bibliog. (The Status of Women in Nepal, vol. II, part 2).

In this full-length study of the women of Thabang village in Rapti zone the author shows that women's informal power is quite extensive in this community. She gives an example of women moving overtly into the political arena when a local leader proposed to ban the sale of home-brewed liquor in favour of government distillery liquor for which he held the distribution licence himself. Women who stood to lose economically opposed this successfully, obtaining the backing of panchayat officials. The author points out, however, that such collective action is taken only when their

personal interests are directly threatened and when such action does not conflict with their loyalty to their own households and kin. For a briefer discussion of political rôles see the author's 'Women and politics: case of the Kham Magar women', *American Ethnologist*, vol. 9, no. 3 (August 1982), p. 485-502.

**446 Institutions concerning women in Nepal.**

Bina Pradhan. Foreword by Madhukar Shumshere Jung Bahadur Rana. Kathmandu: Centre for Economic Development and Administration, 1979. 140p. bibliog. (The Status of Women in Nepal, vol. I, part 3).

This volume examines the history, objectives and current functioning of seven women's organizations: Nepali Women's Organisation (NWO), Women's Affairs Training and Extension Centre, Equal Access of Women to Education, Mothers' Club, Women's Services Co-ordination Committee, Socio-Cultural Centre for Women, Business and Progressive Women's Club. The author concludes that there is much ineffectiveness and duplication of effort. The NWO is weakened by ideological differences among its leaders, who are mainly the wives of the heads of the different political parties which existed during the parliamentary system period before 1960. Detailed recommendations for change include giving the organizations a rôle as monitors of the effect on women of the various sectoral development programmes.

**447 The Newar women of Bulu.**

Bina Pradhan. Foreword by Govind Ram Agrawal. Kathmandu: Centre for Economic Development and Administration, 1981. 235p. 2 maps. bibliog. (The Status of Women in Nepal, vol. II, part 6).

Presents a study of the position of women in a village just south of Patan, the second city of the Kathmandu Valley. Although this community comes into the project team's 'dichotomous' category, with women's rôle seen as within the household and men's as that of communication with the outside world, Bulu women do in practice enjoy considerable power. This power is linked by the authors with the lesser emphasis on the ideology of female sexual purity than in Chetri-Brahman society, less pressure to have children immediately after marriage, and a much greater freedom to divorce than in many other Newar communities. However, women are still seen essentially as workers within the joint family, and girls' education as irrelevant.

**448 Foreign aid and women.**

Bina Pradhan, Indira Shrestha. In: *Foreign aid and development – proceedings of seminar*. Kathmandu: Integrated Development Systems, 1983. p. 99-155.

The authors argue that general development programmes have not been targetted towards women, and that acceptance of an inappropriate western distinction between 'housewife' and 'wage earner' has worked against them, while they are also disadvantaged because men traditionally represent the joint family in negotiations with the outside world.. The authors also point out, however, that specific programmes for women are overwhelmingly foreign financed.

## Society. Women

### 449 **The Tharu women of Sukhrwar.**

Drone P. Rajaure. Foreword by Govind Ram Agrawal. Kathmandu: Centre for Economic Development and Administration, 1981. 144p. 4 maps. bibliog. (The Status of Women in Nepal, vol. II, part 3).

This study is written on the standard pattern for volume II of the 'Status of Women' series, with data on time spent in different activities by both sexes, and analysis of decision-making rôles within the household, literacy and education, political participation, marriage patterns and prevalent sexual stereotypes. The village studied is in Dang Deukhuri, in the far western inner *tarai*. The author finds that although Tharu society is strongly patriarchal, the women have slightly more freedom than in high caste Hindu society. She recommends providing opportunities for employment outside the home, and also the buttressing of features of traditional Tharu culture which are advantageous to women but contrary to Hindu orthodoxy, such as the maintenance of ritual status after remarriage. There is also a chapter on Tharu women's art and a glossary of Tharu terms.

### 450 **Integration of women in development – the case of Nepal.**

Pushkar Raj Reejal. Foreword by Ram Govind Agrawal. Kathmandu: Centre for Economic Development and Administration, 1981. 200p. bibliog. (The Status of Women in Nepal, vol. I, part 5).

The author examines the effect on women of the development programmes now being implemented. His perspective is different from that of the other contributors to the Status of Women project and he argues in favour of the current practices in planning, even, to a certain extent, supporting traditional social structure against what he sees as ill-founded complaints from women's organizations inspired by Western feminist ideology. He defends, for example, the lesser inheritance rights of daughters on the grounds that they are also exempt from the traditional obligation to support their elders, and that extension of full rights in this sphere would hasten the break-up of joint-families. He also argues that special women's programmes would divert scarce resources from the main goal of ensuring fuller political and economic participation by Nepalese outside the élite educated on Western lines.

### 451 **The women of Baragaon.**

Sidney Ruth Schuler. Foreword by Govind Ram Agrawal. Kathmandu: Centre for Economic Development and Administration, 1981. 148p. 4 maps. bibliog. (The Status of Women in Nepal, vol. II, part 5).

This volume examines a cluster of settlements (Baragaon means 'twelve villages') in the arid upper section of the Kali Gandaki valley where the population speaks a dialect of Tibetan. The author highlights the differences in marriage patterns from those of most other Nepalese communities. Marriage is generally late, with a high degree of self-choice, and twenty to twenty-five per cent of women and ten per cent of men never marry at all; the status of 'religious celibate' is an acceptable alternative to marriage for a woman, but unmarried women are generally poor. The large number of men who leave the village for work results in a greater decision-making rôle for women, but women's political participation remains extremely low.



**452 The other side of polyandry. Property, stratification and non-marriage in the Nepal Himalayas.**

Sidney Ruth Schuler. Boulder, Colorado: Westview, 1987. 196p. 3 maps. bibliog. (Women in Cross-Cultural Perspective Series.)

Presents a detailed study of marriage patterns in relation to property in the village of Chumile, part of the Baragaon group which was the subject of the author's less detailed book of 1981, *The women of Baragaon* (q.v.). Schuler disputes the view that the Tibetan Buddhist women's position in society is radically better than that of their Hindu counterparts, and argues that despite the availability of non-marriage as an option, it is only through marriage that women have real access to wealth. Another recent study of polyandry, focusing on the Nyinba, an ethnic Tibetan community of Karnali zone, north-west Nepal, is Nancy K. Levine's *The dynamics of polyandry*. (Chicago, London: University of Chicago Press, 1988. 309p. 2 maps. bibliog.)

**453 Annotated bibliography on women in Nepal.**

Indira Shrestha. Foreword by Madhukar Shumshere Jung Bahadur Rana. Kathmandu: Centre for Economic Development and Administration in Nepal, 1979. 69p. (The Status of Women in Nepal, vol. I, part 4).

The 223 entries are arranged under the following headings: women in the economy; women and education; anthropological studies in Nepal; women and the law; women, health and population; and general studies on women in Nepal. The first eight or nine entries in each section are fully annotated, except for the section on the law, a topic fully covered by another title in the series, Lynn Bennett's *Tradition and change in the legal status of women in Nepal* (q.v.).

**454 Integration of women in the main stream of national development. Report of a national seminar held in Kathmandu: June 9-11, 1981.**

Introduced by Vijaya Shrestha. Address by Kamal Rana, Mohan Man Sainju. Bhrikutimandap, Nepal: Women's Services Coordination Committee, 1981. 88p.

After a general survey by Bina Pradhan, summarizing the findings of the 'Status of Women in Nepal' project, other contributors review the position of women in different sectors of national life. Recommendations include the employment of women as agricultural extension workers, asymmetrical subsidies to encourage the education of girls, and the introduction of quotas in some areas of employment.

**Children and women of Nepal. A situation analysis.**

See item no. 262.

**The cult of kumari – virgin worship in Nepal.**

See item no. 317

**Images of the Hindu fierce mother goddess and experiences of mother.**

See item no. 339.

# Politics and Government

**455 The administrative system of Nepal: from tradition to modernity.**

Hem Narayan Agrawal. New Delhi: Vikas, 1976. 397p. 2 maps. bibliog.

Provides an account of the administrative system from 1901 to 1960, covering the second half of the Rana period and the post-Rana era up to King Mahendra's abolition of parliamentary democracy. There is also an introductory survey of the pre-Rana situation, and a note of the main developments up to 1975. The study is based upon Nepalese documents and British records, and covers the subject in great detail, being especially valuable for the Rana administration on which little has been published. The author is an Indian political scientist who taught in Nepal in the 1960s and returned later to undertake research. He takes a strongly pro-Nepalese Congress line in discussing the 1960 royal *coup*.

**456 The dynamics of student politics in Nepal 1961-75.**

Lok Raj Baral. *International Studies* (New Delhi), vol. 14, no. 2 (April-June 1975), p. 303-14.

Writing at a time when student political activity had declined considerably, the author summarizes the rôle of students in opposition to the panchayat system, and suggests that recent relative student quiescence was partly the result of the absence of a central Union, and of the semester system instituted under the New Education plan in the mid-1970s. Much of this material is also incorporated in the author's *Oppositional politics in Nepal* (q.v.)

**457 Graduates' elections – arena for opposition.**

Lok Raj Baral. In: *Nepal – an assertive monarchy*. Edited by S. D. Muni, New Delhi: Chetana, 1977. p. 98-109.

In this paper the author examines the opposition to the panchayat system expressed in elections for the graduates' constituency of the Rastriya panchayat until the 1975 abolition of the constituency through the second amendment to the constitution. Much of the material is also published in his *Oppositional politics in Nepal* (q.v.).

**458 Oppositional politics in Nepal.**

Lok Raj Baral. New Delhi: Vikas, 1977. 256p. bibliog.

Written by the Professor of Politics at Tribhuvan University, this study examines the strains on the panchayat system resulting from its own weaknesses, from continuing radical opposition to it, and also from external factors. The author's attitude is critical but restrained. This is a valuable contribution to the understanding of the Nepalese political system, even though produced before the major changes of 1979-80.

**459 Shifting elite loyalties.**

Lok Raj Baral. In: *Nepal – an assertive monarchy*. Edited by S. D. Muni. New Delhi: Chetana, 1977. p. 69-84. bibliog.

Offers an analysis and criticism of the manner in which many sections of the political élite swung behind King Mahendra after his ousting of the elected Nepali Congress government in 1960. Like the author's other contribution to this collection, it again draws on material from his *Oppositional politics in Nepal* (q.v.).

**460 Nepal's politics of referendum. A study of groups, personalities and trends.**

Lok Raj Baral. New Delhi: Vikas, 1983. 243p. 2 maps. bibliog.

Provides a politically uncommitted account of the 1980 referendum, of the events leading to it, and of its aftermath up to the 1981 general election. The author concentrates particularly on the nature of the various groupings and their tactics, bringing out the tactical errors made by the Nepali Congress leader B. P. Koirala and also the *de facto* convergence of interests between the leftists and the panchayat hard-liners.

**461 Development administration in Nepal.**

Bhim Dev Bhatta. Foreword by D. P. Singh. Kathmandu: Mrs. Indira Bhatta, 1987. 2nd ed. 316p. bibliog.

This study by the head of the Central Department of Public Administration at Tribhuvan University concentrates on the functions and general characteristics of Nepalese administration, rather than on the formal structure, though this is also briefly outlined. Separate chapters include: the concept of development; development administration (including its differentiation from ordinary administration); organization; personnel administration; financial administration; leadership; communication; motivation; training; rural development; and decentralization. A concluding chapter identifies major weaknesses as pervasive corruption, overstaffing, the lack of an effective evaluation system, weak personnel policy and over-centralization, the last being buttressed by a tendency to pass any difficult decision up the line to avoid the risk of being blamed for a mistake.

**462 The patron and the panca: village values and panchayat democracy in Nepal.**

B. E. Borgström. New Delhi: Vikas, 1980. 188p. maps. bibliog.

This study of political life in the village panchayat of Kitini in the south of the Kathmandu Valley is based on field-work undertaken in 1971-73. The author argues that the ban on party politics and the monarchy's position as the only source of real power facilitate the continuance of personalized politics, based on client-patron relationships. An effective challenge by disadvantaged groups is therefore impossible.

## Politics and Government

The author's conclusions are somewhat similar to those of Patricia Caplan in *Priests and cobblers* (q.v.), but, unlike her, he finds no evidence for polarization on caste lines at election time.

### 463 **Formation of the concept of nation state in Nepal.**

Richard Burghart. *Journal of Asian Studies*, vol. 44, no. 1 (Nov. 1984), p. 101-25. bibliog.

Traces the evolution of the Nepalese state's view of itself from the unification of the country up to the creation of the 1962 constitution, and examines how this process was influenced by outside views. The original concepts were of the Kathmandu Valley and its immediate environs as a *desh*, or realm, in which the king exercised his religious authority, and of the remainder of the country merely as the king's *muluk*, or possessions, which came under his tenurial control. This was replaced by the notion of a single, culturally-defined political unit within definite boundaries. The analysis includes interesting observations on the change of the official name of the state from Gorkha to Nepal, and of its language from *khas kura* or *parbatiya* through 'Gorkhali' to 'Nepali.'

### 464 **A study of recent Nepalese politics.**

Bhola Chatterji. Calcutta: World Press, 1967. 190p. map. bibliog.

Written by one of the Indian socialist politicians who assisted the Nepali Congress in preparing its armed insurrection against the Rana régime, this book reveals many hitherto unpublicized details of the 'revolution.' The author also gives a detailed account of political developments up to the early 1960s, taking a strongly pro-Nepali Congress and anti-royalist line.

### 465 **Palace, people and politics: Nepal in perspective.**

Bhola Chatterji. Foreword by Bisheshwar Prasad Koirala. New Delhi: Ankur, 1980. 204p.

Presents a collection of interviews with B. P. Koirala, veteran leader of the Nepali Congress Party, conducted in various Indian cities during the 1970s. Koirala combines personal reminiscences and portraits of prominent Nepalese and foreign leaders with an exposition of his personal political beliefs and of the importance of a reconciliation between the monarchy and democratic forces in Nepal. The book touches on all the major political developments in Nepal from the overthrow of the Rana régime to King Birendra's announcement in 1979 of the referendum on the future political system. Another work on Koirala is Shahsi P. Mishra's *B. P. Koirala. A case study in third world democratic leadership*. Bhubaneswar, Varanasi, India: Konark, 1985. 230p. bibliog.

### 466 **The political development in Nepal 1950-70.**

R. S. Chauhan. New Delhi: Associated Publishing House, 1971. 336p. bibliog.

A straightforward account of the period, this provides an alternative to Bhuvan Lal Joshi and Leo E. Rose's better-known work, *Democratic innovations in Nepal* (q.v.), but does not detail the members of successive governments. The author is strongly critical of King Mahendra's rôle and of the panchayat system, but he concludes that progressive and traditionalist forces in Nepal must cooperate for the national good.

467 **Dimensions of student politics.**

R. S. Chauhan. In: *Nepal: an assertive monarchy*. Edited by S. D. Muni. New Delhi: Chetana, 1977, p. 85-77.

Presents an account of the activities of students in politics up to the early 1970s. The author sees them in the Nepalese context as taking the place of the proscribed political parties, and suggests that students have an integrating rôle in the politics of any country in the early stages of modernization.

468 **Political participation and change in South Asia in the context of Nepal.**

Edited by Murlidhar Dharamdasani. Foreword by Ramakant.

Varanasi, India: Shalimar, 1984. 166p. bibliog.

This collection of essays by Nepalese and foreign scholars covers recent Nepalese politics, in particular the 1980 referendum, the 1981 general election and the fall of the Surya Bahadur Thapa government in 1983. Thomas B. Smith's paper, 'Nepal's political system in transition (1979-81)' (p. 22-33) stresses the overconfidence of the multi-party side, the popularity of King Birendra in the villages, and the panchayat camp's monopoly of access to the official media as explanations for the referendum result. In 'The growing operational strains on the reformed system' (p. 100-30), Shree Krishna Jha sees positive aspects in the way Thapa was ousted, whilst in 'Nepal's political cauldron' (p. 131-40), Brij Mohan Kaushik views King Birendra's action as retrogressive, and also as contradicting the monarchy's own claim that the panchayat system provides stability. The volume also includes: Dharamdasani, 'Political change – an overview' (p. 1-22); B. C. Upreti, 'The politics of referendum' (p. 34-63) (including detailed results); Rishikesh Shaha, 'The third amendment to the constitution' (p. 64-71); Lok Raj Baral, 'The first panchayat general election' (p. 72-86); Harka Gurung, 'The sociology of elections 1959-81' (p. 87-99). Gurung's paper is also published in *Asian Survey*, vol. 22, no. 3 (March 1982), p. 304-14.

469 **The politics of Nepal: persistence and change in an Asian monarchy.**

Margaret Fisher, Leo E. Rose. Ithaca, New York: Cornell University Press, 1970. 198p. maps. bibliog. (South Asian Political Systems)

Provides a general survey of the political system and its development, chiefly covering the period from 1950 to 1967. The work reflects the general perspective of Bhuvan Lal Joshi and Leo E. Rose's *Democratic innovations in Nepal* (q.v.), but without the narrative detail.

470 **Bureaucracy and bureaucrats: some themes drawn from the Nepal experience.**

Merrill R. Goodman. *Asian Survey*, vol. 15, no. 10 (Oct. 1975), p. 892-95.

The author presents the results of an attitude survey of top rank Nepalese administrators. He identifies a more conservative (and purely high caste) group which is prestige-orientated and tends to be satisfied with the government's development efforts, and a more radical, performance-orientated group which is sceptical about the effectiveness of the country's economic management. Goodman has also published an account of reforms to the administrative system in the period 1951-1964: 'Administrative change in Nepal' in *Asian bureaucratic systems emergent from the British imperial tradition*. Edited by Ralph Braibanti. Durham, North Carolina: Duke University Press, 1966. p. 605-42. (Duke University Commonwealth Studies Center Publications, 28).

## Politics and Government

**471 Politics in Nepal: a study of post-Rana political developments and party politics.**

Anirudha Gupta. Bombay: Allied Publishers, 1964. 332p. bibliog. maps.

Based on research carried out in 1960-62, this work gives a chronological account of political developments from the end of the Rana régime to the royal *coup* of 1960, then analyses in detail the composition and activities of the political parties. The author ends with a fiercely critical evaluation of the newly established panchayat system, since he sees the abolition of parliamentary government as a reactionary step in the interests of those threatened by the Nepali Congress reform programme.

**472 Educational reform and student political behaviour in Nepal.**

Louis Hayes. *Asian Survey*, vol. 16, no. 8 (1976), p. 752-69.

The author examines student political behaviour and the effect on it of the New Education Plan introduced in 1973. In the light of the events of 1979, after which much of the Plan was effectively abandoned, he appears to have underestimated the possible effectiveness of student protest. The article also contains some detail on changes to college teaching and examination methods.

**473 Democratic innovations in Nepal: a case study of political acculturation.**

Bhuvan Lal Joshi, Leo E. Rose. Berkeley, California: University of California Press, 1966. 552p. bibliog.

This is a full but very readable account of Nepalese politics from the end of the Rana régime to King Mahendra's dismissal of the elected Congress government and establishment of 'panchayat democracy' in the early 1960s. The book focuses on the relations of parties and personalities to each other and to the palace, and includes full details of each successive ministry. An introductory session reviews opposition political activity during the Rana period, and the concluding chapter ascribes the failure to achieve stability to the persistence of personalised, court-centred politics despite the avowedly ideological nature of party programmes.

**474 Nepal after the revolution of 1950.**

Kaisher Bahadur, K.C. Kathmandu: Sharada Prakashan Griha, 1976-77. 2 vols.

This work covers the period from September 1950 to March 1955 and is very much a personal narrative. The author relates national and international events and his own reaction to them, as well as advancing his views on the blueprint for an ideal society which he believes may be found in the country's religious traditions.

**475 Intellectual foundations of monarchy.**

P. C. Mathur. In: *Nepal – an assertive monarchy*. Edited by S. D. Muni. New Delhi: Chetana, 1977. p. 42-68. bibliog.

Offers a trenchant criticism of the ideological arguments used in support of 'panchayat democracy'. The author argues that these are merely rationalizations obscuring the basic reality of the exertion of royal power in the face of the weakness of the political parties.

**476 Understanding a political system.**

Indra Deo Mishra. Varanasi, India: Vijayshree Enterprises, 1985.  
122p. bibliog.

An account of the 'Back to the Village National Campaign' (BVNC) from its launching in 1967, through its incorporation in the second amendment to the constitution (1975), to its final abolition in the run-up to the 1980 referendum. The author uses this case history in an attempt to present a general theory of political participation on behavioural lines. He argues that while the panchayat system as a whole, with its non-party nature, kept participation at a very low level, the BVNC failed to bridge the gap because of its excessive concentration upon elections and the selection of 'consensus candidates', which proved divisive among *panchas*. An appendix of key documents is included.

**477 Systemic strains and political development in Nepal.**

Indra Deo Mishra. Varanasi, India: Vijayashree Enterprises, 1985.  
311p. bibliog.

This study traces the development of the legislature in Nepal from the first experiments in the last years of the Rana régime. There is a detailed account of the functioning of the Rastriya Panchayat. The panchayat system is seen as operating under endemic stress. Although the book is not very well written, it is a reasonable presentation of the basic facts. Key documents are reproduced in an appendix.

**478 Nepal: an assertive monarchy.**

S. D. Muni. New Delhi: Chetana, 1977. 252p. bibliog.

Presents a collection of fourteen essays on domestic and foreign policy by Indian and Nepalese scholars and one American. Although the volume is avowedly intended 'as a tribute to King Mahendra and Indo-Nepal friendship', several papers are very critical of official policies. Areas covered include foreign relations, and domestic politics and administration.

**479 The Nepali Congress since its inception: a critical assessment.**

Parmanand. Delhi: B.R. Publishing, 1982. 452p. bibliog.

This history of the party up to King Birendra's 1979 announcement of a referendum on the constitution, is most valuable for its account of the post-1962 period. The book is based mainly on interviews with party leaders and is generally sympathetic in tone, but the author criticizes the leaders for not choosing to stay and fight within the panchayat system after 1960, and also for their reliance in the referendum campaign on the personal standing of B. P. Koirala rather than on building up their strength at grass roots level.

**480 Nepalese Journal of Political Science.**

Kathmandu: Political Science Instruction Committee. 1978- . semi-annual.

Articles in this journal cover political issues in the South Asian region and general theoretical questions. The journal is obtainable from: Political Science Instruction Committee, Kirtipur Campus, Tribhuvan University. Kathmandu.

## Politics and Government

### 481 **Public administration and nation building in Nepal.**

Madhab Prasad Poudyal. Foreword by R. B. Jain. Delhi: NBO Publishers' Distributors, 1984. 127p. bibliog.

The author reviews the literature on the general theory of state and nation building, gives a brief history of administration in Nepal and examines 'administrative barriers to nation-building' including problems of 'red-tapeism' and corruption. The author presents the result of a survey of opinions on these issues taken among field-level officers in Lalitpur and Kabhrepalanchok districts. He characterizes the Nepalese bureaucracy as transitional, combining characteristics both of a patrimonial or feudal system and of a fully bureaucratic one based on formal rules and procedures. In the conclusion, corruption is identified as the major problem, and the low salaries of government officials as a root factor behind this.

### 482 **Nepali politics: retrospect and prospect.**

Rishikesh Shaha. Foreword by Leo E. Rose. New Delhi: Oxford University Press, 1978. 2nd ed. 291p. bibliog.

Provides a very readable account of internal politics and international relations since the end of the Rana régime up to 1976. The author served as Nepalese finance and foreign minister for short periods in the early 1960s and was one of the architects of the 1962 panchayat constitution. However, he subsequently broke with King Mahendra and has been active in opposition politics for the last twenty years. As in his other writings, he argues strongly that a return to multi-party democracy is indispensable to the mobilization of the people for development, and he also opposes the extreme anti-Indianism of some Nepalese politicians.

### 483 **Essays in the practice of government in Nepal.**

Rishikesh Shaha. New Delhi: Manohar, 1982. 258p. 2 maps. bibliog.

This collection of historical and political essays serves partly to update the author's 1978 volume in the light of the important changes of 1979-81. Particularly interesting are: 'Patrimonial élites of Nepal' which attempts to identify the groups and individuals with the most influence on the king; the analyses of the 1980 referendum and the 1981 general election; and the evaluation of Nepal's attempt to be accepted by other countries as a 'zone of peace'. The essay on the 19th-century Maharaja Jang Bahadur Rana, is a useful synthesis of published research.

### 484 **The 1986 elections in Nepal: implications for the future.**

Rishikesh Shaha. *International Studies*, vol. 26, no. 1 (1989), p. 1-14.

This article includes a useful analysis of the composition of the present Rastriya Panchayat, including members caste and political affiliation. There are no dramatic changes, but the advance of the 'middle castes' of the *tarai*, which the author highlighted in his discussion of the 1981 results, seems to have been reversed.

### 485 **Government and politics of Nepal.**

Parmatma Sharan. Delhi: Metropolitan, 1983. 149p. bibliog.

This is primarily an account of the operation of the 1962 constitution before the third amendment of 1980, which introduced direct elections to the legislature. However, the subsequent changes are outlined towards the end of the book. The author is pessimistic about the prospects for real democratization under the reformed system.



**486 Technical assistance and the growth of administrative capability.**

Bishnu K. Shrestha. In: *Foreign aid and development – proceedings of a seminar*. Kathmandu: Integrated Development Systems, 1983. p. 219-49.

Discusses the pros and cons of the employment of foreign experts, with the balance on the negative side. The author suggests that many aid personnel are not of high quality, and therefore their financial privileges are resented by Nepalese colleagues, whilst those who are capable tend to end by taking over management tasks which Nepalese themselves should perform. He argues that in general the Nepalese civil service is potentially capable, but ill-motivated, and recommends this be tackled by a results-orientated assessment system of promotion assessment rather than one based on personal favouritism. The article advocates saving on foreign exchange by bringing in foreigners to give training in Nepal rather than sending Nepalese abroad, and recommends the increased use of local agencies to monitor aid projects on donors' behalf.

**487 Nepalese administration: an image.**

Tulsi Narayan Shrestha. Foreword by Mangal Krishna Shrestha.  
Kathmandu: Sajha, 1981. 455p. map. bibliog.

Presents a detailed examination of the system and of problems arising in the following specific areas: law and order; development administration; decentralization (portrayed as remaining largely a dead letter); personnel administration; and financial administration (where the need for programme budgeting is emphasized). On the problem of corruption, the author recommends greater political direction from the top and an increase in the pay of the ordinary civil servant. There are summary sections at the end of each chapter, and an overall summary at the end of the book. Appendices include statistics on numbers and location of staff in development ministries.

**488 District administration in Nepal: issues and ideas.**

Edited by Tulsi Narayan Shrestha. Lalitpur, Nepal: Nepal Administrative Staff College, 1985. 294p.

This collection of twenty-eight papers by many different authors, covers every aspect of district administration, including the maintenance of law and order, land reform, development administration, the policy of decentralization, and the training of personnel. Many of the contributions are case studies of Kabhrepalanchok district which lies immediately to the east of the Kathmandu Valley.

**489 Nepal: progress and problems, 1972-80.**

Yugeshwar Prasad Verma. Lalitpur, Nepal: Pratibha Verma, 1981.  
198p. bibliog.

Presents a collection of essays on various aspects of the economic and political scene during the period, taking a moderate pro-panchayat view. Of particular note are a biographical chapter on King Birendra ('The making of a king', p. 13-28) and 'The flux of education' (p. 130-56), which chronicles the virtual demise of the reforms introduced under the National Education System Plan.

## **Politics and Government**

### **490 Nepal: political evolution in a Hindu monarchy.**

John Whelpton. *Groniek*, no. 92 (1985), p. 106-19. bibliog.

Presents a survey of political developments in Nepal from the overthrow of the Rana régime to the ousting of premier Surya Bahadur Thapa in 1983. The author concludes that the present king is likely to continue liberalization of the panchayat system in the direction of conventional parliamentary democracy.

### **Nepal: profile of a Himalayan kingdom.**

See item no. 20.

### **Modern Nepal: a political history 1769-1955.**

See item no. 215.

### **Administration and politics in a Nepalese town.**

See item no. 360.

### **Priests and cobblers.**

See item no. 361.

### **Regionalism and national unity in Nepal.**

See item no. 371.

### **The political economy of Nepalese land reform: some aspects.**

See item no. 678.

### **Nepal: feudalism and rural formation.**

See item no. 689.

### **The politics of development: transportation policy in Nepal.**

See item no. 721.

# Law and Constitution

**491 Nepal: a study in constitutional change.**

Hem Narayan Agrawal. New Delhi: Oxford University Press, IBH, 1980. 218p. bibliog.

The Indian author, who served as an advisor to the Nepal government in the 1960s, traces developments from the last years of the Rana régime to the 1970s. The work consists largely of a constitution of 1948 and of the present constitution, promulgated in 1962. He writes from a strongly anti-panchayat perspective. Appendices give the full texts of the 1948 constitution, and of that of 1962, as amended up to 1975. The book was completed after King Birendra's announcement in 1979 of a referendum on the constitution, but before the referendum was taken and the amendment of 1980 was introduced.

**492 Nepal: a pattern of human rights violations.**

London: Amnesty International, 1987. 48p. map.

This report sets out the general situation of human rights in Nepal, with the aid of numerous case histories, frequently connected with opposition campaigns against the panchayat system. It calls for: an amendment of the provisions for detention without trial under the Public Security Act and other legislation; the repeal of the legal prohibition on Hindu conversion to another religion; the abolition of the death penalty; and an end to the torture of prisoners and to inhumane conditions in many prisons.

**493 Readings in the legal system of Nepal.**

Edited by Surya P. S. Dhungel, Pushkar M. Bajracharya, Bhuban B. Bajracharya. Delhi: LAWS Publications, 1986. 2nd ed. 166p. bibliog.

This compilation of papers by Nepalese and Indian experts surveys all aspects of Nepal's legal system, including constitutional, family, company and international law as well as criminal justice.

## **Law and Constitution**

### **494 The Nepalese law of succession: a contribution to the study of the Nepalese codes.**

Jean Fezas. In: *Recent research on Nepal*. Edited by Klaus Seeland. Munich, Cologne, London: Weltforum, 1984. p. 159-86.

In a work aimed primarily at the specialist, Fezas examines the provisions in the legal code of 1854 in relation to the earlier situation and to the main Hindu legal traditions of *mitaksara* and *dayabhaga*. Appendices give texts of passages from the code and from other sources cited.

### **495 The law of debt in Nepal: private rights and state rights in a Hindu kingdom.**

Marc Gaborieau. In: *Asian highland societies in anthropological perspective*. Edited by Christoph von Fürer-Haimendorff. New Delhi: Sterling, 1981. p. 131-56.

This article traces the evolution of legal provisions governing debt from the legal code of 1854 to that of 1963. The law was formerly based firmly on the Hindu *dharmashastras* (classical ethical and legal treatises) but has now been effectively secularized.

### **496 The king and his constitution.**

Narendra Goyal. Kathmandu: Nepal Trading Corporation, 1959. 140p.

This study gives the text of the constitution of 1959 with a commentary including identification of Indian, US and British parallels. A supplement gives comparative details of the monarchical constitutions of Afghanistan, Denmark, Iran, Jordan, Netherlands, Saudi Arabia and Sweden. The author speculates on the likely practical interpretation of the constitution, suggesting the likelihood of the Nepalese monarchy evolving into a more limited institution on British lines.

### **497 Nepal's experiments in constitutionalism (1948-81).**

Shree Krishna Jha. Varanasi: BHU Department of Political Science, 1982. p.55. (Centre for the Study of Nepal Occasional Papers Series, 5)

This pamphlet reviews the constitutional reforms enacted in Nepal from Maharaja Padma Shamsher's proposals of 1948, through to the general amendment to the present constitution in 1980 and the general election under it the following year. As a number of other commentators have done, the author highlights the resemblances between Padma's plans and the 1962 panchayat constitution.

### **498 The constitution of Nepal. English translation. (As amended by the first, second and third amendments of the Constitution).**

Kathmandu: Ministry of Law and Justice, 1981. 76p.

This is the official translation of the constitution as now in force, including the changes made in the aftermath of the disturbances of 1979 and the 1980 referendum.

**499 Nepal Law Review.**

Kathmandu: Institute of Law, Tribhuvan University. 1976- . quarterly.

This journal contains Nepali and English language articles, both on specific Nepalese issues and on wider questions of jurisprudence. It is obtainable from Account Section, Nepal Law Campus, Exhibition Road, Kathmandu.

**500 Nepal Recorder.**

Kathmandu: Nepal Press Digest, 1977-. irregular.

This publication includes translations of laws and regulations promulgated in Nepali in the government's official gazette, *Nepal Rajpatra*. There is an annual index. The *Recorder* is available from the publisher, Regmiville, Lazimpat, Kathmandu. Consolidated texts of laws and regulations are published by Regmi Research, at the address above and issued irregularly, in *Nepal Miscellaneous Series*.

**501 Development of political institutions in Nepal since 1951.**

Prachanda Pradhan. In: *Nepal in perspective*. Edited by Pashupati Shumshere Jung Bahadur Rana, Kamal Prakash Malla. Kathmandu: Centre for Economic Development and Administration, 1973. p. 139-65.

Presents a non-partisan account of constitutional development and the struggle between the royal model of 'panchayat democracy' and the partisans of the parliamentary system. The article concludes with criticism of the failure to make a reality of grass roots participation in panchayat institutions.

**502 Law bibliography.**

Sheshraj Shiwakothi. Preface by Jagdish Chandra Regmi.  
Kathmandu: The Author, 1985. 56p.

Comprises 348 titles, many of them in Nepali, covering both the present situation and the history of the legal system. The bibliography includes sections on the legal status of women, the press, constitutional development, the law of evidence, and the law code (*muluki ain*).

**Nèpal et ses populations.** (Nepal and its peoples.)

See item no. 7.

**Miscellaneous essays relating to Indian subjects.**

See item no.12.

**Crime and punishment in Nepal: an historical perspective.**

See item no. 174.

**Law and population in Nepal in Nepal: some strategy for action.**

See item no. 237.

**The caste hierarchy and the state – a study of the Muluki Ain of 1854.**

See item no. 373.

**Caste, social mobility and sanskritization: a study of Nepal's old legal code.**

See item no. 384.

## **Law and Constitution**

**Tradition and change in the legal status of women in Nepal.**

*See* item no. 433.

**Nepal's politics and referendum.**

*See* item no. 460.

**Essays in the practice of government in Nepal.**

*See* item no. 483.

# Extraterritorial Populations

## 503 **Nepalis in Tibet.**

Dor Bahadur Bista. In: *Himalayan anthropology: the Indo-Tibetan interface*. Edited by James T. Fisher. Paris; The Hague: Mouton, 1978. p. 187-204. bibliog.

Nepal's leading anthropologist, who served as Nepalese consul in Lhasa in the mid-1970s, gives an account of the small Nepalese community in Tibet. Consisting mostly of the descendants of Newar traders and Tibetan women, they have now almost all been assimilated into Tibetan society or returned to Nepal, as a result of a 1962 agreement allowing them to opt for citizenship of either country. Bista gives a number of case studies of individuals and families, prefaced by an historical survey of relations between the countries, which, remarkably, omits to mention Nepal's invasions of Tibet in the late-18th century. The article is also published in *Contributions to Nepalese Studies*, vol. 8, no. 1 (Dec. 1980), p. 1-20.

## 504 **Nepali emigrants in India.**

Dilli R. Dahal, Chaitanya Mishra. Kathmandu: Centre for Nepal and Asian Studies, 1987. 19p. (CNAS Forum – Current Issues Series, 4).

Two CNAS researchers present the results of a survey of 306 Nepalese emigrants in five areas of India – Delhi, Uttar Pradesh, Bihar, West Bengal and Assam. They argue that although emigration to the plains does act currently as an economic safety valve, the poor conditions in which the majority of the migrants have to live, and the possible threat to Nepalese self-reliance, make it unacceptable as a long-term solution to the problems of the hill areas. The paper includes reference to the expulsion of 'illegal' Nepalese migrants from Meghalaya, and a discussion of the differing picture of the total volume of migration given by Indian and Nepalese censuses (the 1971 Indian census puts the total 'Nepalese origin' population (i.e. including naturalized immigrants) at 1,286,824.) The pamphlet also contains a summary of points made in discussion of the paper at a CNAS seminar.

## **Extraterritorial Populations**

### **505 Highlanders on the move – a quest for survival.**

Kanak Mani Dixit. *Himal*, vol. 1, no. 1 (July 1988), p. 3-5.

Offers a brief but useful overview of the problems faced by migrants from the Nepalese and Indian Himalaya to the Indian plains, incorporating some of the findings of the CENAS research project described by Dilli R. Dahal and Chaitanya Mishra in *Nepali emigrants in India* (q.v.).

### **506 A Nepalese hill village and Indian employment.**

John Hitchcock. *Asian Survey*, vol. 1, no. 9 (Dec. 1961), p. 15-20.

The author analyses the importance of income from Indian employment for the households in the village south of Pokhara which is also the subject of his *A mountain village in Nepal* (q.v.). He finds that it is an important factor for families at all economic levels, but especially for the worst-off, since the existence, or prospect of such income may be the only reason why a creditor delays foreclosing on a loan and taking over the family's land. Although some prestige attaches to military employment, economic need is just as much the major motivation for seeking this type of work as it is for civilian employment in India.

### **507 A plural society in Sikkim: a study of the interrelations of Lepchas, Bhotias and Nepalis.**

Chie Nakane. In: *Caste and kin in Nepal, India and Ceylon*. Edited by Christoph von Furer-Haimendorf. Bombay: Asia Publishing House, p. 216-63.

Drawing mainly on research in the village of Pabyuk, five miles south of the capital, Gangtok, the author argues that Nepalese immigrants' greater productivity and lower consumption as compared with the other main Sikkimese communities reflects the influence of Hindu as opposed to Buddhist ideology. Her conclusion is disputed by Trevor Ling in 'Max Weber and the relation of religions to social change' (q.v.).

### **508 Socio-economic characteristics of Nepali immigrants in Gorakhpur.**

K. N. Singh, N. Lal. In: *Nepal Himalaya: geoecological perspectives*. Edited by S. C. Joshi. Naini Tal. India: Himalayan Research Group, 1986, p. 239-44.

Presents a survey of Nepalese living in the railway station area of Gorakhpur, a town in Uttar Pradesh, which is the nearest large Indian urban centre to the Nepal border. The authors paint a gloomy picture with seventy-two per cent living beneath the poverty line (300 Rupees per month when the survey was conducted in autumn 1985). Seventy-four per cent of the immigrants were working as hotel servants. The six per cent working as rickshaw drivers were somewhat better off than these.

### **509 Dynamics of a hill society (the Nepalis in Darjeeling and Sikkim Himalayas).**

Tanka B. Subba. Foreword by N. C. Choudhury. Delhi: Mittal, 1989. 157p. maps. bibliog.

The author, who is himself an ethnic Nepalese from the region, analyses the social structure and economic position of the Nepalese in the Darjeeling area of West Bengal and in Sikkim. Nepalese have long formed the majority in both areas, because of large-scale immigration, accelerated by British encouragement from the mid-19th until the



early 20th century. Data are drawn from field-work in five villages, and from the author's personal experience. There is little reference to political conflict between the Nepalese and other groups. For an account of the current agitation for Darjeeling to be separated from Bengal, see Krishna P. Khanal's 'The Gorkha separatism: implications for Nepal-India relations', *Strategic Studies Series*, no. 8-10 (summer-winter 1986), p. 37-67. Nirmalananda Sengupta's *State government and politics: Sikkim* (New Delhi: Sterling, 1985) gives a fairly neutral account of the Nepalese agitation against the indigenous Lepcha monarchy in Sikkim for 'one man one vote', which led to the Indian takeover of the administration in 1973 and full merger with India in 1975. Developments in Sikkim up to 1973 are treated from the Nepalese viewpoint in Lal Bahadur Basnet's *Sikkim – a short political history* (New Delhi: S. Chand, 1974), whilst the Lepcha traditionalists are strongly defended by Sunanda K. Datta-Ray in *Smash and grab – annexation of Sikkim* (New Delhi: Vikas, 1984).

**Max Weber and the relations of religion to social change: some considerations from Nepal and Sikkim.**

See item no. 341.

# The Brigade of Gurkhas

## 510 **Gurkha – the legendary soldier.**

Robin Adshead. Foreword by A. G. Patterson, commentary by John P. Cross. Singapore: Donald Moore for Asia Pacific Press, 1970. 187p.

Presents a selection of black-and-white photographs by Adshead, a few illustrating life in the hills and the remainder showing aspects of peacetime life in the Brigade. A short accompanying text by John Cross provides the background. Both men are Gurkha officers and the tone is enthusiastic throughout. The book is useful for giving the general feel of life in a Gurkha regiment, but misleading in stating in one caption that 'most Gurkha men serve at one time or another in the British or Indian army.'

## 511 **Gurkhas.**

David Bolt. London: Weidenfeld & Nicolson, 1967. 128p. map. bibliog.

After a general account of the country and its ethnic groups and a description of the historical background to Gurkha recruitment into the British army, this work gives a straightforward military history of the Brigade.

## 512 **Gurkha: the illustrated history of an élite fighting force.**

Christopher Chant. Poole, England: Blandford, 1985. 160p.

Provides a general history of the brigade, concentrating principally on military narrative. Illustrations feature a number of historic photographs, including ones of Maharaja Jang Bahadur Rana, the founder of the Rana régime. Appendices give details of Gurkha V.C.s and of changes in the titles of Gurkha regiments.

## 513 **In Gurkha company. The British Army Gurkhas, 1948 to the present.**

John P. Cross. London: Arms & Armour, 1986. 203p. 6 maps. bibliog.

This is an enthusiastic history of the Brigade from 1948, when the regiments allocated to Britain at Indian independence were fully integrated within the British Army. The author, who was himself a Gurkha officer from the end of the Second World War until 1982, discusses in some detail the definitions of 'mercenary' adopted by the 1949

Geneva Convention and in a United Nations committee's draft convention of 1982, in order to show that Gurkhas in British service do not fall within these definitions. The former excludes anyone who is 'a member of the Armed Forces of a party to the conflict', whilst the 1982 draft states that a mercenary '1. is not a member of the regular forces of a country, 2. is paid more than the regular forces of that country, 3. cannot be a person bound by treaties between two countries.' The book includes a good select bibliography. Readers needing a full bibliography of the Brigade should consult the one compiled by General Sir John Chapple and held and regularly updated at the Gurkha Museum, Queen Elizabeth's Barracks, Church Cookham, Hampshire GU13 0BJ, England.

### 514 **The Gurkhas: as I see it.**

John P. Cross. *Strategic Studies*, no. 6/7 (winter/spring 1985/6), p. 162-76.

This article was written in response to articles by Mikesell and Shrestha and by Chaitanya Mishra (q.v.), and published in *Strategic Studies* with them under the section title 'Point-Counter-Point'. The author now lives mostly in Nepal with an adopted family. Like his opponents, he takes a highly committed approach to the subject.

### 515 **The Gurkhas.**

Byron Farwell. London: Allen Lane; Harmondsworth, England: Penguin, 1984. 317p.

Despite some errors and questionable judgements, this book provides a straightforward and readable account of the Brigade from its beginning in 1815 to the Falklands War. Although mostly concerned with military history, it also considers institutional problems such as the division of the Brigade between Britain and independent India in 1947, and covers festivals and relationships between the Gurkhas and the British officer corps. The book is enthusiastic about its subject without losing objectivity.

### 516 **The Kukri.**

Hong Kong: Brigade of Gurkhas, 1949- . annual.

This is the official journal of the Brigade of Gurkhas, carrying newsletters from individual regiments, as well as reminiscences and some material from Nepal.

### 517 **Bugles and a tiger: a volume of autobiography.**

John Masters. New York: Viking, 1956. 312p. 12 maps.

The author, best known for his historical novels set in British India, describes his experiences as a junior officer in a Gurkha regiment in India before the Second World War. His account provides an interesting contrast to John Morris' *Hired to kill* (q.v.), since although both men were gifted writers and both served on the north-west frontier, Master's attitudes were more representative of British Gurkha officers generally. There is an interesting account of what seemed to be a wilful refusal by the Gurkhas to understand Nepali as spoken by the author until a sudden, and inexplicable decision that he was 'accepted.' The tiger of the title was shot by the author after it had badly mauled one of his men.

### 518 **The road past Mandalay: a personal narrative.**

John Masters. London: Michael Joseph, 1961. 344p.

This second volume of autobiography deals with the period 1939-45. Although the author continued to serve in the same Gurkha regiment, the emphasis in this second volume is more on his relations with other Europeans.

## **The Brigade of Gurkhas**

**519 The Gurkhas: a case study of the problems of mercenary recruitment in Barpak, Nepal.**

Stephen L. Mikesel, Jamuna Shrestha. *Strategic Studies*, no. 6/7 (winter-spring 1985/6), p. 146-54.

Presents a study of a village in west-central Nepal which has a long tradition of supplying recruits to the British Army. The authors argue that financial benefits to individuals are more than outweighed by damage to the community from the loss of so many able-bodied young men, and that the burden on wives is increased because they have to take over their husbands' farm and household management tasks.

**520 The Gurkhas: its genesis.**

Chaitanya Mishra. *Strategic Studies*, no. 6/7 (winter/spring 1985/6), p.155-61.

In this rather vitriolic article, Mishra alleges that glorification of the Gurkhas is a cover for the exploitation of poor hillsmen in the defence of capitalism. The author does, however, concede that service with the Brigade is the most attractive of the restricted alternatives open to the hillman at the moment.

**521 Hired to kill. Some chapters of autobiography.**

John Morris. London: Rupert Hart-Davis, 1960. 272p. 3 maps.

The author, who later became Controller of the BBC Third Programme, describes his service in the Gurkhas from the First World War until his career was interrupted by tuberculosis in 1930. He writes from an interesting perspective, both because of his sense of alienation from the military culture around him and because of his exceptionally thorough command of Nepali, gained by a year's 'total immersion' as the only British Officer at a recruitment and pension post in Darbhanga, Northern India. Morris comments on the customs and manners of both British and Gurkhas at the regimental depot in the Uttar Pradesh hills and gives vivid descriptions of warfare on the north-west frontier, of the 1922 Everest expedition (the mountain was approached through Tibet but Morris subsequently explored part of the Arun valley within the Nepal border), and of a 1927 expedition into the Pamirs and Chinese Turkestan. There is also a frank account of his discovery of his own homosexuality with his Gurkha orderly.

**522 Flash of the khukri. History of the 3rd Gorkha Rifles (1947-1980).**

C. L. Proudfoot. New Delhi: Vision, 1984. 222p. maps.

The 3rd Gorkha Rifles were one of the regiments allocated to India when the Gurkha units of the pre-independence Indian army were divided between India and Britain in 1947. The history includes accounts of campaigns against Pakistan in 1948, 1965 and 1971, and against the Chinese in 1962.

**523 The British and the brave. A history of the Gurkha recruitment in the British Indian army.**

Kamal Raj Singh Rathaur. Foreword by Hemanta Shumshere Rana. Jaipur, India: Nirala, 1987. 110p. bibliog. (Nirala History Series, 1).

Written by a scholar who is now head of Nepal's military campus, this study provides a satisfactory summary of the main facts, but is not strong analytically and adds little that is new.

**524 Britain's Brigade of Gurkhas.**

E. D. Smith. Introduction by Sir Brian Horrocks. London: Leo Cooper, 1973. 176p. (Famous Regiments).

This work by a former senior Gurkha officer is concerned primarily with the four regiments that were allocated to Britain when the Brigade was split up in 1947: the 2nd King Edward VII's Own; the 6th Queen Elizabeth II's Own; the 7th Duke of Edinburgh's Own; and the 10th Princess Mary's Own. There is also some basic information on the Brigade as a whole and on its origins. A more recent work by the author is *Johnny Gurkha - 'Friends in the hills'* (London: Leo Cooper in association with Secker & Warburg, 1985). For greater detail on individual units, the respective regimental histories should be consulted.

**525 Gurkhas.**

Sandro Tucci. Foreword by HRH the Prince of Wales, introduction by John P. Cross. London: Hamish Hamilton, 1985. 160p.

This collection of colour photographs by a Hong Kong-based Italian professional photographer, covers life in the hills and in the Brigade. In a lengthy introduction, John Cross sketches the history of the Brigade and describes the recruiting procedure and the atmosphere of a Gurkha regiment.

**526 While memory serves.**

Francis Toker. London: Cassell, 1950. 668p. maps.

Presents the memoirs of the officer who headed the Indian Army's Eastern command during the last two years of British rule. In addition to scattered references to the Gurkhas in the main body of the book, an appendix (p. 624-40) gives an account of the division of the Brigade between Britain and independent India. Toker argues that the entire force should have been retained in British service, and that later disaffection in some units allocated to Britain resulted from the sense of betrayal felt by Gurkhas who had previously been promised they would never have to serve under Indian officers.

**Nepal and the Gurkhas.**

See item no. 17.

**Unknown Nepal.**

See item no. 26.

**Nepal: a small nation in the vortex of international conflicts.**

Prem R. Uprety

See item no. 222.

**A new rural elite in west central Nepal.**

See item no. 400.

**Neon lights and Vedic caves: European influences on the Nepali writer.**

See item no. 548.

**Parbate.**

See item no. 756.

# Foreign Relations

**527 Fundamentals of Nepalese foreign policy.**

Edited by Govind R. Agrawal, Rajeshwar Acharya, Pustun Pradhan.  
Kathmandu: Centre for Economic Development and Administration,  
1985. 301p. bibliog.

Comprises a collection of papers by Nepalese academics, originally presented at three seminars organised by CEDA in the early 1980s, together with opening statements from members of the government. The themes are respectively: Nepal – a zone of peace; Nepal and non-alignment; and Nepal and South Asian regional cooperation. The view given is very much an establishment one, and some contributors do not resist the temptation to present the zone of peace (ZOP) proposal in moralizing and universalistic terms rather than simply as a device to increase Nepal's own security and freedom of manoeuvre. The volume nevertheless contains some useful analysis, including in particular the attempts by T. B. Singh and K. B. Singh to differentiate between the ZOP proposal and a claim to Swiss-style neutrality; and the discussions of non-alignment and regional cooperation by Yadunath Khanal and Lok Raj Baral.

**528 Foreign aid and economic development: Nepal's experience with Chinese aid.**

Bhuchandra Prasad Raj Baidya. Bhubaneswar, India: Konark, 1984.  
404p. map. bibliog.

Offers an examination and assessment of the effectiveness of Chinese aid to Nepal from 1955, when diplomatic relations were established, to 1980, during which time China supplied ten per cent of total foreign aid (against India's twenty-six per cent and the US's sixteen per cent). The aid programme reflected the common interest of both governments in reducing Nepal's dependence on India and eventually re-establishing substantial trade between Nepal and Tibet. The author recommends that Chinese aid, hitherto largely confined to the sectors of transport, industry and power, should in future be sought also for agriculture and for feeder road construction, and that the 'turnkey' element (i.e. the use of large numbers of expatriate personnel) should be reduced. The study contains an analysis of China-Nepal trade, since local costs for aid

projects were largely met by the sale of Chinese goods in Nepal. Appendices give figures for total foreign aid receipts from each donor for 1951/2 to 1979/80.

**529 The politics of balanced independence – Nepal and SAARC.**

Lok Raj Baral. Kathmandu: Ratna Pustak Bhandar, 1988. 140p.  
bibliog.

The author, Professor of Politics at Tribhuvan University, examines the prospects of the South Asian Association for Regional Cooperation (SAARC) in the light of Nepal's traditional concern to maintain a balance between India and China and to protect its own interests as a small power by participating in multilateral diplomacy. He argues that the scope for economic cooperation is restricted by Nepal's need to ensure she is not placed at a disadvantage relative to the region's more developed economies. Texts of SAARC agreements and press communiqués, with indexes to relevant articles in the *Gorkhapatra* (q.v.) and *The Rising Nepal* (q.v.), can be found in the *SAARC Voyage* series, edited by Balaram Dangol (Kathmandu: Ministry of Education and Culture, Department of Archaeology, National Archives, 1987- ).

**530 Documents on Nepal's relations with India and China 1949-66.**

Edited by A. S. Bhasin. Bombay: Academic Books, 1970. 295p.  
bibliog.

This collection from official sources and newspaper reports includes Nepal's application for membership of the United Nations in 1949 with the texts of previous treaties with Britain, China and Tibet as enclosures. There are sections on defence, political and economic relations with India, political relations with China, China's UN membership application, economic relations with China and the Sino-Nepalese boundary. The bibliography includes only the sources of the documents printed.

**531 Political economy of foreign aid in the Third World: a case study of Nepal.**

Murlidhar Dharamdasani. Foreword by Leo E. Rose. Varanasi, India: Konark, 1984. 244p. bibliog.

This study is written on similar lines to Eugene Bramer Mihaly's earlier work, *Foreign aid and politics in Nepal* (q.v.), but brings the story up to the 1980s. The author examines in turn the aid programmes of India, the US, China and the Soviet Union, followed by the smaller donor countries, and multilateral agencies and considers the impact of these programmes on overall development plans and on specific sectors of the Nepalese community. Whilst his evaluation of individual donors is generally positive, his introduction and conclusion endorse the common view that aid has strengthened the élite without improving conditions for the majority. He nevertheless accepts that development aid cannot be dispensed with, and recommends changes in its operation, including greater assistance to industrial ventures and the agricultural sector, a shift towards programme rather than individual project assistance, better coordination of aid by the Nepalese authorities, increased mobilization of her own resources, and the strengthening of regional cooperation. A table of aid projects up to 1981 is also included. Dharamdasani is also author of *Indian diplomacy in Nepal* (Jaipur, India: Aalekh, 1976. 256p. bibliog.).

## Foreign Relations

### 532 **China-Nepal relations and India.**

Trimbak Ramrao Ghoble. Preface by Gargi Dutt. New Delhi: Deep & Deep, 1986. 256p. bibliog.

Offers a straightforward account of relations up to Deng Xiao Peng's 1978 visit to Kathmandu, including details of Chinese aid projects. Like Ramakant in *Indo-Nepalese relations, 1816-77* (q.v.), the author argues that China's relations with Nepal are determined by her concern with India. Other recent works on the same subject are Rabindra K. Das's *Nepal and its neighbours: quest for status of a landlocked state* (Varanasi, India: Konark, 1986), and Hemen Ray's *China's strategy in Nepal* (New Delhi: Radiant, 1983).

### 533 **Foreign aid and development – proceedings of a seminar (October 4-5, 1983).**

Integrated Development Systems. Introduced by Devendra Raj Panday. Kathmandu, 1983. 340p.

Presents the proceedings of an important seminar organized by one of the leading private development consultancies in the country. Six papers, each followed by points raised in discussion and by the author's response, examine the impact of foreign aid on Nepal's economy and society. The book is a good introduction to the key issues in debate at present, with the last paper, by Devendra Raj Pandey, advocating provocatively a complete cessation of foreign aid unless the donors can ensure that it is used more effectively.

### 534 **Uneasy partners: India and Nepal in the post-colonial era.**

Shree Krishna Jha. New Delhi: Manas, 1975. 344p. bibliog. (Studies in Asian history and politics, 3).

Offers a straightforward narrative of relations between India and Nepal from the end of the Rana régime to the early 1970s, related from the Indian viewpoint.

### 535 **Nepal: transition from isolationism.**

Yadunath Khanal. Kathmandu: Sajha, 1977. 298p.

Presents a collection of essays and speeches by a scholar who has also had a distinguished career as a diplomat and foreign minister. As well as pieces on foreign relations, the book includes details of the author's early life, a general survey of Nepali literature (also published in J. B. Rana and Kamal Prakash Malla's *Nepal in perspective* (q.v.)), and individual studies of the poets Lakshmi Prasad Devkota, Siddhicharan and Bhupi Sherchan.

### 536 **Essays in Nepal's foreign affairs.**

Yadunath Khanal. Kathmandu: Murari Prasad Upadhyay, 1988. 175p.

This collection of previously published articles and speeches covers economic and socio-cultural aspects of foreign relations, in addition to the South Asian Association for Regional Cooperation (SAARC) and relations with individual countries. Two of the pieces are surveys of the years 1984 and 1985, written for *Asian Survey* (q.v.).



**537 Foreign aid and politics in Nepal: a case study.**

Eugene Bramer Mihaly. London; New York; Toronto: Oxford University Press, 1965. 202p. map. bibliog.

Analyses aid programmes to Nepal from 1951 to 1962, concentrating on the major donors (the US, India, China and the Soviet Union), with briefer accounts of small scale efforts. The author concludes that aid was flawed by two incorrect assumptions: first, the belief that the population as a whole was eager for change, when in fact the masses in the villages had no understanding of the possibilities, whilst the traditional élite had a vested interest in the status quo; and, second, the confidence that the Nepal government had the will and administrative capacity to implement change. In so far as donors relied on the economic effect of aid to achieve their political objectives they were disappointed, and they only succeeded in advancing their own interests if the mere act of giving assistance paid political dividends. The main practical effect of the programmes was to finance an expansion of the bureaucracy which enabled the government to buy off the newly educated young, the one group which might otherwise have exerted pressure for real change.

**538 Nepal Treaty Series (1972-4).**

Kathmandu: Ministry of Law and Justice, 1981. 454p.

This is the first in an on-going series of volumes giving the text of treaties to which Nepal is a party.

**539 Foreign policy of Nepal.**

S. D. Muni. Delhi: National Publishing House, 1973. 320p. map. bibliog.

This study covers the period from 1951 to 1967, with a postscript on developments to 1971. A general background chapter is followed by an analysis of Nepal's fundamental foreign policy concerns, a consideration of the constraints that the country is under and a discussion of the policy principles evolved as a result, for example non-alignment and foreign economic policy. The conclusion highlights Nepal's ability to combine political neutrality with a *de facto* defence commitment to India, and illustrates her subordination of global non-alignment to the needs of the regional balance. Appendices include an analysis of Nepal's voting record on major issues at the UN and lists of official visits exchanged with India and China.

**540 The Nepalese dilemma, 1960-74.**

Tribhuvan Nath. New Delhi: Sterling, 1975. 528p. bibliog.

Written by an Indian journalist who was correspondent for *The Times of India* in Nepal from 1962 to 1971, this general survey covers the country's economy, politics and external affairs. The book deals especially with the geo-political aspects of Nepal's position between India and China. The main text goes up to the death of King Mahendra in 1972, with a postscript on developments to 1974. The author's conclusion is strongly in favour of a multi-party system and anti-China, and he calls for a *rapprochement* between the king and the political leaders of the opposition. There are statistical and documentary appendices.

## Foreign Relations

### 541 **The China factor in Indo-Nepalese relations 1955-72 – a study of linkage phenomenon.**

Shashi Bhushan Prasad. New Delhi: Commonwealth Publishers, 1989. 197p. bibliog.

As the author himself admits, this book is very much a raking over of old ground. His claim to originality is the attempt to fit a familiar story into the framework of the theory of 'linkage' developed by James N. Roseneau (*Linkage politics*, New York: The Free Press, 1969). Interactions between the parties are classified as 'penetrative', 'reactive' and 'emulative', and China's effect on Indo-Nepalese relations is broken down into six categories: contiguous; regional; cold war; racial; resource; and organizational.

### 542 **Nepal-China and India: Nepal-China relations.**

Ramakant. New Delhi: Abhinav, 1976. 342p. bibliog. map.

This account of Nepal-China relations from 1955 to 1971, based principally on newspaper reports and interviews, emphasizes the psychological and cultural aspects of relations. The author, who works at the Centre for South Asian Studies at the University of Rajasthan, Jaipur, writes from a professedly Indian standpoint, and concludes that Nepal is of little direct concern to China but useful because of her much greater importance to India. The introductory chapter gives a good summary of the political-strategic background from the mid-18th century onwards, and an appendix lists official visits between the two countries from 1955 to 1971.

### 543 **Guidelines from experience.**

Rishikesh Shaha. In: *Future of South Asia*. Edited by Pran Chopra. Delhi: Macmillan, 1986. p. 136-68.

The author summarizes the course of Indo-Nepalese relations since 1951, discusses Nepalese attitudes towards India and recommends the adoption of a more accommodating attitude by both sides to overcome current problems. He also calls for the establishment of a non-governmental South Asian Committee for Regional Understanding and Cooperation.

### 544 **Nepal – struggle for existence.**

Jagadish Sharma. Foreword by Rishikesh Shaha. Kathmandu: Communication Incorporated, 1986. 368p. bibliog.

Presents a study of foreign policy from 1950 to 1983, the general perspective being similar to that of *Nepal – strategy for survival* (q.v.) by Leo Rose, who was the author's research supervisor. As a former senior civil servant and diplomat, however, he takes a more establishment view, ending the book with enthusiastic endorsement of the zone of peace proposal and of King Birendra's rôle in the establishment of the South Asian Association for Regional Cooperation (SAARC), suggesting that the king may have had a hand in the formulation of the initial proposal for a regional organization by President Ziaur Rahman of Bangladesh. An appendix includes the text of King Birendra's major foreign policy speeches. In this well-written book, Sharma explicitly endorses a more 'realpolitik' than idealistic approach, a view for which he is gently rebuked in Rishikesh Shaha's preface.

**545 Works on Nepal-Britain relations.**

Shesh Raj Shiwakothi. Kathmandu: The Author, 1986. 31p. (Nepal Bibliography Series, no. 2)

Comprises 176 titles, most of them in English, dealing with both present and past and including items up to January 1986. All major works in the field are covered. The book is available from the author, Sesh Sadan, Ga 1-53, Maiti Devi, Kathmandu-2, Nepal.

**Nepal: strategy for survival.**

*See* item no. 213.

**Nepal: a small nation in the vortex of international conflicts.**

*See* item no. 222.

**Essays in the practice of government in Nepal.**

*See* item no. 483.

**The economics of Indo-Nepalese co-operation. A study on trade, aid and private foreign investment.**

*See* item no. 611.

**The anthropology of development in Nepal: a review article on foreign aid projects in the Kathmandu Valley.**

*See* item no. 612.

**Foreign aid and social structure: notes on intra-state relationships.**

*See* item no. 614.

**Foreign aid in Nepal's development - an overview.**

*See* item no. 616.

**Nepal: perspectives on development issues.**

*See* item no. 625.

**Foreign aid and agricultural development in Nepal.**

*See* item no. 680.

# Literature

## Literary history and criticism

**546 Bala Krishna Sama.**

Ishwar Baral. *Kailash*, vol. 2, no. 3 (1974), p. 189-97. bibliog.

Offers a brief account of the life and most important works of Nepal's leading playwright, a member of the Rana family who changed his name to *sama* (equal) to show solidarity with the democratic movement of 1950-51. The author stresses Sama's innovatory rôle in Nepali literature and relates his career to contemporary political upheavals.

**547 Kirata-Jana-Krti – the Indo-Mongoloids: their contribution to the history and culture of India.**

Suniti Kumar Chatterji. Calcutta: Asiatic Society, 1974. 2nd ed. 187p. 2 maps. bibliog.

This survey, by the doyen of Indian philologists, covers Tibeto-Burman communities throughout South Asia. The section on Nepal (p. 57-83) includes some useful, if now slightly outdated, material on the Newars, in particular on their language and literature.

**548 Neon lights and Vedic caves: European influences on the Nepali writer.**

Michael J. Hutt. *South Asia Research*, vol. 4, no. 2 (Nov. 1984), p. 124-38. bibliog.

Presents a brief survey of Nepali literature in the current century, emphasizing the conflicting influences of the Hindu tradition and of modern Western thought. A fuller treatment of the literature of Nepal can be found in the author's *Nepali; a national language and its literature* (q.v.), while Hutt's analysis of attitudes in literature to Gurkha military service in foreign armies is published in *South Asia Research*, vol. 9 no. 1 (May 1989). He will shortly be publishing a volume of criticism and translation of modern Nepali poetry (*Himalayan voices: Nepali poets of the twentieth century*), and an anthology of translated short stories (*The half-closed eyes of the Buddha and the setting sun*).

**549 Catalogue of Nepali printed books in the India Office library.**

Michael J. Hutt. London: British Library, 1985. 43p.

This bibliography contains around 560 titles, comprising the India Office Library's entire holding apart from a few 19th-century acquisitions included in James Fuller Blumhardt's *Catalogue of the library of the India Office*, vol. 2, part 3 (London, 1902). The India Office collection includes 300 books published before 1930, many of them from north India rather than from Nepal itself. The catalogue is arranged under Library of Congress subject headings, slightly modified, with author and title indices and brief annotations, and will remain a complete listing as responsibility for the acquisition of new Nepali books within the British Library has now been placed solely with the Department of Oriental Manuscripts and Printed Books.

**550 Nepalese Literature.**

Yadunath Khanal. In: *Nepal in perspective*. Edited by Pashupati Shamsheer J. B. Rana, Kamal Prakash Malla. Kathmandu: Centre for Economic Development and Administration, 1973. p. 119-38.

This brief survey begins with reference to the Sanskrit and Newari literary traditions and then concentrates on the major writers in Nepali in the 19th and 20th centuries. The survey is also included in the author's *Nepal – transition from isolationism* (q.v.) and in *Nepal: a conspectus*. Edited by Kamal P. Malla. Kathmandu: Colombo Plan, 1977. p. 99-118.

**551 Nepalese manuscripts. Part I: Newari and Sanskrit.**

Described by Siegfried Lienhard with the collaboration of Thakurlal Manandhar. Stuttgart, GFR: Franz Steiner, 1988. 222p. bibliog.

This bibliographical guide includes details of: catalogues and lists of Newari literature; works on Newari literature; editors and translators; reference works and important articles; and scripts and writing materials. The introduction deals extensively with Newari language and literature, and there are plates of some of the manuscripts discussed.

**552 Classical Newari literature: a sketch.**

Kamal P. Malla. Kathmandu: Nepal Study Centre, 1981. 90p. bibliog.

Provides a survey of Newari literature as preserved in manuscripts from about 1360 (the date of a text of the *Hitopadesa* with the original Sanskrit text and a line-by-line Newari paraphrase) to 1900. The book is divided into an account of the literate culture of the Newars (including Buddhist scholarship, the writing system and literary patronage) and a genre by genre description of the literature, including technical and religious prose, historical narrative, and poetry and drama. The description of the staging of plays is particularly interesting. Titles and dates of major works are given, and there is a discussion of the close initial dependence of Newari on Sanskrit literature and of possible Chinese or Tibetan influence on the annalistic tradition.

**553 A history of Maithili literature.**

Jayakanta Mishra. Allahabad, India: Tirabhukti, 1949, 1950. 2 vols. bibliog.

This work is concerned principally with literature produced in the Maithila region itself, which straddles the India-Nepal border. Volume one, on medieval literature, begins with a discussion of the early development of the language and discusses the

## **Literature. Literary history and criticism**

Maithili court dramas produced in Nepal during the Malla period. There are extensive quotations from the writers discussed, but unfortunately no translations of these are given.

### **554 A history of Nepali literature.**

Kumar Pradhan. New Delhi: Sahitya Akademi, 1984. 240p. bibliog.

This study by a Darjeeling historian and critic includes a brief treatment of the origins of the language and of folk literature and proverbs. Whilst all the major literary figures are discussed, the emphasis for the contemporary period is on Indian Nepali writers. The sections on poetry include some lengthy quotations from the original texts (in Roman transcription) with English translation. For a briefer survey of Indian writing in Nepali, see Paras Mani Pradhan, 'Modern Nepali literature and India', *Indian Literature*, vol. 20, no. 1 (Jan.-Feb. 1977), p. 19-26.

### **555 Mahakavi Laxmi Prasad Devkota.**

Paras Mani Pradhan. Kalimpong, India: Bhagya Laxmi, 1978.

84p. bibliog. (Makers of Nepali Literature).

Although now overshadowed by David Rubin's *Nepali visions, Nepali dreams* (q.v.), this work remains a useful account of the life and works of Nepal's greatest poet, Lakshmi Prasad Devkota (1909-1959). The monograph was actually commissioned by the Sahitya Akademi in Delhi, who then rejected it because it was realized that Devkota was not an Indian citizen! A bibliographical narrative is interspersed with quotations from the poet's most important works in Nepali and rather quaint English translations. There is a list of Devkota's manuscripts unpublished up to 1978, and an appendix includes the poet's 'Nepali' with Sanskrit, Hindi, Newari, Bengali, English, German, French and Urdu translations.

### **556 Adikavi Bhanubhakta Acharya.**

Paras Mani Pradhan. Kalimpong, India: Bhagya Laxmi, 1979.

96p. bibliog. (Makers of Nepali Literature).

This book is so far the only one published in English on the life and works of the Nepalese *adikavi* (founder poet), Bhanubhakta Acharya (1814-68), famous chiefly for his Nepali adaptation of the *Ramayana*. The study contains Nepali texts and English translations of Bhanubhakta's *Prashnottar* (Answers to questions), *Badhu-Siksha* (The education of wives) and *Ramgita* (The song of Ram).

### **557 Bala Krishna Sama.**

Paras Mani Pradhan. Kalimpong, India: Bhagya Laxmi, 1980.

79p. bibliog. (Makers of Nepali Literature).

Provides a bibliographical introduction to Nepal's foremost playwright, followed by a discussion of his poems, plays and essays in chronological order.

### **558 Kavi Shiromani Lekh Nath Paudyal.**

Paras Mani Pradhan. Introduced by Ram Krishna Sharma, Matrika Prasad Koirala, Surya Bikram Gyawali. Kalimpong, India: Bhagya Laxmi, 1980. 78p. bibliog. (Makers of Nepali Literature).

Paudyal (1884-1965), is classed with Bala Krishna Sama and Mahakavi Lakshmi Prasad Devkota as one of Nepali literature's three greatest exponents and is known as

the *kavi shiromani* (crest jewel poet). A short biography is followed by a discussion of his works in chronological order. An appendix gives the text of three of Paudyal's poems, and, as in other volumes in this series, there is a full list of the poet's own published and unpublished work and of studies on him.

**559 My recollections of the great poet Laxmi Prasad Devkota.**

Chandra Bahadur Shrestha. Message by Lain Singh Bangdel, forewords by Madhav Prasad Ghimire, Padma Devkota. Kathmandu: Royal Nepal Academy, 1981. 116p. bibliog.

Presents a collection of articles, originally written for *The Rising Nepal* (q.v.), by a man who had been a friend of the poet's from student days. The author combines biographical details and personal reminiscences of the man with a short critical assessment of his work and includes brief examples of his English poems. There is a complete list of Devkota's published poetry, beginning with the famous *Muna-Madan* (q.v.), which Shrestha claims was based on a Newari ballad he himself had brought to the poet's attention.

**560 The movements in Nepali poetry of this decade.**

Abhi Subedi. *Flow* (Kathmandu), vol. 1, no. 2 (1970), p. 65-70.

An essay on the Nepali poetry of the late 1960s. The author analyses the influences which are discernible in works by contemporary writers, and presents four extracts from recent Nepali poems in English translation.

**561 Nepali literature: background and history.**

Abhi Subedi. Kathmandu: Sajha, 1978. 228p. bibliog.

In this first book-length English-language study of Nepali literature, the author, a Kathmandu poet and literary critic, surveys the main Nepali authors in all genres from the 1770s to the present, emphasizing the influence of Western literature on the more recent writers and including illustrative quotations, particularly in the section on poetry.

**Essays on the languages, literature and religion of Nepal and Tibet.**

See item no. 1.

**Nepal: a miscellany.**

See item no. 22.

**History of Nepal.**

See item no. 175.

**The Gopalarajavamsavali.**

See item no. 188.

**Nepali: a national language and its literature.**

See item no. 270.

**The Sanskrit Buddhist literature of Nepal.**

See item no. 346.

**Essays on the ethnology of Nepal and South Asia.**

See item no. 375.

## Literature. Translations

### Nepal: transition from isolationism.

See item no. 535.

# Translations

### 562 **Life and writings of Prithvinarayan Shah.**

Leelanteshwar Sharma Baral. Ph.D. thesis. University of London, 1964. 352p. 2 maps. bibliog.

This study includes an account of Prithvi Narayan's conquests and Nepali text and translation of the king's extant writings. Although Ludwig Stiller has provided a superior account of the unification of Nepal in *Rise of the house of Gorkha* (q.v.) and a translation of the king's political testament, the *Dibya Upadesh* (divine counsel) in *Prithvi Narayan in the light of Dibya Upadesh* (q.v.), Baral's is still the only English translation of Prithvi's letters, and his critical examination of the Shah dynasty's claim to descent from the Rajput rulers of Mewar in Rajasthan remains useful. Copies of the thesis are available from the University of London Library, Senate House, Malet Street, London WC1E 7HU.

### 563 **Jagatprakasamallas Muladevasasidevavyakhyanataka. Die älteste bekannte vollständig überlieferte Newari-Drama.** (Jagat Prakash Malla's *Muladevasidevavyakhyanataka*. The oldest known fully extant Newari drama).

Edited and translated from the Newari with commentary by Horst Brinkhaus. Stuttgart, GFR: Franz Steiner, 1987. 208p. bibliog. (Seminar für Kultur und Geschichte Indiens an der Universität Hamburg. Alt-und Neue-Indische Studien, 36).

This comedy was written by Jagat Prakash Malla (1638-72), who became king of Bhaktapur at the age of five and was the author of many plays and poems. It is based on a well-known Indian story, and concerns a plot by two Brahmans to seduce a merchant's wife. The editor gives the text in Roman transliteration and German translation.

### 564 **The Pradyumna-Prabhavati legend in Nepal. A study of the Hindu myth of the draining of the Nepal Valley.**

Horst Brinkhaus. Stuttgart, GFR: Franz Steiner, 1987. 398p. map. bibliog. (Seminar für Kultur und Geschichte Indiens an der Universität Hamburg. Alt-und Neue-Indische Studien, 32).

Pradyumna was a son of the god Krishna and is said to have released the waters of the lake filling the Valley by killing a demon. Prabhavati, the demon's sister, fell in love with him. In this study, the author carefully compares the versions of the story in three Sanskrit texts – the *Pashupati Purana*, *Nepalamahatmya*, and *Himavat Khanda*. He shows that they reflect attempts by both major Hindu traditions, Vaishnavite and Shaivite, to link the sacred sites of the Valley with their own sect. The remaining two-thirds of the work comprises a transliterated text, with English translation and an



introduction of a dramatization of the legend by King Jagat Prakash Malla, the *Pradyumnvijayanataka* ('Triumph of Pradyumna'). This was written in Maithili to mark his son's tonsure ceremony in 1666.

**565 Seven poets.**

Edited by Tulsi Diwas. Kathmandu: Royal Nepal Academy, 1975.  
163 p.

Presents translations of long poems by seven of Nepal's most famous poets. These are: 'Reflections on the spring' by Lekhnath Paudyal, 'Sight of the incarnation' by Balkrishna Sama; 'Muna-Madan' by Lakshmi Prasad Devkota; 'Shawari' by Siddhicharan Shrestha; 'Woman: lushy juice, visible sweetness and lustrous splendour' by Kedar Man Vyathit; 'The mother stained' by Madav Prasad Ghimire; and 'Sixteen sentiments' by M. B. B. Shah (King Mahendra). Each poem is preceded by a brief introduction to the poet concerned.

**566 Muna-Madan.**

Laxmi Prasad Devkota. Translated from the Nepali by Madhusudan Devkota. Kathmandu: Royal Nepal Academy, 1979-80. 28p.

Presents a translation into rhyming English verse of the most popular work of Nepali literature, Devkota's *Muna-Madan*, which was originally written in the late 1930s. The translation is accurate enough, but has been criticized for its style.

**567 From the other end.**

Banira Giri. Adapted by R. D. Yuyutsu. Jaipur, India: Nirala, 1987.  
60p.

Fragments from various poems by Banira Giri (born 1946), one of Nepal's leading women writers, are 'adapted' into English poems. Most of the passages are drawn from Giri's recent book *Mero avishkar* (My discovery), 1984. Yuyutsu's introduction is an example of purple prose *par excellence*.

**568 Chittadhar 'Hridaya's' Nepal bhasa short stories.**

Chittadhar 'Hridaya'. Translated by Tej Ratna Kansakar.  
Kathmandu: Nepal Bhasa Parishad, 1977. 90p. (Nepal Bhasa Series, 34).

Offers translations of short stories by a leading Newari author. 'Nepal bhasa' ('the language of the Nepal Valley') is the name for the language now preferred by most educated Newars.

**569 Indreni.**

Kathmandu: Kavya Pratishthan, 1956.

This monthly literary journal, presenting Nepali poems with English translations, has only seven issues. Although the venture did not last a full year, it included many of the principal works of Nepal's leading poets, such as Lekh Nath Poudyal, Bal Krishna Sama, Siddhicharan, Vyathit, Madhav Ghimire and Lakshmi Prasad Devkota. The last-mentioned is known to have been the translator of most of the poems, although no name is given in the journal itself. Most issues were edited by Ishwar Baral and the final one by Madhav Ghimire.

## Literature. Translations

**570 Vicitrakarnakavadanoddhrta: a collection of Buddhist legends. Newari text.**

Edited and translated from the Newari by Hans Jørgensen. London: Royal Asiatic Society, 1931. 344p. (Oriental Translation Fund, New Series, XXXI).

Provides the text and English translation of a Newari manuscript dated Nepal Era 994 (i.e. 1873-74) and held in Cambridge University Library. The legends are mostly of the usual *avadana* type, of which other examples can be found in Lienhard's *Manicudavadanoddhrta* (q.v.) and *Newarigitimanjari* (q.v.). The Newari version is itself the translation of a Sanskrit original. This work was the first published translation of a Newari text in its entirety. A glossary is included.

**571 Batisputrikakatha, the tales of the thirty-two statuettes. A Newari recension of the Simhasanadvatrimsatika.**

Edited and translated with explanatory notes by Hans Jørgensen. Copenhagen: Ejnar Munksgaard, 1939. 372p. bibliog. (Det Kgl. Danske Videnskabernes Historisk-Filologiske Meddelelser, XXV:2).

Presents a Newari version of a well-known Sanskrit story-collection. The stories mostly concern the semi-legendary King Vikramaditya, and are told by the statuettes carved on Vikramaditya's throne, when a later king discovers it and attempts to sit on it himself. The editor gives a transcribed Newari text, followed by an English translation with notes.

**572 Khairini Ghat.**

Shankar Koirala. Translated from the Nepali by Larry Hartsell. Kathmandu: Ratna Pustak Handar, 1984. 111p.

Offers a competent but very literal English translation of a well-known 'rural' novel set in eastern Nepal during the Rana period and first published in 1961.

**573 A fire of straw.**

Guru Prasad Mainali. Translated by Paras Mani Pradhan. *Indian Literature*, vol. 23, no. 3-4 (May-August 1980), p. 192-207.

Provides a translation of one of the best-known short stories by one of Nepal's leading practitioners of the genre. The plot concerns a quarrel between husband and wife, which, like a fire in the straw, quickly flares up and quickly dies away.

**574 Manicudavadanoddhrta: A Buddhist re-birth story in the Newari language.**

Edited and translated by Siegfried Lienhard. Stockholm: Almqvist & Wiksell, 1963. 106p. bibliog. (Acta Universitatis Stockholmensis, Stockholm Oriental Studies Series 4).

This edition of a Newari version, which is based on a Sanskrit original, tells the story of the deeds of Buddha in an earlier incarnation as King Manichuda of Saketa. The text in Roman script is followed by an English translation. *Avadana* (stories of Buddha's previous lives) was a popular genre of Newari literature, and translations of other examples can be found in Lienhard's own *Newarigitimanjari* (q.v.) and Jørgensen's *Vicitrakarnakavadanoddhrta* (q.v.).

**575 Nevarigitimanjari – religious and secular poetry of the Newars of the Kathmandu Valley.**

Translated and edited by Siegfried Lienhard. Stockholm: Almqvist & Wiksell, 1974. 332p. bibliog. (Acta Universitatis Stockholmiensis, Stockholm Oriental Studies, 10).

Translations of songs which are mostly still popular among the Newars are used to illustrate different aspects of Newari life. The contents are divided into four categories: religious poetry; songs of love and marriage; epic poetry (including Buddhist *avadana* verses and historical songs); and didactic and enigmatic verses. The originals are given in transcription, and appendices provide details of the rhythm of the songs and offer musical transcriptions of two of them. The translator claims that this is the first edition of Newari texts which are neither translations nor explanations of Sanskrit sources. A revised and abridged version of the book, *Songs of Nepal. An anthology of Newar folksongs and hymns*, was issued in 1984 (Honolulu: University of Hawaii Press, 1984. 221p. bibliog. (Asian Studies at Hawaii, 30)).

**576 Blue mimosa.**

Parijat. Translated by Tanaka Vilas Acharya, Sondra Zeidenstein. Kathmandu: Sondra Zeidenstein, 1972. 100p.

Provides a translation of the Marxist woman novelist Parijat's famous first novel, *Shrishko Phul*, published in 1965. The story concerns the infatuation of a retired Gurkha soldier, a remorseful alcoholic, with the cynical, unfeminine sister of a drinking companion. Probably Nepal's first existentialist novel, it aroused considerable controversy when first published. Its central theme is one of urban life and social conventions, and it is also interpreted as a criticism of Nepalese who enlist in foreign armies.

**577 The wake of the white tiger.**

Daman Shamsheer Rana. Translated by Greta Rana. Kathmandu: Mrs. Balika Rana, 1984. 262p.

The best-known Nepali historical novel, originally entitled, *Seto bagh* (The white tiger), was set in the period from the 1854-56 war with Tibet to the 1885 *coup* in which the Shamsheer branch of the Rana family seized power by killing their own uncle Ranodip Singh, who was Jang Bahadur's sole surviving brother, and by killing or expelling Jang's sons. The central figure is Jagat Jang, eldest of Jang's legitimate sons. The 'white tiger' of the title is supposed by popular legend to have appeared just before Jang's death on a hunting expedition in the *tarai* in 1877. The novel has been fairly criticized for its flagrant inconsistency with known historical fact, but it does convey something of the flavour of court life and intrigue under the Ranas.

**578 A Nepali version of the Vetlapancavimsati.**

Theodore Riccardi, Jr. | New Haven, Connecticut: American Oriental Society, 1971. 206p. bibliog. (American Oriental Series, vol. 54)

The *Vetlapancavimsati* (The vampire's twenty-five tales) is a well-known collection of stories included in the work of the 11th century Sanskrit poet, Kshemendra. Riccardi publishes the text of a Nepalese manuscript of the early 19th century, containing the original Sanskrit with Nepali translation, and gives an English translation. The editor also provides notes to the translation and to the text, a lengthy discussion of the

## Literature. Translations

history of the work, and a grammar of the Nepali of the document, arranged to facilitate comparison with Thomas Welbourne Clark's description of the modern language in *An introduction to Nepali* (q.v.).

### 579 **Four Nepali short stories.**

Translated and introduced by Theodore Riccardi, Jr. *The Himalayan Research Bulletin*, vol. 8, no. 1 (1988), p. 1-24.

Provides translations of short stories by four of Nepal's best-known writers: Pushkar Samsher, 'Circumstantial evidence' (*Paribandha*); Guru Prasad Mainali, 'The ward' (*Naso*); Bala Krishna Sama, 'Nicotine fit' (*Taltal*); and Shiva Kumar Rai, 'The Surmawalla of Delhi' (*Dilliko Surmavala*). The translator's introduction includes an account of his own meeting in 1965 with Bala Krishna Sama.

### 580 **Modern Nepali poems.**

Royal Nepal Academy. Translations by M. S. Devkota, Chaitanya K. Upadhyaya, Madhusudan Thakur, Madhav Lal Karmacharya, foreword by Kedar Man Vyathit, Lain S. Bangdel, introduction by Vasudev Tripathi. Kathmandu: Royal Nepal Academy, 1972. 327p.

Presents a selection of ninety-three poems by thirteen poets: Lekh Nath Paudyal, Bala Krishna Sama, Lakshmi Prasad Devkota, Bhawani Bhiksu, Siddhicharan Shrestha, Kedar Man Vyathit, Madhav Prasad Ghimire, Gopal Prasad Rimal, M. B. B. Shah (King Mahendra), Vijaya Malla, Mohan Koirala, Bhupi Sherchan, and Vairagi Kainla. The translations are of varying quality, but give a reasonable impression of the scope of Nepali poetry over a period of sixty years. There are no extracts from the poets' longer works.

### 581 **Nepali visions, Nepali dreams. The poetry of Laxmiprasad Devkota.**

Edited and translated by David Rubin. New York: Columbia University Press, 1980. 176p. bibliog. (Modern Asian Literature Series).

Offers translations of forty-four complete poems and one extract from a longer work of Lakshmi Prasad Devkota, one of 20th-century Nepal's three most celebrated poets and arguably the most original. The translations are preceded by a short account of the poet's life and an extended discussion of his work, illustrated with extracts from his longer, epic poems and from his essays. Rubin highlights the various influences on Devkota's poetry, including Nepali folk culture, the English Romantic poets, and the Indian and Western classical traditions. A translation of the poet's essay on his own style is given as an appendix.

### 582 **Prahlad.**

Balkrishna Sama. Translated from the Nepali by Madhusudan Devkota. Kathmandu: Royal Nepal Academy. 127p.

This play, originally published in 1938, is probably Sama's most famous. The legend of the struggle between the Vaishnavite ascetic Prahlad and a demon is presented as a parable of the opposition between religious devotion and science.

**583 Lyrical poems by Chadani Shah.**

Chadani Shah. Translated from the Nepali by Tara Nath Sharma.

Kathmandu: His Majesty's Government, Ministry of Communications,  
Department of Information, 1986. 51p.

This volume contains both original text and translation of poems by the present queen of Nepal. Whilst as highly regarded as those of her father-in-law, Queen Aishwarya's lyrics read well, and the language is simple enough to be of possible use to foreigners learning Nepali.

**584 A choice of songs.**

Mahendra Bir Bikram Shah. Translated by Tirtha Raj Tuladhar.

Kathmandu: Merchantile Corporation, 1960. 90p.

Presents forty-four poems by King Mahendra (father of the present King Birendra). Mostly love lyrics with a melancholy tone, together with some reflective and nationalistic pieces, some of the poems are also included in the Royal Nepal Academy's anthology, *Modern Nepali poems* (q.v.).

**585 Nepalese short stories.**

Translated from the Nepali or Newari by Karunakar Vaidya.

Kathmandu: Purna Book Stall, 1971. 152p.

Offers translations of eleven short stories from the original Nepali or Newari. Some of Nepal's most celebrated short story writers are represented, including Guru Prasad Mainali, Govinda Bahadur Gothale and one-time prime minister B. P. Koirala. The stories are mainly on social and psychological themes.

**Jang Bahadur in Europe.**

See item no. 223.

**Expression after death.**

See no. 589.

## Literature in English

**586 Come tomorrow.**

Mani Dixit. Kathmandu: Sajha, 1980. 153p.

This novel tells the ultimately tragic story of a Tamang who serves with the Nepalese army on the Burmese front during the Second World War, and subsequently becomes involved in gem smuggling and in the Raksha Dal, the militia recruited by the Nepali Congress for the overthrow of the Rana régime in 1950.

**587 The Red Temple.**

Mani Dixit. Kathmandu: Sharada, 1977. 112p.

The author of this 'thriller' uses as background the campaign fought against the Chinese in Tibet by Khampas based in northern Nepal, and features the Khampas' connections with foreign organizations, hippies, drugs and associated killings.

**Literature. Literature in English**

**588 Distant hills.**

Greta Rana. Kathmandu: Sharada, 1977. 184p.

This novel, set during the Rana period, tells the story of a girl from the western hills brought to Kathmandu to marry a high-ranking member of the ruling family.

**589 Expression after death.**

Bal Krishna Sama. Kathmandu: Sajha, 1972. 75p.

Presents poems by Nepal's master playwright and one of her most gifted poets, Bal Krishna Sama (1903-81). Most were originally written in English, but six are translations from the Nepali. The poem of the title was translated by Sama himself, and another by Lakshmi Prasad Devkota. Although a little old-fashioned in tone, the quality of the language in these poems demonstrates Sama's prowess as a writer of English.

**590 Manas.**

Ramesh Shrestha, Abhi Subedi, Peter Karthak. Kathmandu: The Authors, 1977. 66p.

This is an interesting collection of forty-two poems by three young poets. The themes include aspects of life in Kathmandu, and (in Shrestha's case) experiences as a student in Massachusetts.

# Economy

**591 Rural development in Nepal: problems and prospects.**

Shyam Prasad Adhikari. Kathmandu: Sajha, 1982. 117p. map. bibliog.

This study by a senior official in the Ministry of panchayat and local development traces the changing approach to rural development down to the present 'integrated rural development' model, and sketches the government institutions and private organizations involved. The author stresses cultural aspects of the problem, including the failure to build on indigenous attitudes and institutions and the gulf between an educated Westernised élite and the ordinary villager. The National Development Service, involving village work by M.A. students, is seen as having an important rôle in resolving this problem. He argues that so far development has largely benefitted local élites, and that scepticism among the rural population is often a justified reaction to projects with inadequate follow-up. Better planning and training and greater involvement of the local people are advocated. Appendices give key development statistics and details of the various integrated rural development projects to 1980/1.

**592 Resource mobilization in Nepal.**

Govind Ram Agrawal. Kathmandu: Centre for Economic Development and Administration, 1980. 251p. bibliog.

The author advocates a greater rôle for income tax in bridging the resource gap between government revenue and expenditure. He includes a detailed description of the present operation of the tax, a projection of the future tax yield and resource gap on the basis of present trends, and a survey of attitudes among 175 politicians, administrators and tax-payers. Recommendations for reform include increasing the efficiency of the collection machinery (by measures such as maintaining an up-to-date register of tax-payers and instituting an effective information system), classing capital gains from ownership of urban land as a part of income, introducing a selective wealth tax, and replacing 'tax holidays' for industries with investment allowances. Appendices give details of the survey and of current income tax legislation. Agrawal has also edited *Current issues on Nepalese development* (Kathmandu: Centre for Economic Development and Administration, 1982), a collection of papers from a 1981 CEDA seminar including chapters on energy and environment, employment, and industrialization.

## **Economy**

### **593 Nepal's fiscal issues: new challenges.**

D. B. Amatya. New Delhi: Sterling, 1986. 206p. bibliog.

Studies the period 1955-56 to 1982-83, giving a general survey of the political and economic system, and analysing in detail the tax structure and possibilities. The author takes a pessimistic view of the present situation and of likely future developments.

### **594 Nepal's economy: an overview.**

Edited by Mahesh Banskota, Nirmal K. Bista. Foreword by Govind R. Agrawal. Kathmandu: Centre for Economic Development and Administration, 1980. 551p. bibliog.

This collection of papers on different sectors of the economy was prepared as Nepal's part in an exercise for the Committee on Studies for Cooperation in Development in South Asia. It provides good summaries of the situation at the end of the 1970s.

### **595 Foreign aid and the poor.**

Mahesh Banskota. In: *Foreign aid and development – proceedings of a seminar*. Kathmandu: Integrated Development Systems, 1983, p. 35-83.

The author argues that the benefits of foreign aid have not reached the poor, but that this result is due to the present internal balance of power, rather than the fact that the source of funding is external.

### **596 Budget innovations in developing countries: the experience of Nepal.**

John C. Beyer. New York: Praeger, 1973. 188p. bibliog.

The author, who was advisor to Nepal's Planning Commission from May 1968 to May 1970, describes the efforts made by the Finance Ministry to introduce a system of programme budgeting in Nepal, and argues in favour of such a system, though with certain reservations. The attempted reform was in the event not carried through.

### **597 The development experience of Nepal.**

B. S. Bhooshan. New Delhi: Concept Publishing, 1979. 195p. 4 maps. bibliog.

This smoothly written account was compiled by an architect planner who visited Nepal in connection with a project on habitat for the London International Institute of Environment and Development. Despite some minor inaccuracies, the book gives a good general account of efforts at planned development, and at progress in specific sectors, including agriculture, industry, infrastructure (transport, communication and power), science and technology and land reform. Bhooshan argues that the government has failed to realize that highly centralized planning will not work, and that it is difficult to promote economic change with minimal social and political change.

### **598 Peasants and workers in Nepal.**

Piers Blaikie, John Cameron, David Seddon. Warminster, England: Aris & Phillips, 1979.

This work draws on the same body of research which provides the basis of the authors' fuller study of 1980. The opening two chapters give a general analysis of the Nepalese situation. The remaining six deal in detail with specific groups: poor peasants and



artisans; porters; agricultural labourers; highway construction labourers; urban labour force; small business and the 'petty bourgeoisie' (teachers, low-level civil servants etc.). The last of these chapters finds some faint hope of improvement in the activity of the Nepal Rastriya Jana Vikas Parishad in west-central Nepal, which is largely led by small businessmen and teachers but which seeks to improve conditions for the less well-off generally.

**599 Nepal in crisis – growth and stagnation at the periphery.**

Piers Blaikie, John Cameron, David Seddon. Oxford, England; New York: Oxford University Press, 1980. 311p. 2 maps. bibliog.

Originating from the authors' study of the social and economic effects of road-construction in west-central Nepal, this text combines a detailed analysis of the regional economy with a discussion of national problems. The crisis in the hills is seen not only as the result of environmental factors but also of their marginal situation *vis-à-vis* Kathmandu, and of Nepal's position on the margin of the more developed Indian economy. Although the authors' Marxist approach and unrelieved pessimism about future prospects are controversial, the book offers a valuable statement of the size of the problems now facing the country. A briefer statement of the authors' viewpoint can be found in their *The struggle for basic needs in Nepal* (Paris: Development Centre of the Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development, 1979).

**600 A select annotated bibliography on integrated rural development – Nepal.**

Centre on Integrated Rural Development for Asia and the Pacific. Dhaka, 1987. 50p. (Regional Bibliography Series, no. 5).

This bibliography of 144 items, mostly on the period 1980-86, is annotated and arranged alphabetically by subject, with author and subject indexes. It is based on information supplied by Balaram Dhaubhadei, Documentation Officer, Agricultural Project Services Centre (APROSC) in Kathmandu.

**601 Kirtipur – a Newar community in Nepal – development in debate.**

E. P. Davies, R. W. Davis, W. R. Flinn, C. J. P. Miers, M. Park, C. V. L. Robertson. Bristol, England: United Press, 1981. 119p. maps. bibliog.

Provides a survey of the history, culture, and present economic condition of Kirtipur (a Newar settlement to the south-west of Kathmandu), followed by a plan for action. The authors advocate a programme run by a small team of foreign experts and by Nepal government personnel, beginning with small sanitation and irrigation schemes. They also argue that tourism should be controlled and that local people should be encouraged to benefit from it by providing some small-scale facilities.

**602 Economic survey.**

Kathmandu: Ministry of Finance, [1977-] annual.

This is the official account of the Nepalese economy tabled in the Rastriya Panchayat each summer in advance of the budget debate. It includes detailed tables on national accounts, on the performance of individual sectors of the economy and on social services.

## **Economy**

### **603 Nepal: dimensions of development.**

Harka Gurung. Kathmandu: Sahayogi, 1984. 275p. maps. bibliog.

Presents a collection of previously published papers by Nepal's leading geographer, who has served as head of the National Planning Commission and also as a minister. The author has added some specially written observations as preface and conclusion to the volume. Subjects covered include virtually every aspect of development problems and policy, with an emphasis on the spatial aspect. Although originally a leading advocate of regional policy he criticizes the unintegrated way in which this has been carried out, and also questions the current enthusiasm for 'Integrated rural development', arguing that one of Nepal's major problems is too little urbanization.

### **604 Bhaktapur: a town changing.**

Ane Haaland. Kathmandu: Bhaktapur Development Project, 1982. 130p. maps. bibliog.

This enthusiastic account of the German-Nepalese Bhaktapur Development Project, set up in 1974 to promote development in the town alongside preservation of its architectural heritage, is written by one of the Project's expatriate staff. A much less favourable assessment can be found in Todd Lewis's review of the book (q.v.).

### **605 Financing public sector expenditure in Nepal.**

Integrated Development Systems. Kathmandu: 1987. 166p. bibliog.

Presents the work of a study team headed by Devendra Raj Panday, a former Finance Secretary. The team produced this report as a contribution to a regional investigation sponsored by the Asian Development Bank. It covers the period from 1974-75 to 1984-85, and includes detailed statistics, in particular for the last six of these years. The team is highly critical of inadequate control of public expenditure and of failure to make tax revenues sufficiently elastic. Their recommendations include the extension of the tax base, including the taxation of agricultural incomes, and closure and/or privatization as the remedy for inefficient public sector enterprises that cannot be justified as providing a social service.

### **606 Poverty to prosperity in Nepal.**

S. C. Jain. Delhi: Development Publishers; Bonn: International Development Agency, 1981. 114p. bibliog.

This study uses data from the 1977 *Survey of employment, distribution income and consumption patterns in Nepal*. (q.v.) to derive a figure of 36.2 per cent of the population living below the poverty line and an additional 18.84 per cent below the average national level. The total of both categories is calculated to reach 76 per cent by 1985. The author then presents a costed programme (total investment of 8500 million rupees to 1985) as a remedy, including food for work programmes, credit for the poor and control of inflation.

### **607 Resource mobilization and economic development in Nepal during the plan period.**

H. B. Jha. Foreword by Tulsi Giri, Yadab Prasad Pant. Allahabad, India: Kitab Mall, 1984. 199p. bibliog.

After rather sketchily reviewing the major general theories of economic development and their relevance to Nepal, the author surveys the Nepal economy in general and in particular the tax structure. He accepts as inevitable the current dominating rôle of

indirect taxation, but calls for greater use of differential rates to promote social justice. He examines public borrowing, arguing that this has not generally been used for asset formation, and recommending more imaginative schemes to attract funds from the non-organized sector. He gives details of foreign aid receipts and of repayment obligations, suggesting that Nepalese exports ought to be acceptable as a form of repayment and that aid itself should more often be in commodity form. He also argues that technical training should be made available within Nepal rather than abroad. He finally examines deficit financing, concluding that it is justifiable but must be kept within limits.

**608 Economic development and planning in Nepal. Process, performance and perspective – a select bibliography.**

Shaktinath Jha. Varanasi, India: Banaras Hindu University, Department of Political Science, 1984. 208p. (Documentation on Nepal – Series 2)

This bibliography of 1664 titles covers economic development in Nepal. An earlier bibliography from the same compiler and publisher is *Political developments in Nepal with particular reference to the post-referendum period*. This publication is undated, but includes newspaper articles and other material up to mid-1982.

**609 Development in South Asia.**

B. L. C. Johnson. Harmondsworth, England: Penguin, 1983. 250p. maps. bibliog.

Written by a British geographer, this regional survey analyses development goals and achievements in India, Pakistan, Sri Lanka and Nepal. The bulk of the book is organized thematically rather than by country, but the conclusion includes a separate prognosis for each country. The author is pessimistic about Nepal's future, and suggests that what hope there is lies in greater economic, and perhaps also political integration with India.

**610 Regional strategy for development – a case study of Nepal.**

Jigbar Joshi. Foreword by Harka Gurung. Kathmandu: Lajmina Joshi, 1985. 200p. 4 maps. bibliog.

Intended for policy makers and planners and rather technical in places, this study reviews Nepal's overall planning efforts, examines general theories of regional planning, and considers its application in Nepal. The author finds regional planning in Nepal inadequate and advocates a new approach, with a five-level hierarchy of focal points for growth. He suggests that the hill, mountain and *tarai* areas within each of the existing development regions should initially be considered separately. Plans should be broken down by region and sector with maximum popular participation in the planning process, and differential investments, especially in social services, should be made in the more backward areas.

**611 The economics of Indo-Nepalese co-operation. A study on trade, aid and private foreign investment.**

Mahendra P. Lama. New Delhi: M. N. Publishers Distributors, 1985. 190p. bibliog.

This study of the period from 1950 covers the Indo-Nepalese trade treaties, Indo-Nepalese trade, Indian aid to Nepal and Indian private investment in the country.

## Economy

**612 The anthropology of development in Nepal: a review article on foreign aid projects in the Kathmandu Valley.**

Todd T. Lewis. *Contributions to Nepalese Studies*, vol. 13, no. 2 (April 1986), p. 167-80. bibliog.

In this review of Ane Haaland's *Bhaktapur: a town changing* (q.v.) and of two books on Kirtipur, the author, who himself worked for a short time as an assistant to the German-Nepalese Bhaktapur Development Project, argues for the involvement of social scientists in such projects to ensure that local sensibilities are taken properly into account. He is highly critical of the Bhaktapur venture for failing to do this, citing in particular the construction of a water and sewerage system which ignored the farmers' need to use ground water for irrigation, and a 'museum-approach' to the city which hampered its economic development.

**613 Pokernomics. Essays on economics, development and self-reliance (perspectives on Nepal).**

Ramesh Manandhar, Rod Rylander. Kathmandu: The Authors, 1985. 182p. bibliog.

Presents a collection of essays by a Nepalese architect and an American biologist on the general theme of 'small is beautiful'. They argue that integration of Nepal into the international economy can only further impoverish the majority of the population, and that the goal should rather be the division of the country into small, self-reliant communities. Whilst providing a useful warning against the dangers of some 'development' strategies, many of their recommendations are somewhat utopian. The book includes a letter from Patricia Perkins, pointing out the contradiction of a well-travelled and cosmopolitan Nepalese telling his countrymen that they are wrong to aspire to Western-style affluence.

**614 Foreign aid and social structure: notes on intra-state relationships.**

Chaitanya Mishra, Pitamber Sharma. In: *Foreign aid and economic development*. Kathmandu: Integrated Development Systems, 1983. p. 1-17. bibliog.

The authors argue that the main effect of the vast amount of aid given to Nepal in the period 1951/52 to 1979/80 has been to buttress the position of the existing upper class.

**615 The seventh plan 1985-90 (a summary). Part 1.**

National Planning Commission. Message from His Majesty King Birendra. Kathmandu: 1985. 194p.

Provides a summary of the government's official blueprint for development activity during the seventh plan period. After a brief review of the targets and actual performance during the previous five years, the document sets out the overall objectives for 1985-90, which include an annual growth rate of 4.5 per cent, in line with the 4.4 per cent actually achieved under the sixth plan. The final section, constituting more than half the total length, gives a statement of policy and objectives for each area of government activity, including agricultural development, industries, education, health and social welfare.

**616 Foreign aid in Nepal's development – an overview.**

Devendra Raj Panday. In: *Foreign aid and development – proceedings of a seminar*. Kathmandu: Integrated Development Systems, 1983. p. 270-312.

This paper is written by the founder of Nepal's best-known private development consultancy, who is also a former finance secretary. Panday presents figures illustrating the relative dependence on foreign aid of Nepal and other countries, and criticizes the 'basic needs' approach for ignoring the fact that poverty in Nepal is so generalized that increased growth is the only way to make an impact. He suggests that unless aid donors are prepared to insist on the channelling of resources to where they will have a real effect, the flow of aid is doing more harm than good and should be stopped.

**617 Problems in fiscal and monetary policy: a case study of Nepal.**

Yadav Prasad Pant. London: C. Hurst; Kathmandu: Sahayogi; New Delhi: Vikas, 1970. 205p. bibliog. map.

The author analyses fiscal and monetary policy since 1951 in the light of general principles applying to developing countries, stressing their importance for mobilization of internal resources and control of the balance of payments. Pant argues that the Nepal Rastra Bank (the country's central bank) should take the lead in promoting new financial institutions, and calls for the lowering of rents but also for an increase in revenue from land and the taxing of agricultural income. There is an account of the existing banking structure across the country and Buddhabare panchayat in eastern Nepal is cited as an example of the economic and social progress that can be made once the power of the local landlords has been broken.

**618 Regional imbalances and process of regional development in Nepal.**

Yadav Prasad Pant, S. C. Jain. Delhi: Development Publishers, 1980. 72p. bibliog.

The authors give details of existing regional disparities and suggest that a strategy based on a careful assessment of resources by region could allow the correction of imbalances without sacrificing the objective of overall growth. Detailed and costed investment proposals are given, and the plan is presented as an extension of the regional planning approach already officially adopted. Jain is also co-author, with B. P. Shrestha, of *Regional development in Nepal – an exercise in economic reality* (Delhi: Development Publishers, 1978).

**619 Rural problems and rural development in Nepal: a search for new strategy.**

Yadav Prasad Pant, S. C. Jain. New Delhi: Development Publishers; Bonn: International Development Agency, 1980. 88p. bibliog.

This book outlines the existing situation in the countryside, with the aid of extensive statistics, and advocates the provision of more credit and extension services, with administration through a country-wide network of thirty integrated rural development projects. The scheme is not costed. Pant is also the author of *Economic development of Nepal* (Allahabad, India: Kitab Mahal, 1982).

## **Economy**

### **620 Drive against poverty – Nepal.**

Mehar Man Paudel. Kathmandu: Ultra Research Centre, 1986. 122p. bibliog.

A general discussion of the definition of poverty and its causes in Nepal is followed by an analysis of major measures already taken, including land reform, rural development, cooperative programmes, small farm development, and land resettlement programmes. The author then examines such subjects as access to health and education. His recommendations include the complete abolition of absentee landlordism, the promotion of employment programmes, agriculture and small-scale industry, and the increase in efficiency of cooperatives. The lack of research on crops that can be grown in the hill areas is also criticized.

### **621 Crisis, pseudocrisis or supercrisis: poverty, women and young people in the Himalaya. A survey of recent developments.**

David C. Pitt. *Mountain Research and Development*, vol. 6, no. 2 (May 1986), p. 119-31.

Considering principally Nepal and Bhutan, the author argues that the major cause of poverty, deforestation and environmental degradation may be market factors rather than population pressure. Certain groups, in particular young people, are most affected by poverty, which prevents them from playing their proper and important rôle in economy and society.

### **622 Planned development in Nepal – a study.**

Sriram Poudyal. New Delhi: Sterling, 1983. 135p. bibliog.

This study by a Nepalese economist reaches broadly similar conclusions to those of Piers Blaikie and his colleagues in *Nepal in crisis* (q.v.). He stresses the lack of truly productive investment in the economy and the appropriation of foreign aid funds for the benefit of the current élite. Chapters on general development policy, industry and agriculture are included. The book is a particularly well-written and concise statement of a widely shared view. Poudyal is also the author of a highly regarded, more technical study, *Foreign trade, aid and development* (New Delhi: Commonwealth Publishers, 1988), which establishes quantitative relationships between major macro-economic variables, including investment, domestic savings, growth rate and trade and aid flows.

### **623 Integrated rural development projects in Nepal: a review.**

Bharat B. Pradhan. Kathmandu: International Centre for Integrated Development, 1985. 42p. bibliog.

A prominent Nepalese administrator reviews the various rural development programmes implemented since the Village Development Programme of the 1950s and considers accompanying attempts at decentralization, culminating with the scheme making government agencies' district level officers integral members of district panchayat secretariats, which was implemented fully in fourteen districts in July 1985. Details of eight current large-scale projects are given, together with a brief look at the District Plan and small farmers development programmes and other rural development initiatives. Evaluations of the integrated projects are summarized. He suggests that it is too early for definite conclusions but that projects of this type still seem the most promising way forward. In an earlier publication, *Rural development in Nepal: problems and prospects* (Kathmandu: The Author, 1982), Pradhan had criticized the failure to involve local

people properly in such projects, and called for a greater rôle for local panchayat institutions.

**624 Monetary and credit policies of the Nepal Rastra bank and their impact on the Nepalese economy.**

Pushkar R. Reejal. Foreword by Mohan P. Upadhyia. Kathmandu: Ratna Pustak Bhandar, 1986. 100p. bibliog.

Intended primarily as a university text book, this work is also useful for general reference, even though it is rather technical in places. The author argues that the Nepal Rastra Bank can influence, though not fully control, the money supply if it chooses, but that its actual performance has been poor. He advocates a firmer grip on the price level, with the acceptance of a higher interest rate as an inevitable trade-off. The book was written before the publication of Gunanidhi Sharma's *Monetary structure in the Nepal economy* (q.v.)

**625 Nepal: perspectives on development issues.**

Edited by Leo E. Rose. Berkeley, California: University of California, 1987. 121p. (Occasional Paper, no. 12).

This collection of papers by Nepalese and American scholars, includes an address given at the University of California by King Birendra on the rationale of the country's political system. Topics covered by other contributors include economic development, the problem of poverty, social change and Nepal-US relations.

**626 Making planning relevant: Nepal's experience, 1968-76.**

Aran Schloss. *Asian Survey*, vol. 20, no. 10 (Oct. 1980), p. 1008-22. bibliog.

This article traces the development of planning in Nepal in the final years of King Mahendra's reign and in the opening ones of King Birendra's rule, providing a briefer account than that offered in the author's *Transportation policy in Nepal* (q.v.) or in Ludwig Stiller and Ram Prakash Yadav's *Planning for people* (q.v.). Beginning with the establishment of the National Planning Commission in 1968, the author analyses the changing relationships between the *Janch Bujh Kendra* (investigation centre) of the palace secretariat and the National Planning Commission, the finance ministry, the planning units of other ministries and the National Development Council. He argues that the efficiency of the planning process increased over this period, but that political tensions between the bodies involved remained, and that priority would always be given to preventing the emergence of any real rival authority to the palace secretariat.

**627 Nepal – a state of poverty.**

David Seddon. Delhi: Vikas, 1987. 288p. bibliog.

Originally written as a report to the International Labour Organisation, this study is the latest product of the research that Seddon and his colleagues at the University of East Anglia have been undertaking in Nepal since the 1970s. The general analysis remains the same as in *Nepal in Crisis* (q.v.), but the author now argues that the crisis is also an opportunity for change and that progressive elements within the country, together with support from foreign agencies, may be able to promote this.

## **Economy**

### **628 Developing an economy – Nepal's experience.**

Sukhdev Shah. *Asian Survey*, vol. 21, no. 10 (Oct. 1981), p. 1060-78.  
bibliog.

Reviews Nepal's economic planning, focusing on the principal constraints on development. An account of the background to the beginning of Nepal's development efforts in the 1950s is followed by a brief description of the objectives and achievements of the five development plans that have been completed since then. The conclusion identifies major problems as insufficient investment, political interference in the planning process, excessive concentration on large-scale, prestige projects, and over-centralization. Recommendations for change include further land reform and a public works programme to provide off-farm employment.

### **629 Nepal's economic development: problems and prospects.**

Sukhdev Shah. *Asian Survey*, vol. 28, no. 9 (Sept. 1988), p. 945-57.  
bibliog.

The author considers principally the period 1975 to 1985, pointing out that despite an investment rate equivalent to around twenty per cent of gross national product, there has been little progress either in agricultural productivity or in industrialization, and that the essential problem is inefficiency in the use of resources rather than the lack of them. Noting that foreign aid has increasingly been in the form of loans rather than grants thus worsening the country's debt burden, he suggests that Nepal's position relative to the other countries of the region is likely to decline, despite the government commitment to reaching 'the Asian standard' by the end of the century.

### **630 Monetary structure in the Nepalese economy: policy issues in theory and practice.**

Gunanidhi Sharma. New Delhi: South Asia Publishers, 1987. 243p.  
bibliog.

This technical account begins with an extensive discussion of general monetary theory and then looks at the prospects for monetary control as a tool for the management of the Nepalese economy. The author argues that control via the Nepal Rastra Bank's supply of credit to banks and the private sector is both feasible and desirable. However, a precondition for this would be a lessening of the effects of outside influences on the economy through measures such as strict regulation of trade with India and a greater reliance on domestic rather than foreign financing.

### **631 An introduction to Nepalese economy.**

Badri Prasad Shrestha. Foreword by Naresh Man Singh. Kathmandu: Ratna Pustak Bhandar, 1981. 4th.ed. 274p.

This is a standard textbook for Nepalese students, but is also very suitable for the general reader. The author gives a straightforward account of all aspects of the economy, including agriculture, industry, transport, foreign trade, banking, public finance and foreign trade. A chapter on land reform argues that an immediate policy of 'land to the tiller' is impractical, but that the balance must be tilted more in favour of the tenant if agricultural productivity is to be improved.



**632 Nepal: atlas of economic development.**

Edited by Ram Krishna Shrestha, Pitamber Sharma. Kathmandu: National Council for Science and Technology, 1980. 147p. 70 maps.

Compiled by a team of experts, this work principally presents data for 1976 and 1977. The maps are divided into ten sections: general; population; agriculture; industry; transportation; communication; banks; education; health; and regional development. Each map is accompanied by text giving the source of data, a discussion of distribution and a table ranking the districts in terms of the features being discussed. Though many of the statistics are now out-of-date, the atlas still presents a clear picture of the relative state of economic advance in the different parts of the country. For more recent, though less detailed information on some of the same topics, see S. H. Shrestha, *Nepal in maps*. (Kathmandu: Educational Enterprise, 1988.)

**633 The fiscal system of Nepal.**

S. Karom Singh. Kathmandu: Ratna Pustak Bhandar, 1977. 268p.

A discussion of the theoretical aspects of fiscal policy as they affect both developed and developing countries is followed by detailed analysis of the Nepalese fiscal system, including the incidence and elasticity of taxes and the financing of development expenditure. The conclusion includes a discussion of the prospects for raising additional revenue.

**634 Planning for people: a study of Nepal's planning experience.**

Ludwig Stiller, Ram Prakash Yadav. Kathmandu: Sahayogi for the Centre for Nepal and Asian Studies, 1979. 334p. bibliog. map.

This influential work covers the history of planning since 1951 (with brief references to the Rana period), including discussions of the development of planning institutions, changes in philosophy and methods, and effects of cultural and attitudinal factors. Particularly useful chapters summarize the controversies on the key issues of land reform, public versus private enterprise; large-scale capital projects versus grass-roots development; agricultural production; and road construction. The authors also outline results actually achieved in the fields of transportation, education and agriculture. The rôle of foreign aid and of foreign experts is also examined. Stiller and Yadav endorse the present emphasis on 'basic needs' and on integrated development projects, and argue for 'convergent planning', involving dialogue between central and regional planners and local people at village level. The book is generally optimistic in outlook, though covering most of the principal obstacles to development.

**635 Land settlement in Nepal – comparative study of four types of planned and spontaneous settlement.**

Gopal E. Thapa, Karl E. Weber. Bangkok: Asian Institute of Technology. 176p. 3 maps. bibliog. (Studies on Human Settlements Development in Asia, HSD Monograph, 9).

This study compares conditions in the Banke and Bardiya districts of the western *tarai* for four categories of settlers: migrants from the hills who had resettled as part of the regular government resettlement programme; ex-servicemen whose settlement was also government supported; squatters who had moved into the area on their own; and long-established inhabitants. Those with government assistance were much better off, and economic stratification in the area had therefore increased. The authors recommend an area approach for the future, with equal assistance offered to all categories of inhabitant.

## **Economy**

### **636 Nepal: an annotated bibliography on rural regional development.**

United Nations Centre for Regional Development. Nagoya, Japan: 1985. 250p. (UNCRD Project on Regional Development Documentation, Country Bibliography Series, no. 9)

Includes 536 titles, mostly issued in the ten years up to 1983, and based partly on the Agricultural Project Services Centre and Water and Energy Resources Development Project collections in Kathmandu. The annotated entries are arranged in accession order, but preceded by full subject, author and title indexes. Theses and official reports are included as well as published items. This work is available from the publisher: Nagonon 1-47-1, Nakamura-Ku, Nagoya 450, Japan.

### **637 Bikas: evolution in Nepal.**

C. J. Wake. Kathmandu: Centre for Nepal and Asian Studies, 1980. 186p. bibliog.

This general survey of economic policy takes a broadly pro-panchayat view. The British author, who was at Eton with King Birendra, was invited to Nepal for the king's coronation in 1975.

### **638 Why planning fails in Nepal.**

Aaron Wildavsky. *Administrative Science Quarterly* (Dec. 1972), p. 503-28.

Written by the Dean of the Graduate School of Public Policy at Berkeley, California, this much-cited article is based on a visit to Nepal in April 1971. He provides a summary of the main obstacles to efficient, overall planning of development efforts, including the country's piecemeal arrangements with individual aid donors, and the hidebound nature of the bureaucracy. His conclusion that long term planning in such conditions is simply not feasible, and that a project-by-project approach is inevitable would be rejected by many as a counsel of despair, but much of his analysis remains valid.

### **639 Nepal: development performance and prospects.**

World Bank, South Asian Regional Office. Washington, DC: 1979. 123p. map.

This report was prepared by a team of World Bank economists who visited Nepal to assess the results of the country's fifth plan (1975/76 to 1979/80) and to assist in the formulation of the sixth (1979/80 to 1984/85). It gives detailed statistics on all aspects of the economy, together with a description of current conditions and policies and forecasts of future trends. The annual growth rate of four per cent which the team recommended as a target for the next five years was in fact achieved, but the long-term problems which they outline still remain.

### **Nepal – the kingdom in the himalayas.**

See item no. 10.

### **An introduction to Nepal.**

See item no. 21.

### **Area handbook for Nepal, Sikkim and Bhutan.**

See item no. 23.

**Travels in Nepal – the sequestered kingdom.**

*See* item no. 110.

**Foreign aid and women.**

*See* item no. 448.

**Nepal's progress and problems 1972-80.**

*See* item no. 489.

**Foreign aid and economic development: Nepal's experience with Chinese aid.**

*See* item no. 528.

**Political economy of foreign aid in the Third World: a case study of Nepal.**

*See* item no. 531.

**Foreign aid and development – proceedings of a seminar (October 4-5, 1983).**

*See* item no. 533.

**Foreign aid and politics in Nepal: a case study.**

*See* item no. 537.

**The anthropology of development in Nepal: a review article on foreign aid projects in the Kathmandu Valley.**

*See* item no. 612.

**Earth, man, trees: development aid in Nepal.**

*See* item no. 664.

**A survey of employment, income distribution and consumption patterns in Nepal. Results of a survey conducted by the National Planning Commission, Nepal, March-July 1977.**

*See* item no. 693.

**Land degradation and society.**

*See* item no. 698.

**Bikas-binas? Development-destruction? The change in life and environment of the Himalaya. A reader for concerned people and tourists about ecology, so-called development and tourism.**

*See* item no. 711.

**The Economic Journal of Nepal.**

*See* item no. 762.

# Finance, Trade and Commerce

**640 Indo-Nepal trade and economic relations.**

Narottam Prasad Banskota. Delhi: B.R. Publishing, 1981. 267p. bibliog.

In this study, which deals largely with developments up to the early 1970s, with one chapter on the period up to 1977/78, the author examines the trade agreements of 1923 and subsequent years, and presents detailed statistics for particular categories of goods. He shares the widespread view that Nepal's recent attempts to diversify trade away from India have not been cost-effective, and argues for increased Indo-Nepal cooperation, although rebuking India for insufficient sensitivity towards Nepal's complaints on the issue of transit rights.

**641 Foreign investment in Nepal.**

Ramesh Chitrakar. Kathmandu: Centre for Economic Development and Administration, 1986. 60p. bibliog.

The author outlines the nature and extent of foreign investment in Nepal, considers government policy towards it (in particular the incentives offered under the Foreign Investment and Technology Act of 1981) and discusses the motivation behind multinational companies' investment decisions. He includes a list of actual investments up to 1985/86. The report concludes that investors in Nepal are discouraged by the time-consuming procedure for processing applications and by a failure in practice to make available all the facilities laid down in the 1981 Act. Recommendations are made and an appendix gives details of all foreign investments in Nepal in the first nine months of the financial year 1985/86.

**642 Investors' guide to Nepal.**

Industrial Service Centre. Kathmandu, 1982. 2nd ed. 123p. maps.

First published in 1975, this guide includes a survey of industrial firms, together with details on investment incentives, financial institutions, and legislation affecting companies. There are also a few pages on agriculture and forestry.

**643 An export strategy for Nepal.**

Integrated Development Systems. Kathmandu, 1981. 116p.

Prepared for UNCTAD/GATT, Geneva, this report advocates the encouragement of exports through fiscal concessions, the setting up of an Export Development Council, and the identification of particular products as suitable for promotion. The report's recommendation to scrap the dual exchange rate system then in force was implemented later in 1981. The main body of the report is preceded by a summary of findings and recommendations, and followed by statistical appendices. Copies of this report are available from Integrated Development Systems, P.O. Box 2254, Kathmandu.

**644 Financial institutions and economic development: the pivotal role of Nepal Rastra Bank.**

Integrated Development Systems. Kathmandu, 1985. 217p.

Prepared for the Nepal Rastra Bank (the state reserve bank), this report provides a clear picture of the rôle of the major financial institutions in Nepal – government and private banks, and the public sector National Insurance Corporation and Employees' Provident Fund Corporation. The report argues that these are failing to meet the demand for finance adequately, and that the problem is aggravated by the absence of a capital and money market. The dominating position of government institutions within the relatively small organized sector of the monetized area of the economy, and the oligopolistic rôle of the present banks are emphasized, and recommendations are made for the better discharge of the Rastra Bank's regulatory rôle and for its encouragement of more effective resource mobilization by other institutions. Other suggestions include the creation of closer relationships between the branches of the Agricultural Development Bank and the local people (including regional recruitment of staff), and the direction of more loans to the private sector where the marginal productivity of capital is believed to be higher. Copies of this report are available from Integrated Development Systems, P.O. Box 2254, Kathmandu.

**645 Study on import management in Nepal.**

Integrated Development Systems. Kathmandu, 1985. 185p.

This report was prepared for the International Trade Centre, UNCTAD/GATT, by a team led by Kyl Shekhar Sharma. An analysis of Nepal's foreign trade identifies sluggish export finance and the demand for imports generated by deficit financing as important factors in the worsening balance of payments situation, and also points out that taxes on imports account for forty per cent of government revenue. Recommendations include a more effective system of import planning, with allocations made first for priority sector imports and an auction of the remaining available foreign currency rather than an arbitrary distribution of import licences. It is suggested that the exchange rate should be used to meet the deficit problem, but reductions in duty on imports from India could be made to contain resulting price increases. An introductory chapter summarizes findings and conclusions, and appendices include: a detailed balance of trade statistics; details of import regulations and specimens of associated forms; and an analysis of the transit costs of various categories of goods. Copies of this report are available from Integrated Development Systems, P.O. Box 2254, Kathmandu.

## **Finance, Trade and Commerce**

### **646 Crisis in Nepalese commercial banks.**

Hari Bansh Jha. Foreword by Shailendra Kumar Upadhyay. Patan, Nepal: Institute of Third World Economic Studies, 1984. 101p. bibliog.

The author identifies various problems of Nepalese commercial banks, including the failure to attract sufficiently large deposits, exclusive reliance on high interest rates to attract funds, failure of the 1974 Priority Sector Credit scheme to meet its target for loans to the disadvantaged, and the small number of branches in rural areas. He reviews the effect of allowing the operation in the country of foreign banks since 1984, arguing that this carries dangers unless domestic banks are revamped to meet the competition. Detailed recommendations for change include the reduction of political interference in bank operations.

### **647 Strategy in Nepal's foreign trade.**

Hari Bansh Jha. Foreword by D. P. Gautam. Kathmandu: Forum of Economic Writers, 1987. 176p. bibliog.

A brief survey of Nepal's general economic position, criticizing the seventh plan (1985/86 – 1989/90) for not giving proper priority to water resources development and for excessive reliance on foreign aid, is followed by an analysis of previous trade policy and of trade with India and other countries. The author argues that a too-liberal import policy has led to a severe balance of payments problem and the squandering of resources on non-essential items, and has also exacerbated relations with India, because of the smuggling of such items across the border. The author's recommendations are mostly in the direction of greater economic integration with India, including the reduction of tariffs on Indian goods, the establishing of joint ventures, and the continuing free convertibility of the Nepalese and Indian rupee. Past efforts to diversify trade away from India are seen as having involved Nepal in unnecessary losses. A related book by the same author is *Nepal and the world economy* (Kathmandu: Telegraph Weekly, 1985).

### **648 Capital market, financial flows and industrial finance in Nepal.**

Ram Sharan Mahat. Kathmandu: Sajha, 1981. 350p. bibliog.

In this highly regarded study, the author argues that domestic savings are not being channelled into industrial investment. The banks provide little finance to industry and few firms raise money through the issue of securities, with domestic funds going instead into commerce and foreign banks. The government is itself a major investor, but relies for this function largely on foreign aid. Firms tend to use private (non-bank) borrowing and trade credit as sources of finance, and their working capital management is deficient. The author recommends that the government should encourage the development of the public limited company system, issue government securities tied to investment in industry, and sell off some of its current holdings. The study is based largely on the analysis of the balance sheets of fifty-four firms, details from which are given in statistical appendices.

### **649 Nepal for foreign investors: brief information on incentives, facilities and procedures and full text of industrial policy 1981.**

Ministry of Industry, Foreign Investment Promotion Division. Kathmandu: 1985. 33p.

This booklet presents government policy towards foreign investment for the seventh plan period (1985-90). The Foreign Investment and Technology Act of 1981 provides for the promotion and regularization of foreign investments and technology transfers

through concessions on income tax and customs and excise duties and other incentives. Procedures for obtaining permission for investment are detailed, and the functions of the foreign investment division and committee are outlined. Also included are addresses, application forms and a work-flow chart. Information on industrial policy can also be found in the National Industrial Development Council (NIDC)'s *Industrial policy and acts of His Majesty's Government of Nepal* (Kathmandu: 1984. Rev. ed.)

**Nepal – the kingdom in the himalayas.**

*See* item no. 10.

**Nepal: profile of a Himalayan kingdom.**

*See* item no. 20.

**Agricultural finance in Nepal.**

*See* item no. 668.

**Nepal overseas trade statistics.**

*See* item no. 887.

# Industry

**650 Industrial sector – a review.**

Mahesh Banskota. In: *Nepal's economy: an overview*. Edited by Mahesh Banskota, Nirmal K. Bista. Kathmandu: Centre for Economic Development and Administration, 1980. p. 274-302.

In this succinct survey, the author outlines the history of planned development since 1956, emphasizing the smallness of the industrial sector and its high capital intensity. The author argues that the latter is partly the result of government policies which lower the cost of capital to industrialists. His recommendations include future concentration on agro-based industries, rural industrialization, and the boosting of links with India rather than with the developed economies. He stresses that in recent times modernization has always required extensive state intervention (for example in Japan, Taiwan, Brazil and Mexico), but argues that bureaucrats are unsuitable for running an industry directly and that profitable state enterprises should be sold off to their workers or to the public.

**651 A preliminary study of the private sector of Nepal's manufacturing industry.**

Alex Kondos. *Contributions to Nepalese Studies*, vol. 14, no. 2, p. 99-110. bibliog.

Drawing his material from company registration details at the Department of Industry, the author shows that the share of private capital in manufacturing has now outstripped that of the government even in large scale enterprises, reversing the pattern that prevailed before the mid-1970s. He makes some tentative suggestions on the composition of the 'new' class of industrialists and its workforce, including the possibility that much of the remarkable growth in the garment industry might be due to Indian entrepreneurs transferring their operations across the border to evade Indian government quotas on exports.



**652 Industrialisation in Nepal: a macro and micro study.**

Radha S. Pradhan. Foreword by Charan D. Wadhua. Delhi: NBO Publishers' Distributors, 1984. 236p. bibliog.

Studies the growth and development of the industrial sector and its relation to overall economic development, arguing for better incentives to industrialists, the correction of regional imbalances, and the importance of a stable government policy towards the sector. The author considers the rôle of foreign investment, and especially joint venture companies, and also presents the results of an opinion survey of fifty-two managers in the private, and fifty-two in the public sector. There is some rather technical, statistical analysis, but most of the book is readily comprehensible by the layman.

**653 Industrial development in Nepal.**

Mahesh Chandra Regmi. *Regmi Research Series*, vol. 8, no. 10 (Oct. 1976) – vol. 9, no. 9 (Sept. 1977).

Provides an account of the earliest attempts at industrial development in Nepal, covering the period 1936 to 1957 and thus spanning the final years of the Rana régime and the initial seven years of the monarchy's restoration to power.

**654 Handicrafts development in Nepal: past efforts and future possibilities.**

Kiran Datta Upadhyay, Shiva Prasad Sharma. Kathmandu: The Authors, 1985. 126p. bibliog.

This study analyses the rôle of cottage industries in the economy, and their treatment in past plans and projects, discusses the governmental and non-governmental organizations involved, and considers the effect of trade, exchange and credit policies. A concluding survey of problems and prospects argues that cottage industries, in particular those that produce woollens and carpets, have potential to contribute substantially to the economy, but that policy towards them is currently uncoordinated and improvements in the availability of credit and in marketing are necessary.

**Introduction to Nepalese economy.**

See item no. 21.

**Planned development in Nepal – a study.**

See item no. 622.

**Nepal for foreign investors**

See item no. 649.

# Agriculture

**655 AGRINDEX.**

Rome: Food and Agriculture Organisation, 1979- . monthly.

Based on input from all member nations, this journal attempts to provide comprehensive bibliographical coverage of writings on all aspects of agriculture. The information on Nepal up to 1984 has been published separately in the two volumes of *Agrisnepal* (q.v.).

**656 Cash crop farming in Nepal.**

Soorya Lal Amatya. Kathmandu: Tribhuvan University, 1975. maps. bibliog.

Based on the author's survey of sections of five villages in the *tarai* and inner *tarai*, this study examines land use patterns, crop-association, and the growth and distribution of individual cash crops (principally mustard oilseed, sugar cane, jute, tobacco and tea) against the background of the country's overall future food grain needs. Suggestions for further development are made.

**657 Operational experiences in forestry management in the hills of Nepal.**

G. B. Aplegate, D. A. Gilmour. Foreword by Colin Rosser, preface by D. M. Griffin. Kathmandu: International Centre for Integrated Mountain Development, 1987. 40p. 2 maps. bibliog. (ICIMOD Occasional Papers, 6).

Discusses the concept of community forestry, which was introduced into the country by a Nepal Forestry Department official, T. B. S. Mahat, in the early 1970s. A number of aid donors are now involved, including Australia, the World Bank and the Food and Agriculture Organisation/ United Nations Development Programme. The authors, who have taken part in the Nepal-Australia Forestry Project, give an account of the interrelation between forestry and farming in the middle hills, and of the concept's success in Sindhupalchok and Kabhrepalanchok districts. A fuller account of the Nepal-Australia project has now been published by D. M. Griffin, who served as its

director: *Innocents abroad in the forests of Nepal: an account of Australian aid to Nepalese forestry*, Canberra: Anutech, 1988.

**658 Agrarian reform and rural development in Nepal – a country review paper.**

Agricultural Project Services Centre. Kathmandu, 1978. 40p.

This paper reviews the past land-holding situation and reform attempts to date. It is suggested for the future that the complete abolition of tenancy should be the long-term aim, but that this goal is best approached slowly by successive lowerings of the land-holding ceiling.

**659 Strategy for labour intensive agricultural development in Nepal.**

Agricultural Project Services Centre. Kathmandu, 1983. 143p. bibliog.

In this report to the Ministry of Agriculture, the Agricultural Project Services Centre ascribes rural unemployment to poor economic performance and the borrowing of unsuitable technology. On the basis of a sample survey, the authors argue that more labour could be employed through the use of high yielding variety seeds, chemical fertilizer and irrigation, and suggest that specific crop-rotations for irrigated and non-irrigated land should be introduced in different areas. Additional recommendations include: discouraging the use of tractors; maintaining the price of fertilizers above the Indian rate to prevent smuggling out; allowing grain prices to rise in the open market with possible counterbalancing of allowances to civil servants and others; providing food for work programmes for landless labourers; and encouraging the local production of tools and chemical fertilizers.

**660 Ten years of APROSC 1975-85.**

Agricultural Projects Service Centre. Kathmandu, 1985. 159p.

This survey describes the work of the Agricultural Project Services Centre (APROSC) since its establishment in 1975. The organization has formulated projects on integrated rural development, resource conservation, agriculture, hill-farming, irrigation, livestock and dairy production, in addition to evaluation studies of completed programmes and personnel training courses. APROSC has developed a pool of manpower to meet the needs of government, corporations, banks and international and bilateral agencies.

**661 Fish farming in Nepal.**

K. T. Augusthy. Foreword by George H. Axinn. Kathmandu: The Author, 1979. 147p. bibliog.

This comprehensive manual is based on the author's four years' experience in Nepal, teaching at the Rampur Agricultural Campus and conducting study tours. Augusthy covers all aspects of fish pond construction and management, discussing economically important fish species, fish culture in paddy fields, the culture of air-breathing fish, and the frog industry. The book is illustrated with black-and-white photographs and diagrams.

## **Agriculture**

### **662 Nepalese agriculture: a comparative evaluation.**

M. Banskota, Ishwor R. Lohani. Foreword by Govind Ram Agrawal. Kathmandu: Centre for Economic Development and Administration, 1982. 162p. bibliog.

Provides a good general survey, including a short history of agriculture in Nepal, input structure and investment, land reform (and its relative failure) and the impact of economic planning. The authors argue that the latter has been obstructed by the tendency to start one approach, abandon it, but then later take it up again; by the fact that the National Planning Commission has an advisory rôle only; and by a non-development-orientated bureaucracy on low salaries. They stress, however, that it must still be the government's responsibility to improve the living standards of the mass of the population.

### **663 Technical efficiency in Nepalese agriculture.**

Krishna Belbase, Richard Grabowski. *Journal of Developing Areas*, vol. 19, no. 4 (July 1985), p. 515-26. bibliog.

Using data collected by Peter Calkins, the authors show that, taking the size of holdings, crop pattern and presently available inputs as given, a sample of 537 farmers in six panchayats of Nuwakot district achieve seventy-six to eighty per cent of the theoretical maximum possible yield. Efficiency is correlated with nutrition, income and education, and is higher in rice than in maize production.

### **664 Earth, man, trees: development aid in Nepal.**

Fritz Berger. Translated from the German by Murna Bigler. Bern, Switzerland: Verlag im Waldgut, 1983. 166p. map. bibliog.

Presents a description in both German and English by a participant of the Swiss-aided Integrated Hills Development Project, begun in 1975 and due to run until 1995 in Sindhupalchok, Ramechhap and Dolakha districts in east-central Nepal, around the Lamosong-Jiri road. The text is illustrated by many black-and-white photographs. An account of the region itself and of the project's overall structure is followed by sections on agriculture, afforestation, formal and informal education, health, road construction and the encouragement of small-scale and cottage industry. Especially interesting is the description of the role of *tukis* – local people trained by the project as grass-roots extension workers – and of the adult literacy programme. Though enthusiastic about the project, the author admits drawbacks such as the possible adverse effects of the road on the local economy, and the difficulty of ensuring that new activities continue when project funding is removed. A briefer and more critical account of the project is given in Bharat Bahadur Pradhan's *Integrated rural development projects in Nepal: a review* (q.v.).

### **665 Why development fails: the evaluation gap in Nepal's subsistence agriculture.**

Peter H. Calkins. *World Development*, vol. 10, no. 5 (1982), p. 397-411.

Mainly on the basis of his 1973-75 research, the author argues that even without changes in agricultural technology, there would be considerable economic benefits to farmers from increased emphasis on horticulture (and especially vegetable cultivation) in upland areas. The potential has so far not been realized, because of government failure to identify and remove certain barriers: in particular, adequate markets should

be established (including arrangements for intra-district exchange), local people need to be educated concerning the nutritional value of fruit and vegetables, and farmers should be encouraged to accept changes in the traditional pattern of on- and off-farm employment to allow cultivation of new crops during what has hitherto been the slack season.

### 666 **Rural landlessness in Nepal.**

Integrated Development Systems. Kathmandu, 1985. 108p. bibliog.

This study, from secondary sources, was commissioned by the Food and Agriculture Organisation. The report discusses an appropriate definition of landlessness – a necessary preliminary since ownership of a home site is almost universal in rural Nepal – and, on the basis of a survey conducted by the National Planning Commission in 1977 and published in 1983, suggests that 10.35 per cent of rural households come within this category. A discussion of the problems of these households, including acute malnutrition, is followed by policy recommendations, including land reform, the establishment of agro-based industries, and the encouragement of collective action by the landless themselves.

### 667 **Manual of afforestation in Nepal.**

J. K. Jackson. Kathmandu: Nepal-United Kingdom Forestry Research Project, Forest Survey and Research Office, Department of Forest, 1987. 402p. bibliog.

This work is a technical manual, intended primarily for specialists, giving extensive information on every aspect of forestry management in the first part and a species by species inventory in the second. C. M. A. Stapleton contributes the section on bamboos, while Jean-Paul Renaud writes on *daphne*.

### 668 **Agricultural finance in Nepal.**

Kumar Kant Jha. Foreword by M. L. Dantwala. New Delhi: Heritage, 1978. 241p. bibliog.

Based on field-work in six villages in the eastern *tarai*, this study presents data on debt and credit levels, farmers' investment and disinvestment, and the rôle of indigenous and Indian moneylenders. The effect on agricultural finance of legislation setting maximum interest levels, the cooperative movement and the compulsory savings scheme introduced under the 1964 Land Reform Act are all discussed. The author finds that sixty per cent of the farmers surveyed are in debt in a given year, most of the loans being for non-productive purposes, and that reforms have so far been ineffective. He argues that more effective credit provision will not in itself solve the farmers' problems unless they are part of a development programme tackling other issues such as fragmentation of holdings, high rents and population pressure.

### 669 **Agricultural handbook: Nepal.**

Ram Mohan Josh, Madan Kumar Khatiwada. Kathmandu: Agri, 1987. 187p. bibliog.

This comprehensive reference manual is intended principally for professionals. Background information and a chronology of agricultural development policies are followed by detailed treatment of individual crop varieties, production yields, cropping patterns, recommended fertilizer and pest control techniques, labour input requirements, and details of prices and of irrigation developments. The handbook is available from the publisher, P.O. Box 3143, Kathmandu.

## **Agriculture**

### **670 Land reform: progress and prospects in Nepal.**

Ram Bahadur. Edited by Michael B. Wallace. Kathmandu: Winrock International Institute for Agricultural Development, 1986. 26p. bibliog. (Research Report Series, 2).

Though written thirteen years after Zaman's report, *An evaluation of land reform in Nepal* (q.v.), this survey comes to broadly similar conclusions on the relative ineffectiveness of the programme to date. The author recommends owner-cultivation as the long-term objective. The government resettlement programme of hill people in the *tarai* is also considered.

### **671 Land and crops of the Nepal Himalaya.**

Edited by H. Kihara. Preface by I. Namikawa. Kyoto, Japan: Flora and Fauna Research Society, Kyoto University, 1956. 529p. maps. bibliog. (Scientific Results of the Japanese Expedition to the Nepal Himalaya, vol. II).

Provides an account of the different food crops encountered during expeditions to west-central Nepal in 1952 and 1953, including a journey round the Annapurna group. There is also a chapter on the diffusion of cultivated plants across Asia. The volume is of some historical interest as the most comprehensive publication on Nepalese agriculture in its time.

### **672 Rice in Nepal (a vivid account of ecology, cultivation, research, production, quality and marketing of rice in Nepal).**

Rajeshwar Nath Mallick. Kathmandu: Kala, 1986. 224p. maps bibliog.

This account of most of the practical aspects of rice cultivation, includes descriptions of control of weeds and pests and of harvesting and post-harvesting techniques. The author also discusses whether rice is indigenous to Nepal, recommends the use in the country of high yielding varieties, and considers why results obtained in research stations do not always match actual farm yields.

### **673 Handbook of agricultural statistics of Nepal.**

Ministry of Agriculture, Department of Food and Agricultural Marketing, Agricultural Statistics Division. Lalitpur, Nepal: 1986. 63p. bibliog.

This collection, which replaces a similarly titled volume issued in 1978, comprises a short list of basic demographic and economic indicators, including total cultivated area and production of various foodstuffs, followed by sixty-two tables covering land use, irrigation and population, national accounts, yearly crop statistics (area under cultivation and yield rate for each major variety from 1970/71 to 1985/86), livestock numbers and products, use of fertilizer, agricultural credit, food prices, export of major agricultural commodities, and the number and financial status of cooperative societies. Another collection of agricultural statistics is the *National sample census of agriculture 1981-2*. (Kathmandu: National Planning Commission, Central Bureau of Statistics, 1985).

**674 Nepal's experience in hill agricultural development.**

Ministry of Food and Agriculture. Kathmandu, 1981. 234p. bibliog.

Presents the proceedings of a seminar held in Kathmandu, with twelve papers by Nepalese experts on detailed aspects of the subject followed by comparative material, drawing on their own countries' experience, contributed by participants from Hong Kong, China (Tibet), Indonesia, Thailand, India and Pakistan. S. E. Ong's opening 'Seminar summary' outlines the current situation and brings together the main recommendations, including the exploitation of the hill regions' comparative advantage in agriculture, the setting up of additional markets, and the provision of adequate production incentives.

**675 Agrisnepal – Nepal agricultural bibliography 1980.**

National Agricultural Documentation Centre. Kathmandu, 1981. 157p.

This bibliography of 2484 items is derived principally from Nepal's input to the UN Food and Agriculture Organisation's international bibliographical compilation, AGRINDEX (q.v.), volumes v-vi (1979-80). A further 1773 references, taken from the next four years of AGRINDEX, were published in 1985 as *Agrisnepal – Nepal agricultural bibliography 1984*. The Agricultural Project Services Centre, of which the NADC forms part, also produces the occasional bibliography series, smaller bibliographies generally compiled from the same data base, and dealing with particular aspects of agriculture. Titles include: *Small farmer development* (no.6); *Soil: Nepal* (no.7); *FAO: Nepal* (no.8); *Horticulture: Nepal* (no.9); *Livestock: Nepal* (no.10); and *Forestry: Nepal* (no.11).

**676 Nepal Agricultural Abstracts.**

Kathmandu: Agricultural Project Services Centre. 1982- . semi-annual.

Each issue contains about eighty abstracts, including both published and unpublished material, and covering broad development issues as well as technical agricultural papers. The abstracts are arranged under the subject headings used in AGRINDEX (q.v.). From the third issue onwards, entries are numbered in a single, cumulative sequence. APROSC also publishes *Nepal Thesis Abstracts*, containing abstracts of theses and research papers held in its library. Originally intended to be an annual publication, it has so far appeared in 1981, 1984 and 1987.

**677 Agricultural credit survey.**

Nepal Rastra Bank. Kathmandu: 1972. 4 vols. maps.

Presents a detailed survey of the state of agriculture in relation to credit supply and needs, and an examination of the moveable and immoveable assets held by farm families etc. The sample involved fourteen districts, forty-five village panchayats, and 2,655 farm households. Volume four contains a summary and recommendations.

**678 The political economy of Nepalese land reform: some aspects.**

Sushil R. Pandey. Kathmandu: Himalayan Pioneers for Public Service and Research, 1985. 203p. map. bibliog.

Pandey surveys land reform measures since 1964 and comes to the usual conclusion that they have been ineffective. Although many such surveys have been undertaken, this study is original in basing the discussion of further prospects on an attitude survey of élite groups in a country-wide sample and of peasants in the Bhaktapur district in the Kathmandu Valley, where land reforms that are more radical than elsewhere in the

## **Agriculture**

country have already been implemented. The author questions the applicability of the Marxist model of class struggle to the present agrarian situation, but suggests that consciousness among the peasants is increasing. In addition to lowering the present ceiling on land holdings, he recommends a more open political system to allow support for land reform to be mobilized.

### **679 Jute – white gold of Nepal.**

Hari Dhoj Pant. Kathmandu: The Author, 1984. 160p. map.

Presents a survey of all aspects of the jute industry, including production and national and international marketing.

### **680 Foreign aid and agricultural development in Nepal.**

Thakur Nath Pant. In: *Foreign aid and economic development in Nepal*. Kathmandu: Integrated Development Systems, 1983. p. 155-218.

Despite aid to agriculture, Nepal in the 1970s fell behind other South and South-East Asian countries with whom it had previously been roughly on a level. In 1971-80 agricultural production increased by an average of 0.7 per cent per annum, whilst the rate of population increase was 2.6 per cent. The author sees the problem as mainly one of poor management, and also points out that over 50 per cent of aid funds for agriculture flow back as foreign exchange payments. He cites the Chitawan irrigation project as an example of failure through the importation of inappropriate technology and the unrealistic assumptions of farmers' learning aptitude, whilst the integrated cereals project is praised for the use of appropriate technology. Pant also suggests, however, that the latter's success has required a level of expense that may not be sustainable once foreign support is withdrawn. The paper has tables detailing Nepal's agricultural performance in comparison with that of other developing countries.

### **681 Agricultural development in Nepal.**

Yadav Prasad Pant, Sharab Chandra Jain. Foreword by King Mahendra. Bombay: Vora, 1969. 248p. map.

This study is now only of interest as a record of the thinking and policies of the third plan (1965-70) period. Topics covered include land reform, cooperatives, compulsory savings, and marketing and price policy. Another work on the same theme by the authors is *Long term planning for agriculture in Nepal* (Delhi: Vikas, 1972), whilst a more recent examination by Jain of the problem of declining crop yields is *Nepal – the land question* (Indore, India: Development Publishers, 1985).

### **682 A general bibliography on fish and fisheries of Nepal.**

K. G. Rajbhanshi. Kathmandu: Royal Nepal Academy, 1982. 96p.

This bibliography covers the period up to 1978, and includes reports by early British visitors, a discussion of the development and organization of fisheries in Nepal, and a list of recorded species with their local names and distribution.



**683 Land tenure and taxation in Nepal.**

Mahesh Chandra Regmi. Berkeley, California: Institute of International Studies, University of California, 1963-8. 4 vols.; Kathmandu: Ratna Pustak Bhandar, 1978. 2nd ed. 895p. bibliog.

This pioneering initial study, written by Nepal's foremost economic historian, covers a subject which is central to the understanding of Nepal's political economy and history, as well as to its agricultural development in the narrower sense. In the 1978 single volume reissue, the author has added an introduction and the pages have been renumbered in a single sequence but no other changes have been made. The book gives a detailed account of the evolution of each kind of tenure, but for an overall view the general reader is best served by Regmi's more concise study, *Land ownership in Nepal* (q.v.).

**684 Land ownership in Nepal.**

Mahesh Chandra Regmi. Foreword by Leo E. Rose. Berkeley, Los Angeles, California: University of California Press, 1976. 252p. bibliog.

The most suitable of Regmi's works for those coming new to the subject, it is less burdened with detail and more coherently presented than his earlier publications. The book covers historical development and the present situation, and makes recommendations for reform, including a programme of 'land to the tiller', and communal land ownership by village panchayats. A convenient summary of the main points is provided by the author's essay in *Nepal in perspective* (q.v.), edited by Pashupati Shumshere Jung Bahadur Rana and Kamal Prakash Malla.

**685 An introduction to Nepalese food plants.**

Puskal Prasad Regmi. Kathmandu: Royal Nepal Academy, 1982. 216p.

This work lists 482 plants, with common and botanical names in Nepali (in Devanagari script). The list is divided into twelve sections, each with a general introduction: cereals, millets, pseudo-cereals, pulses, vegetables, fruits, edible nuts and seeds, condiments and seasoning herbage, intoxicants and food additives.

**686 Works on land system in Nepal.**

Shesh Raj Shiwakothi. Forewords by Mohan M. Sainju, Dhruva Bar Singh Thapa, J. L. Satyal, Ram Bahadur. Kathmandu: The Author, 1986. 74p. (Nepal Bibliography Series, no. 3).

Comprises four hundred and eighty-eight titles on both the present and past situation, including some references to the *Regmi Research Series* (q.v.). About a third of the works cited are in Nepali. The bulk of the entries are arranged in alphabetical order by author, followed by anonymous publications, official reports etc. There is also a compact index of authors.

**687 To plough or not to plough? A Newar dilemma. Taboo and technology in Kathmandu Valley, Nepal.**

P. Webster. *Pacific Viewpoint*, vol. 22, no. 2 (1981), p. 99-135. bibliog.

The author discusses the well-known taboo on the use of the plough among the Newars of the Kathmandu Valley. He shows that the prohibition is not as universally observed

## **Agriculture**

as is sometimes claimed, and argues that its cause should be seen primarily in the greater suitability for the valley's moist, stone-free clays of the *ku*, the Newars' traditional digging implement. He allows, however, that this materialist reason has been reinforced by the wish of Newar groups to raise their own ritual status through Sanskritization. A note by Michael Allen accepts the author's main argument, but considers that he is wrong to allow status considerations to have even a secondary rôle in his explanation. Webster is also the author of a study of landlord-tenant relations in the Valley following the successful implementation of government limitations on rents in the 1960s: 'Peasants and landlords: land tenure in the Kathmandu Valley', *Pacific Viewpoint*, vol. 24, no. 2 (1983), p. 140-66.

### **688 Agricultural research in Nepal: resource allocation, structure and incentives.**

Ram P. Yadav. International Food Policy Research Institute, 1987. 77p. map. bibliog. (Research Report, 62).

The author estimates that the average one per cent annual rise in crop production since the 1970s is the result of an increase in the area under cultivation rather than an improvement in productivity. He argues that the present programme is underfunded and badly managed, and calls for the establishment of an autonomous body to take charge of all research, and for better personnel policies to motivate research workers.

### **689 Nepal: feudalism and rural formation.**

Sohan Ram Yadav. New Delhi: Cosmo, 1984. 249p. bibliog.

The core of this book is a description of the social and economic condition of the inhabitants of a village panchayat in Parsa district, in the east-central *tarai*. The author presents an array of statistics on land holdings, income, occupational mobility between generations and many other variables. He also outlines the working of panchayat institutions at village level and above and identifies those elected to the village panchayat as 'middle aged and middle class.' He argues that the economic domination of the villagers by a land-holding élite, which has been a feature of the *tarai* since its clearance and settlement by immigrants from India 200 years ago, still continues and that the 1964 land reforms have had only a marginal impact. The élite is able to use access to government funds and to new technology to buttress its position.

### **690 An evaluation of land reform in Nepal.**

M. A. Zaman. Foreword by Ram Bahadur Rawal. Kathmandu: Ministry of Land Reform, 1973. 124p. bibliog.

This much-cited report by the Food and Agriculture Organisation Land Reform Advisor to the Nepal government examines the effects of the 1964 Land Reform Act. He finds that identified land holdings in excess of the ceilings imposed on landlords were smaller than originally estimated, due principally to anticipatory transfers of land to relatives and retainers. Tenancy protection measures appear also to have been partly nullified by the use of concealed lettings. Statistical tables detail the land holding pattern before and after the legislation.

**691 Report to the government of Nepal on land reform and land administration.**

M. A. Zaman. Rome: Food and Agriculture Organisation, 1974. 64p.

Provides a follow-up to the author's report of 1973, *An evaluation of land reform in Nepal* (q.v.). Zaman summarizes the steps already taken, and recommends the imposition of a lower ceiling on land holdings in the *tarai*. The report also calls for speedy acquisition and distribution of surplus land identified under the 1964 Act, improvements to records and administration, and the channelling of compulsory savings to small rather than medium or large farmers.

**Natural history and economic botany of Nepal.**

See item no. 117.

**Resources and population: a study of the Gurungs of Nepal.**

See item no. 238.

**Land and social change in eastern Nepal.**

See item no. 387.

**Le paysan limbu, sa maison et ses champs. (The Limbu peasant, his house and his fields.)**

See item no. 419.

**Mutual assistance in agricultural work among the western Tamangs of Nepal; traditional and new patterns.**

See item no. 425.

**Integrated rural development projects in Nepal: a review.**

See item no. 696.

**Fuel, food or forest? Dilemmas in a Nepali village.**

See item no. 696.

**Buying time: population, trees, Liebig's 'law' and two Himalayan adaptive strategies.**

See item no. 701.

**Adoption of new technology and its social impact on rural communities in Asia (a country study of Nepal).**

See item no. 908.

# Labour and Employment

**692 Employment and development in Nepal.**

Rizwunal Islam, Rahman Khan Azizur, Eddy Lee. Bangkok: International Labour Organisation, Asian Employment Program, 1982. 132p.

Provides an abridged version of a report prepared for Nepal's National Planning Commission, reviewing the available data on population growth, employment and poverty, and examining the prospects for labour intensive agricultural development and for the promotion of industry. The problem of calculating a true unemployment/under-employment rate for rural Nepal is discussed in detail, and it is suggested that out of the total days when the economically active population is available for work, the days when they are not actually working probably amount to between twenty-one and thirty-three per cent in the hills and fourteen to twenty-eight per cent in the *tarai*. The scope for increasing output by increased labour input in various agricultural operations is analysed. Policy recommendations include: the encouragement of paddy production and of the use of organic fertilizers in more labour intensive farming; the maintenance of high grain prices for producers in order to remove the incentive to smuggle produce into India (to be balanced by consumer subsidies where necessary); and the development of small-scale industry serving localized markets.

**693 A survey of employment, income distribution and consumption patterns in Nepal. Results of a survey conducted by the National Planning Commission, Nepal, March-July 1977.**

National Planning Commission. Kathmandu, 1983. 122p.

Presents the results of an important survey which provided the base data used in Nepal's current poverty alleviation programme. Similar, but more up-to-date information is now provided by the Nepal Rastra Bank's *Multipurpose household budget survey*, based on sample surveys, taken in twenty-three districts in 1984-5 and published in 1988.

**694 Patterns of migration and labour force in Kathmandu.**

Bhawani Shankar. M.Phil. thesis, Cairo Demographic Centre. Cairo, 1980. [n.p.]

This thesis is based on a survey of nearly 1500 Kathmandu households undertaken in July 1979. The survey shows that, for this sample, of the fifteen per cent migrant population in the capital thirteen per cent are internal and two per cent international migrants. A large proportion of internal migrants are absorbed in services, especially those connected with the government, whereas international migrants are found to specialize in trade and skills. Labour force participation rates vary with age and the unemployment rate is around five per cent. The labour force replacement rate is found to be quite high, indicating a high ratio of new entrants to those who withdraw from the labour force.

**695 Population, labour force and employment.**

Yadab S. Thapa. In: *Nepal's economy: an overview*. Edited by Mahesh Banskota, Nirmal K. Bista. Kathmandu: Centre for Economic Development and Administration, 1980. p. 103-55.

This article gives a brief outline of the population situation, examining the extent of unemployment and underemployment and of action now being taken to tackle the problems.

**Population monograph of Nepal.**

See item no. 242.

**Population growth and employment opportunities in Nepal.**

See item no. 246.

**Population of Nepal.**

See item no. 261.

**Mutual assistance in agricultural work among the western Tamangs of Nepal; traditional and new patterns.**

See item no. 425.

**A Nepalese hill village and Indian employment.**

See item no. 506.

**Peasants and workers in Nepal.**

See item no. 598.

**Nepal in crisis.**

See item no. 599.

**Nepal: a state of poverty.**

See item no. 627.

**Strategy for labour intensive agricultural development.**

See item no. 659.

# Environment

## Problems and conservation

### 696 **Fuel, food or forest? Dilemmas in a Nepali village.**

Deepak Bajracharya. *World Development*, vol. 11, no. 12 (Dec. 1983), p. 1057-74. map. bibliog.

In this condensed presentation of the argument of his Ph.D. thesis (University of Sussex, Brighton, England, 1981), the author analyses deforestation in Pangma panchayat in the eastern hills, and suggests that clearance for food production rather than for fuel is the primary cause of the problem. Improving agricultural productivity is therefore the key to a solution.

### 697 **Nepal Himalaya and change.**

D. D. Batt. In: *The Himalaya: aspects of change*. Edited by J. S. Lall in association with A. D. Moddie. Delhi: Oxford University Press, 1981. p. 253-77.

Presents a brief survey of the environment in the widest sense, concentrating on geography, wild life, erosion, hydro-electric potential and fodder provision. The author also looks at social change, taking as an example the village of Pallachaundly in Baitadi district in far-western Nepal, which has been badly affected by ecological changes. Also included are some comments on changes in mores, in particular the abandonment by some younger Brahmans of the stricter dietary restrictions, and also on migration in the hills.

### 698 **Land degradation and society.**

Piers Blaikie, Harold Brookfield. London; New York: Methuen, 1987. 295p. maps. bibliog.

In this study, originating from papers presented at an Australian National University workshop in 1984, the editors argue that land degradation is not the result simply of increasing population, or of any single factor, but that it should be seen in geographical

and historical perspective. In a case study of Nepal (p. 37-48), they suggest that the erosion problem is not quite as severe as suggested in works such as Eric P. Eckholm's *Losing ground* (q.v.), and that observers have mistakenly assumed that the extreme degradation around some principal roads is typical of the whole country. They use the Nepal data to develop a 'regional political ecology' approach to the problem, and conclude that poverty and poor land management are locked in a mutually reinforcing circle. A related title by Piers Blaikie is *The political economy of soil erosion in developing countries* (London: Longman, 1985). For a brief, technical account of the erosion process, see B. Carson, *Erosion and sedimentation processes in the Nepalese Himalaya* (Kathmandu: International Centre for Integrated Mountain Development, 1985 (ICIMOD Occasional Paper, no. 1)). Other contributors to this study are Bryant Allen, Robert Crittenden, William Clarke, John Morrison, Narpat Jodha, Judy Messer, Lesley Potter, David Seckler, Vaclav Smil and Mike Stocking.

**699 The management of mountain eco-systems.**

Department of Soil and Water Conservation. Introduction by Hans Christoph. *Journal of the Nepal Research Centre*, vol. 2-3 (1978-9), p. 1-273. 2 maps. bibliog.

Presents the proceedings of a seminar held jointly in November 1977 by the Department of Soil and Water Conservation, the Nepal Research Centre and the Heidelberg South Asia Institute. Twenty-one papers cover both technical and socio-economic aspects of the problem, including the difficulty of getting local people to identify with government conservation efforts. Also included in this publication are opening remarks by M. D. Joshi, a welcome address by Heimo Rau, an inauguration speech by Hira Lal Vishvakarma and a speech by Karl Maes.

**700 Losing ground.**

Eric P. Eckholm. Foreword by Maurice F. Strong, introductory note by Lester R. Brown. New York: W. W. Norton, for Worldwatch Institute, in association with UN Environment Programme, 1976. 233p. bibliog.

This book was also published by Pergamon Press in 1978 as part of its Oxford Geographies Series. Though criticized as unnecessarily apocalyptic, it remains a classic exposition of the problem of environmental degradation, ranging over most of the globe and over human history from ancient Mesopotamia onwards. Chapter five presents Nepal as the most vivid example of the degradation of a mountain environment.

**701 Buying time: population, trees, Liebig's 'law' and two Himalayan adaptive strategies.**

John T. Hitchcock. In: *Himalaya: écologie-ethnologie. Sèvres-Paris, 7-10 décembre 1976. Colloques internationaux du centre national de la recherche scientifique, no. 268*. Paris: Centre Nationale de la Recherche Scientifique, 1977. pp. 443-51.

Presents a case study of the Bhujel, a Magar group living on the south side of the Dhaulagiri massif. The author describes how a pattern of migration through different ecological zones, with shifting cultivation, was ended after 1920, when the forest zone became the property of the communities in the lower valleys. The Bhujel established permanent winter settlements and undertook forest clearance to extend the area under

## **Environment. Problems and conservation**

cultivation. The pressure from their growing population now threatens to destroy forest cover completely. The author recommends research to discover a substitute fuel for firewood.

### **702 The Himalayan dilemma – reconciling development and conservation.**

Jack D. Ives, Bruno Messerli. Foreword by Maurice F. Strong.

London; New York: The United Nations University, Routledge, 1989.

295p. maps. bibliog.

This study draws upon work by experts from many countries and considers the problems of the region as a whole, though Nepal is given particular attention. The authors argue against some of the more alarmist views of the situation, and also against rushing into large-scale, technological solutions which may in fact make matters worse. There is an extensive bibliography. The book is in large part based on material presented at a conference on the Himalaya-Ganges problem held in Mohonk, USA, in 1986. The proceedings of this are published in *Mountain Research and Development*, vol. 7, no. 3 (August 1987), p. 181-344.

### **703 Nepal Himalaya: geo-ecological perspectives.**

Edited by S. C. Joshi. Martin J. Haigh, Y. P. S. Pangtey, D. R. Joshi,

D. D. Dani. Naini Tal. India: Himalayan Research Group, 1986.

506p. bibliog.

This volume is intended primarily to assist scientists and technologists working on development projects in acquiring an integrated perspective on the region. It includes forty papers on the area and its problems, some focused narrowly and others treating the wider perspective. The quality of the writing varies considerably, but much is accessible to the non-specialist. Two particularly interesting contributions are Dani's 'Population and society in Nepal: an overview' (q.v.), and William James H. Ramsay's 'Erosion problems in the Nepal Himalaya, an overview' (p. 359-95).

### **704 Forests and their destruction in the Himalayas of Nepal.**

Jochen Martens. Kathmandu: Nepal Research Centre, 1983. 70p.

bibliog. maps.

The author advocates the use of certain conservation methods already practised by the Sherpas and the Thakalis. This study has also been published in *Plant research and development*, vol. 15 (1982), p. 66-96.

### **705 Status of environmental knowledge in Nepal: annotated bibliography.**

National Committee for Man and the Biosphere. Kathmandu, 1984.

200p. (MAB/Nepal Publication Series, 2-3).

An updating of the first issue published in 1984, this bibliography includes 392 items in English or Nepali, covering agriculture, animal ecology, energy, environmental management, forest ecology, geology, human ecology, mountain ecology, nature conservation, rural development, soil ecology, resource development, and watersheds.



**706 Renewable energy resources in Nepal: proceedings of the workshop seminar organised by RECAST with SATA on 1-4 April 1981 at Kathmandu.**

Kathmandu: Research Centre for Applied Science and Technology, 1981. 277p. bibliog.

Presents the report of a seminar organized by the Research Centre for Applied Science and Technology (Kathmandu) in collaboration with the Swiss Federal Institute of Technology on 4 April 1981. The report covers the utilization of resources alternative to forest resources, e.g. bio-gas, hydro-power, solar energy, windpower and geothermal resources. Twenty-two papers are given by scholars involved in the energy centre, and specific recommendations are provided for each of the above energy categories. Recommendations are also made for better utilization of renewable energy resources for the benefit of small farmers in Nepal.

**707 Man versus mountain – the destruction of the Himalayan ecosystem.**

Hans Christoph Rieger. In: *The Himalaya: aspects of change*. Edited by J. S. Lall, A. D. Moddie. New Delhi: India International Centre with Oxford University Press, 1981. p. 351-75.

This paper considers the whole Himalayan range from Kumaon to east Nepal (i.e. the Ganges catchment area) and describes the processes of degradation systematically, providing flow diagrams for the natural erosion processes, for those resulting from man's activities in the hills, and for the effects of hill-*tarai* migration. A mathematical model of the process is set up. The author argues that it is now conceivable that the decline of the whole range into a mountain desert is inevitable, but that an attempt to halt it must act on several fronts at once and a beginning should be made with pilot projects in selected areas. Among reasons identified for the population's apparent lack of concern are a view of the environment as purely the responsibility of a divine being, a lack of collective organization to ensure that one individual's sacrifice of short-term gain is matched by that of his fellows, and a widespread distrust of government.

**708 Mountain environment and development. A collection of papers published on the occasion of the 20th anniversary of the Swiss Association for Technical Assistance in Nepal (SATA).**

Kathmandu: Tribhuvan University Press, 1976. 214p.

This collection of papers from many hands includes some especially valuable contributions on energy resources.

**709 Natural hazards and man-made impacts in the Nepal Himalaya.**

Chandra K. Sharma. Bishal Nagar, Nepal: Pushpa Sharma, 1988. 142p. maps. bibliog.

The author discusses various natural hazards and the ways in which human activity has increased the danger from them. Coverage includes earthquakes, glacial lake outbursts, rainfall, floods, drought and landslides. Also included are figures for loss of life and property in 1983-84, and records of earthquakes from 1255 onwards. An earlier work by the author on one aspect of the problem is *Land slides and soil erosion in Nepal* (Kathmandu: Sangeeta Sharma, 1976).

**Environment. Problems and conservation**

- 710 **Uncertainty on a Himalayan scale. An institutional theory of environmental perception and a strategic framework for the sustainable development of the Himalaya.**

Michael Thompson, Michael Warburton, T. Hatley. London: Milton Ash Editions (Ethnographica), 1986. 162p. bibliog.

Presents a survey of the whole Himalayan region, including discussion of the dispute over just how serious the problem really is. An abbreviated presentation of the argument is given in Thompson and Warburton's 'Uncertainty on a Himalayan scale', *Mountain Research and Development*, vol. 5, no. 2 (May 1985), p. 115-135. The article includes a map, bibliography, and summaries in English, French and German.

- 711 **Bikas-binas? Development-destruction? The change in life and environment of the Himalaya. A reader for concerned people and tourists about ecology, so-called development and tourism.**

Edited by Ludmilla Tüting, Kunda Dixit. Foreword by Christoph von Furer-Haimendorf. Kathmandu: Geobuch-Munich, 1986. 400p. maps. bibliog.

Comprises a collection of sixty-three short pieces by many different authors, whose standpoint is made clear by the book's title. As well as general environmental degradation, topics covered include conservation of endangered species and of cultural heritage, the dangers from inappropriate development projects, and the often-negative impact of tourism both on the environment and on the local people. There is particularly strong condemnation of the lack of regard by some trekking companies and mountaineering expeditions for the safety of their porters.

**Nepal – the kingdom in the Himalayas.**

See item no. 10.

**The population dynamics of Nepal.**

See item no. 228.

**Resources and population: a study of the Gurungs of Nepal.**

See item no. 238.

**Patterns of change in the Nepal Himalaya.**

See item no. 251.

**Nepal in crisis.**

See item no. 599.

**Earth, man, trees: development aid in Nepal.**

See item no. 664.

# Town planning

**712 The physical development plan for the Kathmandu Valley.**

Department of Housing and Physical Planning, Ministry of Public Works and Transport. Forewords by Rudra Prasad Giri, B. B. Pradhan, preface by Krishna Raj Pandey. Kathmandu, 1969. 196p. 59 maps.

Although inevitably now out of date in many ways, this large-format book, covering both urban areas and the Valley's villages, is still a valuable reference work. A team of Nepalese and UN experts present a detailed survey of land use, economic activity, and preservation efforts, together with an inventory of villages within the valley, accompanied by specific development proposals.

**713 Ordered space concepts and functions in a town of the Kathmandu Valley.**

Niels Gutschow, Bernhard Kölver. Wiesbaden, GFR: Franz Steiner, 1975. 59p. maps. bibliog. (Nepal Research Center Publications, 1).

This influential study examines the third city of the Kathmandu Valley, Bhaktapur, which has been relatively untouched by modernization and preserves much of the pattern of a medieval Hindu city. The authors argue that the ground plan, especially the relative location of cult centres and of areas inhabited by particular castes are physical representations of the community's values and in particular of the importance of hierarchy and ritual. They believe that the existing town plan expresses and reinforces the citizens' sense of belonging to an integrated whole, and that future development projects should be carefully planned to avoid undermining this. Drawings and photographs are included.

**714 Socio-economic perspectives of Kathmandu.**

Tulashi R. Joshi. *Asian Profile*, vol. 3, no. 2 (April 1975), map. bibliog.

The author presents a sketch of the city, its inhabitants and structure, complaining that growth has been haphazard and without proper planning. He acknowledges that there is no squatter problem, as in many other Asian cities, and that the main built-up area has not experienced population growth faster than the national average. However, he sees cause for concern in the flocking to the Kathmandu area of the more advantaged from other parts of the country and in the expanding population of nominally rural areas near the capital.

**715 Kathmandu Valley town planning and its impact.**

Rajendra Suwal, Bhuban Bajra Bajracharya, Chandra Bahadur Shrestha, Umesh Bahadur Malla. Kathmandu: Centre for Economic Development and Administration, 1979. 193p. 8 maps.

This report was prepared at the request of the Kathmandu Valley Town Development Committee (KVTDC). It reviews the history of land use in the Valley, discusses previous planning attempts, and analyses the work of the KVTDC itself. The authors argue that previous planning has been piecemeal and largely ineffective, and that town planning should in future be integrated with regional planning, the transport aspect

## **Environment. Town planning**

should be included, and a definite limit to town growth fixed. The major recommendation is for the establishment of a Kathmandu Valley Development Authority with executive powers, to take the place of the KVTDC's advisory and coordinating rôle, or, as a less preferable alternative, for the adoption of the KVTDC's limited rôle by the Ministry of Physical Planning.

### **716 The historic cities of Asia – Kathmandu.**

Chandra B. Shrestha, Prem K. Khattry, Bharat Sharma, Hamid Ansari.  
Foreword by Khadga Bikram Shah. Kathmandu: Centre for Nepal  
and Asian Studies, 1986. 185p. bibliog. 10 maps.

A modified version of a report prepared for UNESCO, this book traces the growth of the city and examines its present condition, including population distribution, economic activity, planning and local administration. A short concluding chapter warns of possible future dangers from rising unemployment as people continue to migrate into the capital from the rest of the country. Though surprisingly vague on the relationship between the Kathmandu Valley Town Development Committee and the Nagar Panchayat (town council), the book gives a valuable account of the history of the town and of present-day urban culture.

### **Urban growth and urbanization in least developed countries: the experience of Nepal, 1952-71.**

*See* item no. 63.

### **Kirtipur – a Newar community in Nepal – development in debate.**

*See* item no. 601.

### **Bhaktapur: a town changing.**

*See* item no. 604.

### **The anthropology of development in Nepal: a review article on foreign aid projects in the Nepal Valley.**

*See* item no. 612.

### **Kathmandu Valley: the preservation of physical environment and cultural heritage – protective inventory.**

*See* item no. 827.

### **Nepal cultural heritage. Master plan for the conservation of the cultural heritage of the Kathmandu Valley.**

*See* item no. 834.

# Transport and Communications

## Postal systems

### 717 **The classic postage stamps of Nepal.**

Wolfgang C. Hellrigl, Frank Vignola. Foreword by Harrison D. S. Haverbeck. Bozen, Italy: Nepal and Tibet Philatelic Study Circle, 1984. 215p. bibliog.

This elaborate study of postage stamp issues between 1881 and 1930 includes photographs and detailed discussion of settings. A full, annotated bibliography lists earlier work on the subject, including Haverbeck's *The postage stamps of Nepal* (New York: Collectors' Club, 1962 (Handbook 14)). Hellrigl has co-authored with Collin Hepper *The native postmarks of Nepal* (March, England: Anglia County Press, for Nepal Philatelic Study Circle, 1978), which includes discussion of the cancellation marks used on stamps fixed to telegraphic forms as well as on ordinary letters. Another recent work on Nepalese philately is Hepper's *The Sri Pasupati issues of Nepal* (Peterborough, England: Peterborough Printcentre, for Nepal and Tibet Philatelic Study Circle, 1983).

### 718 **The postage stamps of Nepal.**

Tek Bahadur Khatri. Foreword by J.L.Satyal. Kathmandu: Sharada Kumari, 1973. 2nd ed. 176p. bibliog.

Just over half of this book is devoted to a general introduction to the country, including discussion of mass communications (written very much from a government point of view) and the abominable snowman. The philatelic section includes an account of the development of the postal system, a list of issues from 1881 to May 1973, and a second list with technical details for 1963 to 1973. Details of the first three postcard issues and names and addresses of twenty members of the Nepal Philatelic Society are also given.

# Transport

**719 Comparative evaluation of road construction techniques in Nepal.**

Hans C. Rieger, Binayak Bhadra. Foreword by Madhukar Shumsher J.B. Rana. Kathmandu: Centre for Economic Development and Administration, 1978. 257p.

Offers a comparison of five road-building projects in terms both of capital and labour costs per unit of length, and of organization methods adopted. The book is somewhat technical in places, and attempts to compare costs on the basis of 'shadow prices' (i.e. market prices adjusted to reflect social value more accurately). Roads considered include sections of the east-west highway (Mahendra Rajmarg) constructed respectively by the UK, the Soviet Union and India; the Chinese-built Prithvi Rajmarg, linking Pokhara and Kathmandu; and the Dhangarhi-Dandeldhura road constructed jointly by the US and Nepal. The book includes detailed recommendations for policy changes and for further investigations.

**720 Road construction in the Nepal Himalaya: the experience from the Lamosangu-Jiri road project.**

Urs Schaffner. Foreword by Colin Rosser. Kathmandu: International Centre for Integrated Mountain Development, 1987. 67p. 2 maps. bibliog. (ICIMOD Occasional Papers, 8).

Offers an account of the technical and organizational problems encountered in building the Lamosangu-Jiri road, a project carried out by the Nepal government with Swiss capital and technical assistance. The author emphasizes in particular the problem of ensuring adequate water drainage, and the importance of winning local people's cooperation. Details of construction costs are given, and the account is illustrated with colour photographs and diagrams.

**721 The politics of development: transportation policy in Nepal.**

Aran Schloss. Foreword by Leo E. Rose. Lanham, Maryland: University Press of America, in association with the Center for South and Southeast Asia Studies, University of California, Berkeley, California, 1983. 178p. 3 maps. bibliog. (Monograph Series, no. 22).

Based on field-work conducted in 1975-76, this study examines the development of the transport sector in Nepal up to 1975 and its relation to the dynamics of internal political and administrative processes as well as to pressures from aid donors. The book includes a comparison of the methods and performance in road-building of China, the USSR, India, the USA and the UK.

**722 Transport sector – a review.**

Ratna Lall Shrestha. In: *Nepal's economy – an overview*. Edited by Mahesh Banskota, Nirmal K. Bista. Kathmandu: Centre for Economic Development and Administration, 1980. p. 233-73.

This survey covers ropeways, railways, roads and air transport. Amongst statistics presented are those for road mileage constructed to 1977/78, vehicle registration, and routes flown by Royal Nepal Airways Corporation. The author stresses the lack of economic feasibility in many proposals for roads. A full-length general survey is:

## **Transport and Communications. Transport**

Bhuban Bajra Bajracharya et al., *Transport and communication linkages in Nepal*. Kathmandu: Centre for Economic Development and Administration, 1981.

### **723 Air transport in Nepalese perspective. A case study of R.N.A.C.**

P. N. Vaidya. Foreword by Mohan M. Sainju. Kathmandu: Bina Vaidya, 1987. 79p.

This brief account by one of Royal Nepal Airlines Corporation's senior managers looks at the national airline's development and recommends that it put greater effort into encouraging tourism from both outside and within the South Asian region. A statistical appendix is included.

### **Nepal – the kingdom in the Himalayas.**

See item no. 10.

### **Nepal in crisis.**

See item no. 599.

### **Eath, man, trees: development aid in Nepal.**

See item no. 664.

# Mountaineering and Sports

**724 Faces of Everest.**

H. P. S. Ahluwalia. Foreword by H. C. Sarin, introductions by Captain M. S. Kohli, Edmund Hillary. New Delhi: Vikas, 1978. 238p. 13 maps.

This account, by a member of the successful 1965 Indian expedition, chronicles all attempts on Everest up to 1977. The appendices include detailed meteorological information for the mountain throughout the year, with weather maps and lists of expeditions and of accidents on the mountain. This 'coffee-table' format work is illustrated with colour photographs.

**725 Sivalaya: explorations of the 8000-metre peaks of the Himalaya.**

Louis C. Baume. Reading, England: West Col, 1978; Seattle, Washington: The Mountaineers, 1979. 2nd ed. 348p. maps. bibliog.

Provides the best guide available to the literature of Himalayan exploration. There are two principal sections: a brief, chronological account of expeditions to each of the fourteen 8,000-metre peaks in the Himalaya-Karakoram, with a similar chapter for the glacier which links the four Karakoram 8,000-metre peaks; and a bibliography on Himalayan exploration generally, which unfortunately does not give the publishers of works cited. The accounts for each peak include a sketch map and details of relevant sheet maps, followed by a note on principal sources of information, and a shortlist of other relevant books. An introductory chapter to the whole book sets the geographical and historic scene, including a discussion of all known names for Everest. The supplement in the 2nd edition goes up to 1978.

**726 Annapurna: a woman's place.**

Arlene Blum. Foreword by Maurice Herzog. St. Albans, England; New York: Granada, 1984. 2nd ed. 258p. bibliog. 2 maps.

Presents an account, by one of its members, of the 1978 American Women's Himalayan Expedition to Annapurna, which reached the summit, although subsequently



two of its members were killed. The expedition was a self-consciously feminist venture, which made an unsuccessful attempt to involve Sherpa women as climbers.

### 727 **Annapurna south face.**

Chris Bonington. London: Cassell, 1971; Harmondsworth, England: Penguin, 1973. Reprinted 1977. 334p. 2 maps.

Describes the 1970 ascent which was accompanied by a television crew. Its success was marred by the death of one of the climbers. The book explains the technical difficulty of the climb and also gives personal sketches of the expedition members and how they were selected. Kelvin Kerr supplies a prefatory account of the people of Nepal, and appendices give technical and logistical details of the climb. The work is illustrated by excellent colour photographs.

### 728 **The Everest years: a climber's life.**

Chris Bonington. London: Hodder & Stoughton, 1986. 256p.

This book was published as a Coronet paperback in 1987 (295p). It offers an account of the author's climbing experience, mostly in the Himalaya, from 1961 up to the successful Norwegian Everest expedition of 1985. Although going over some of the same ground as his two earlier books *Everest the hard way* (London: Hodder & Stoughton, 1976) and *Annapurna, south face* (q.v.), it provides a more intimate account.

### 729 **The hard years.**

Joe Brown. Harmondsworth, England: Penguin, 1975. 252p.

This autobiography of one of the leading British mountaineers of his generation includes an account of the 1955 ascent of Kanchanjanga.

### 730 **To the third pole. The history of the high Himalaya.**

G. O. Dyhrenfurth. Contribution by Erwin Schneider, translated from the German by Hugh Merrick. London: T. Werner Laurie, 1955. 233p. maps.

The author deals principally with peaks over 8,000 metres, together with the three known summits which are below that height but above 26,000 feet. He gives a good, technical description of the peaks themselves, including details of geology and nomenclature, with brief accounts of expeditions. He is critical of the leadership of Eric Shipton and Henry Tilman in the 1935 and 1938 attempts on Everest. A table of 7,000 metre peaks climbed or unsuccessfully attempted is also included.

### 731 **The Everest-Lhotse adventure.**

Albert Eggler. Translated from the German by Hugh Merrick. London: Allen & Unwin, 1957. 222p. 2 maps.

Provides an account, by the expedition leader, of a Swiss team's ascent of Everest in 1956 and of the hitherto-unclimbed Lhotse peak, which is the fourth highest in the world and lies across the south col from Everest itself.

## **Mountaineering and Sports**

### **732 The ascent of Dhaulagiri.**

Max Eiselin. Translated from the German by E. Noel Bowman.  
London: Oxford University Press. 1960. 159p.

This account was written by the expedition leader of the 1960 ascent of Dhaulagiri, until then the world's highest unclimbed peak. The expedition was the first to use a plane to reach base camp: their Pilatus Porter glacier plane set a world record by taking off and landing at 5,700 metres in the north col, before its eventual crash.

### **733 Makalu.**

J. Franco. Translated from the French by Denis N. Morin. London:  
Jonathan Cape, 1957. 236p. maps.

Describes the French expedition from autumn 1954 to spring 1955, which made the first successful ascent of Makalu (8463 metres), about sixteen kilometres south-east of Everest. The narrative includes an account of the expedition's journey to the mountain from Calcutta, via Biratnagar, Dharan, Dhankuta and the Arun valley.

### **734 Round Kangchenjunga: a narrative of mountain travel and exploration.**

Douglas W. Freshfield. London: Edward Arnold, 1903. 367p. 3 maps.  
bibliog. Reprinted, with an introduction by Harka Gurung.  
Kathmandu: Ratna Pustak Bhandar, 1979.

This classic of Himalayan exploration, provides a description of a journey around the Kanchanjanga massif in 1889, starting from Darjeeling and ascending to 20,000 feet. Appendices include extracts from the account of his journey into Tibet in 1879 by Sarat Chandra Das, the celebrated Bengali explorer and student of Tibetan language and religion (Das's visit of 1881-82 is described in his *Journey to Lhasa and central Tibet* (q.v.)). Mrs Le Mesurier contributes a section on Tibetan curios collected in Ladakh, while E. J. Garwood comments on the geological structure and physical features of Sikkim and on the maps.

### **735 Annapurna to Dhaulagiri: a decade of mountaineering in Nepal Himalaya, 1950-1960.**

Harka Gurung. Kathmandu: Department of Information, 1968. 121p.  
map. bibliog.

Written by Nepal's leading geographer, this work is a history of mountaineering achievement from Maurice Herzog's conquest of Annapurna in 1950 to the international ascent of Dhaulagiri in 1960. Among other expeditions included in this book are ones to Annapurna II, Api, Himalchuli, Ganesh Himal and Jugal Himal as well as several to Everest.

### **736 Annapurna: conquest of the first 8,000 metre peak.**

Maurice Herzog. Preface by Lucien Devies, translated from the French by Janet Adam Smith. London: Jonathan Cape; New York: Dutton, 1952. 288p. Reprinted, with an introduction by Chris Bonington.  
London: Triad/Paladin, 1986.

In this classic of mountaineering literature, Herzog tells the story of the 1950 French expedition. The book was largely dictated by the author while he was recovering in hospital from the severe frost-bite which was the price of his success.

**737 High adventure.**

Edmund Hillary. London: Hodder & Stoughton, 1955. 224p. maps.

Hillary describes the 1951 British Everest expedition and the discovery of the southern route to the summit, the Swiss 1952 expedition and the British attempt on Cho Oyu the same year, before coming to the 1953 expedition during which he and Tenzing Norgay reached the summit of Everest. Photographs taken from the summit are included. Informally written, the work captures well the climbers' combination of nervousness, discomfort and exhilaration. Maps are provided by A. Spark and illustrations by George Djurkovic.

**738 High in the thin cold air.**

Edmund Hillary, Desmond Doig. London: Hodder & Stoughton, 1962. 287p. 2 maps.

Recounts the 'Himalayan Scientific and Mountaineering Expedition' of 1960-61. In the first part ('In search of snowmen'), Desmond Doig, the expedition's press reporter, describes Sherpa culture and the investigations into the yeti legend which yielded negative results. In the second ('Our life in the clouds'), Hillary, the expedition leader, gives an account of the ascent of Amodabalam, an attempt on Makalu, and a project to establish a school in Khumjung valley at the local childrens' request.

**739 The ascent of Everest.**

John Hunt. London: Hodder & Stoughton, 1955. 2nd ed., 300p.

First published in 1953, this book has a foreword by HRH the Duke of Edinburgh, a chapter on the final ascent by Edmund Hillary, a diary of the expedition by Wilfrid Noyce and an appendix on physiology and medicine by Griffith Pugh and Michael Ward. It was published in the US as *The Conquest of Everest* (New York: Dutton, 1954). The official account of the first ascent of the mountain in 1953, it was written by the expedition leader and by one of the two climbers who actually reached the summit. Some details in Hillary's account are disputed by his partner, Tenzing Norgay, in his *Man of Everest* (q.v.).

**740 Our Everest adventure – the pictorial history from Kathmandu to the summit.**

John Hunt. Leicester, England: Brockhampton, 1954. 128p.

A much shortened version of *The ascent of Everest* (q.v.), illustrated with black-and-white photographs. Edmund Hillary contributes a section on the final ascent.

**741 Abode of snow.**

Kenneth Mason. London: Rupert-Hart Davis, 1955. 372p. 15 maps.

Reprinted, with an introduction by Doug Scott, London: Diadem Books; Seattle, Washington: The Mountaineers, 1987.

This classic account was written by a former head of the Survey of India who later became Professor of Geography at Oxford, and who had considerable personal experience of mountain surveying. A general description of the mountains and of early exploration is followed by a detailed history of climbing expeditions down to 1954. Appendices give the heights of all peaks in the Himalaya and Karakoram over 25,000 feet, an explanation of how heights are determined, and a chronological summary.

## Mountaineering and Sports

### 742 **Man of Everest: the autobiography of Tenzing told to James Ramsey Ulman.**

Tenzing Norgay. London: Hodder & Stoughton, 1955. 320p. 2 maps.

This autobiography was also published in the US as *Tiger of the snows: the autobiography of Tenzing of Everest* (New York: Putnam, 1955. 294p. 2 maps). It was written with the help of an American journalist, and has less detailed climbing accounts than the books by Edmund Hillary and John Hunt (q.v.), but gives a fascinating picture of the author's transformation from ordinary Sherpa to international celebrity. The author deals in sorrow rather than in anger with the pressures he came under for political reasons, including attempts to make him declare himself a Nepalese rather than an Indian, or to make statements critical of the British members of the expedition. He also contests without rancour parts of Hillary's account in *The ascent of Everest* (q.v.) which suggest he was the weaker partner in the final stages of the ascent, and he reveals that it was Hillary who actually stepped first onto the summit.

### 743 **Climbing the fish's tail.**

Wilfred Noyce. London: Heinemann, 1958. 150p. maps.

Provides an account of the 1957 ascent of Machhapuchhare (or 'fish tail'), the mountain in the Annapurna group which overlooks Pokhara. The expedition got within 150 feet of the summit, but had to turn back because of bad weather and an ice field above them.

### 744 **Seven mountain travel books.**

Henry William Tilman. Introduction and note by Jim Perrin. London: Diadem; Seattle, Washington: The Mountaineers, 1983. 896p. maps. bibliog.

This volume, published after Tilman's death and introduced by a personal friend, is a reprinting of seven of the author's books, which virtually constitute an autobiography for the years 1919 to 1952, and include accounts of expeditions to East Africa and the Himalaya, as well as of Tilman's service in the Second World War. The Nepal sections are *Everest 1938*, an account of the attempt on the mountain under his leadership, and *Nepal Himalaya* (q.v.). The book includes a summary chronology of Tilman's travels and an appreciation by Perrin of his literary skill.

### 745 **Kanchenjunga.**

John William Tucker. Foreword by Sir John Hunt. London: Elek, 1955. p. 224. 4 maps.

Provides an account by a member of the team of the 1954 British expedition to Kanchanjanga led by J. W. R. Kempe and G. C. Lewis. The party did not manage to reach the summit, but identified a possible route which was used the following year in the successful attempt by Charles Evans' team. The book has a short introductory section on earlier expeditions.

### 746 **The epic of Mount Everest.**

Francis Younghusband. London: Edwin Arnold, 1926. 319p. Reprinted, New Delhi: Cosmo, 1986.

This account of the Everest expeditions of 1921 and 1924 was written for the Mount Everest Committee, and includes a low key description of the disappearance of

George Leigh Mallory and Andrew Irvine, together with the address given at the memorial service for them in London. The title of the 1986 reprint was *The Everest – the epic of great Mount Everest*.

**747 Everest: the challenge.**

Francis Younghusband. London: Thomas Nelson, 1936. 244p. 4 maps.

Describes attempts on Everest to 1936, with some detail of ascents of other peaks. In the second part of the work Younghusband, who believed that he had experienced a mystical experience during the Lhasa expedition of 1904, discusses the spiritual affect of the mountains, giving details of the stories of two Indian mystics, and advocating the setting-up of 'spiritual centres' in the Himalaya.

**Nepal and the Gurkhas.**

See item no. 17.

**Himalayan wanderer: the reminiscences of Brigadier-General C. G. Bruce, C.B., late Gurkha rifles.**

See item no. 29.

**Diversions of an Indian political.**

See item no. 41.

**Tibet and Nepal.**

See item no. 44.

**Nepal Himalaya.**

See item no. 56.

**Mountains of the gods.**

See item no. 61.

**Exploring the Himalayas.**

See item no. 62.

**Formation, population and exploration of the Mount Everest region.**

See item no. 66.

**The two-year mountain. A Nepal journey.**

See item no. 98.

# Mass Media

## 748 **The press in Nepal, 1951-1974.**

Lok Raj Baral. *Contributions to Nepalese Studies*, vol. 2 (Feb. 1975).  
p. 169-83. bibliog.

The author takes a rather gloomy view of the press in Nepal, arguing that the private sector is hampered by government pressure and intervention, including the giving and withholding of subsidy, and by the predominance of the two government-run newspapers. He nevertheless looks to the king as a possible instigator of reform. The author's complaints are still heard today, although since 1979 the ability of newspapers to mount an effective opposition to government policies has increased.

## 749 **Far Eastern Economic Review.**

Hong Kong: Review Publishing. 1946- . weekly.

This news magazine covers South Asia as well as South-east Asia and the Pacific rim and is available world-wide. Articles on major political and economic developments in Nepal are carried from time to time. A summary of each year's events in the country is also included in the *Asia Yearbook* published annually by the same company.

## 750 **Gorkhapatra.**

Kathmandu: Gorkhapatra Corporation, 1901- . daily.

This government-owned newspaper is the country's largest. Although founded by Maharaja Dev Shamsheer Rana with the avowed intention of giving the people a platform for their views, it is essentially a government-mouthpiece, with extensive coverage of official pronouncements and speeches by pro-régime politicians. Foreign news is generally translated from agency reports. The paper is written in a highly Sanskritized and complex Nepali, which is difficult even for many Nepalese readers. There is a considerable overlap in contents with the English-language *The Rising Nepal* (q.v.). Since 1960, *Gorkhapatra* has been published daily.

751 **Himal.**

Kathmandu: Himal Associates, 1988- . bimonthly.

This news magazine covers the entire Himalayan region, from the Pakistan Hindu Kush through Kashmir, Ladakh, Nepal and Tibet to Sikkim, Bhutan and the Indian north-east. It provides non-specialist but intelligent reporting of development and ecological issues, including brief reviews of recent books and provides one of the best ways for anyone with an interest in these issues to keep in touch. Copies of *Himal* can be ordered from: P.O. Box 42, Lalitpur, Nepal; B. Welsh, Holos Centre, 139-A, Battersea High Street, London SW1; and 4, South Pinehurst Avenue 6A, New York, NY 10033.

752 **The publishing world in Nepal.**

Madhav Lal Karmacharya. Kathmandu: Laligurans, 1985. bibliog.

Presents a collection of previously published and slightly re-edited papers. The papers include: a history of printing in Nepal; a survey of the book publishing industry and its problems and prospects; details of laws regulating the press and publishing; and information on professional organizations. Appendices provide: summaries of Nepal copyright law (protecting publications only inside the country as Nepal is not a signatory to the Berne Convention on copyright); a concise version of the Industrial Enterprises Act; information on the Nepal Book Development Committee; and statistics of newspapers and journals published in different districts of the kingdom.

753 **Mass-media, tradition and change (an overview of change in Nepal).**

B. C. Malla. *Contributions to Nepalese Studies*, vol. 10, nos. 1-2 (1982), p. 169-83. bibliog.

Surveys the whole media field, including radio, film and music recording as well as the press (the article predates the introduction of television in Nepal). The author emphasizes the dominance of the government sector, and the need to orientate mass communications to development goals.

754 **Nepal Press Digest.**

Kathmandu: Nepal Press Digest, 1956- . weekly.

Includes the principal news items from both the government controlled *Gorkhapatra* (q.v.) and *The Rising Nepal* (q.v.) and the privately owned press, both vernacular and English language. Because the official media either ignore the activities of the political parties, or are hostile in their coverage, the *Digest*, or the fuller *Report*, provide the most reliable source for following political developments. Copies of *Nepal Press Digest* are available from the publisher, Regmiville, Lazimpat, Kathmandu.

755 **Nepal Press Report.**

Kathmandu: Regmi Research, 1985- . daily.

This publication provides extensive summary translations of news reports, editorials and special articles from the non-English-language press. Copies are available from the publisher, Regmiville, Lazimpat, Kathmandu.

756 **Parbate.**

Hong Kong: Brigade of Gurkhas, 1949- . fortnightly.

This newspaper for British army Gurkhas originally carried articles in Romanized Nepali ('Gurkhali'), but now uses English and Nepali in Devanagari script. It carries news of the Brigade, and of events in Nepal.

## Mass Media

### 757 **The Rising Nepal.**

Kathmandu: Gorkhapatra Corporation, 1965- . daily.

The Nepal Government's English-language newspaper, it overlaps in contents with its older, sister publication, the *Gorkhapatra* (q.v.), and reflects the same official line. The readership consists predominantly of resident foreigners and tourists. A guide to some of the articles published in the last years of King Mahendra's reign and the opening ones of King Birendra's rule is provided by Bruce J. Belknap, *A selected index of articles from The Rising Nepal from 1969-1976*, Kathmandu: Documentation Centre, Centre for Nepal and Asian Studies, 1978. 202p.

### 758 **Saptahik Bimarsha.** (Weekly Review.)

Kathmandu: Keshab Raj Pindali, 1982- . weekly.

This newspaper, the most influential in the private sector, has undergone various changes of name, partly as a result of falling foul of the press regulations. For the first two years of publication, it was known as *Saptahik Manch* (Weekly Platform), but it has no connection with another paper which now bears that title. It has also been known as *Bishwa Janjyoti* (World People's Light) and *Nepali Awaj* (Nepali Voice). Initially financed by Surya Bahadur Thapa, prime minister from 1979 to 1983, the paper no longer acts solely as his mouthpiece but still follows in general his 'liberal' panchayat line whilst also giving some space to advocates of a multi-party system. It has waged a constant campaign against 'the underground gang' (*bhumigat giroh*), a coterie said to be manipulating the political system by extra-constitutional means. Its prestige and circulation were boosted following the attempted assassination of its guest editor in 1986 and the subsequent arrest and conviction for the crime of prominent alleged gang-members.



# Professional Periodicals

## 759 **Asian Survey.**

Berkeley, California: University of California, 1961- . monthly.

This periodical covers the whole of Asia, with the main emphasis on political developments. In addition to occasional articles on particular aspects of Nepal's political and economic life, a survey of the past year's events in the country is carried regularly in one of the early issues of the following year. A similar survey of each year's events may now also be found in *CNAS Year Review* (Kathmandu: Tribhuvan University, 1986- .)

## 760 **Bulletin of the School of Oriental and African Studies.**

London: School of Oriental and African Studies, 1938- . tri-annual.

The main articles in this journal are generally highly-specialist, with an emphasis on philology, but the book reviews are of wider interest and normally include the principal new publications on Nepal in the humanities and social sciences.

## 761 **Contributions to Nepalese Studies.**

Kirtipur, Nepal: Centre for Nepal and Asian Studies, Tribhuvan University, 1973- . quarterly.

This journal publishes articles in both English and Nepali on the humanities and social sciences, with anthropology tending to predominate. The majority of the contributors are either Nepalese members of the centre or foreign scholars affiliated to it during research in Nepal. Issues are sometimes delayed or combined together. Apart from *Kailash* (q.v.) and the *Journal of the Nepal Research Centre* (q.v.), it is the only Nepalese academic journal which regularly reaches all foreign universities with an interest in the country. Volume 12, no. 3 (August 1985) includes a 'Cumulative Index 1973-1985 by theme and author', compiled by Purna P. Amatya, subsequently extended to 1986, and included in his *Cumulative index to selected Nepalese journals* (Kathmandu: Centre for Nepal and Asian Studies, 1989).

## **Professional Periodicals**

### **762 The Economic Journal of Nepal.**

Kathmandu: Tribhuvan University, Department of Economics, 1978- . quarterly.

This journal, which is sometimes irregular, contains articles on Nepal, with occasional contributions on general economic issues. Copies can be obtained from the Department: P.O. Box 3821, Kathmandu.

### **763 Himalayan Research Bulletin.**

New York: Southern Asian Institute of the School of International and Public Affairs, Columbia University, for the Nepal Studies Association, 1980- . tri-annual.

This journal, which replaced the *Nepal Studies Association Newsletter* (1972-80), is concerned primarily with the humanities and social sciences. It reports on research in progress in the Himalayan region as a whole, but with the main emphasis on Nepal. Contents include books reviews, abstracts of dissertations and conference papers and details of the activities of the Nepal Studies Association.

### **764 Indian Journal of Nepalese Studies.**

Varanasi, India: Banares Hindu University, Faculty of Social Sciences, Centre for the Study of Nepal. 1987- . semi-annual.

Carries articles principally on political and economic issues, and especially on Indo-Nepalese relations. Many of the contributors are on the staff of the Centre, which is the main institution in India studying contemporary Nepal.

### **765 Journal of Asian Studies.**

Ann Arbor, Michigan: Asian Studies Association, 1922- . quarterly.

Entitled *Far Eastern Quarterly* until 1956, this journal is published by the main American association for scholars interested in Asia, and carries articles principally on historical, political, anthropological and literary topics, as well as book reviews. Its material is generally well-presented and suitable for non-specialists. The association's annual *Bibliography of Asian Studies* (q.v.) was included in the journal until 1979, but is now published separately.

### **766 Journal of Developing Areas.**

Macomb, Illinois: Western Illinois University, 1966- . quarterly.

Covers development in the widest sense, with a particular emphasis on comparative, historical and cultural aspects. A number of articles on Nepal have been carried in recent years.

### **767 Journal of Development and Administrative Studies.**

Kathmandu: Tribhuvan University. Centre for Development and Administration. 1978- . bi-annual. irregular.

This journal is intended as a vehicle for 'development ideas useful for policy-making in Third World Countries'. The great majority of articles concern Nepal. Articles are listed in the annual Centre National de la Recherche Scientifique acquisitions list issued by Lucette Boulnois, see *Bibliographie du Népal, volume 1: sciences humaines* (q.v.)

**768 Journal of the Nepal Research Centre.**

Kathmandu: Nepal Research Centre, 1977- . irregular.

The journal of the Nepal-German Nepal Research Centre has so far appeared every one or two years, volume seven being issued in 1988. Contents include articles translated from the German or Nepali on all aspects of the country. The journal also carries the *Nepalese national bibliography for 1981* (q.v.). Articles published in 1977-85 are included in Purna P. Amatya's *Cumulative index to selected Nepalese journals* (Kathmandu: Centre for Nepal and Asian Studies, 1989).

**769 Kailash.**

Kathmandu: Ratna Pustak Bhandar, 1973- . quarterly. irregular.

This journal of Himalayan studies focuses in particular on Nepal. Articles on all aspects of the region are carried but religion and the social sciences are predominant. Appearance has often been irregular, and issues are sometimes combined in one volume. A guide to articles published in the journal's first thirteen years is provided by Purna P. Amatya, 'Cumulative Index to 'Kailash': 1973-1985', *Contributions to Nepalese Studies*, vol. 13, no. 3 (August 1986), p. 289-310, subsequently included in his *Cumulative index to selected Nepalese journals* (Kathmandu: Centre for Nepal and Asian Studies, 1989).

**770 Mountain Research and Development.**

Boulder, Colorado: International Mountain Society, United Nations University. 1981- . quarterly.

Published by the University of Colorado, but with extensive international backing, this journal carries articles on environment and development issues in mountain ranges throughout the world. It includes many important contributions on the Nepal Himalaya.

**771 Regmi Research Series.**

Kathmandu: Regmi Research Institute, 1969- . monthly.

This mimeographed publication is produced by the private research institute founded and directed by the economic historian, Mahesh Chandra Regmi. Contents include translations of documents from Nepalese archives and translations of some Nepali publications, principally on history. Since 1982 it has incorporated a yearly cumulative index.

**772 Rolamba.**

Lalitpur, Nepal: Joshi Research Institute, 1981- . quarterly.

This small-circulation journal, publishes articles in English and Nepali, chiefly on the civilization of ancient Nepal, including religion, arts, manuscripts and inscriptions. All articles up to March 1986 are indexed in the *Cumulative index to selected Nepalese journals* (Kathmandu: Centre for Nepal and Asian Studies, 1989).

**773 South Asia Research.**

London: School of Oriental and African Studies, Centre for South Asian Studies, 1981- . semi-annual.

The principal aim of this journal is to keep readers informed of research work in progress on all aspects of South Asian Studies. The cumulative research index includes details of a number of projects concerning Nepal, in particular those undertaken by scholars connected with the School of Oriental and African Studies.

## **Professional Periodicals**

### **774 Strategic Studies Series.**

Kathmandu: Centre for Research in Nepal and Asian Studies, 1984- .  
quarterly.

This journal contains articles mainly on international relations, generally involving Nepal and other countries of the South Asian region. Publication is often irregular, with more than one issue published as a single volume.

### **775 World Development.**

Oxford: Pergamon, 1973- . monthly.

Covering all aspects of economic development, this journal concentrates on the international angle. Its contents often include articles by scholars reporting research findings in summary.

### **Voice of history.**

*See* item no. 146.

### **Ancient Nepal.**

*See* item no. 146.

### **Nepal Miscellaneous Series.**

*See* item no. 500.

### **AGRINDEX.**

*See* item no. 655.

# Reference Works

**776 Who's who – Nepal, 1975-77.**

Compiled by Deepak Kumar Aryal, Sudarshan Chakra Lohani, Nirmal Nath Rimal, Rabindra Nath Regmi. Kathmandu: Kathmandu School of Journalism, 1977. 2nd ed. 378p.

A successor to an earlier volume for 1972-74, this directory covers 605 prominent personalities, and includes normal biographical data, in addition to subjects' beliefs, and favourite number, colour, flower and letter. Appendices give details of members of the Rastriya Panchayat and other state bodies (now largely outdated), and addresses of Royal Nepal Missions abroad, foreign embassies in Kathmandu etc. Information about some prominent Nepalese personalities may also be found in *Who's who in Indo-Nepal 1980*, edited by Tanu Gupta (New Delhi: Demco, 1980).

**777 Nepal district profile: a districtwise socio techno-economic profile of Nepal.**

Deepak Aryal, Rabindra Regmi, Nirmal Regmi. Kathmandu: National Research Associates, 1982. 854p. 4 maps.

Offers a brief general account of the country and its administrative structure followed by detailed information for each of the seventy-five districts, including basic geographical information, the constituent village and town panchayats, population statistics, economic growth rate, occupational and linguistic breakdown, crop statistics and average per capita holding, educational institutions and enrolment, revenue, transportation, health facilities and financial institutions. The statistics in the main body of the work are those available in and before 1980 (including the 1971 census and 1976 sample survey), but the final section updates the key statistics from the 1981 census and gives the local government units after the 1982 reorganization. The same publishers have also prepared a similar survey concentrating on population: *Nepal district profile – population*.

## Reference Works

**778 Directory of research organisations in private sector in Nepal.**

Centre for Action Research. Kathmandu, 1986. 17p.

This booklet provides data on 146 organizations. For those who responded fully to the survey questionnaire, the directory lists field of operation, work experience, principal clients and names and addresses of the organization's founder and of its research personnel. Where there was no response, information was taken from the Department of Industry's registration data and sometimes lacks even complete addresses. An index of research personnel is also provided.

**779 Information resources on Nepal.**

Bharat M. Gyawali, Garland L. Standrod. Kathmandu: Centre for Economic Development and Administration, 1973. 84p.

This volume lists bibliographies, reference works and directories (including some standard monographs). It has articles on library science in Nepal generally, and offers a guide to libraries in Kathmandu, libraries and institutions abroad with Nepalese interests, international and foreign agencies in Nepal, government departments, publishers and book stores. Though now somewhat out-of-date, it remains a useful guide. Among other bibliographical aids from the same compilers and publisher are: *Nepal documentation*, 1972 (CEDA Occasional Bibliography, no. 1), 100p.; and *Nepal documentation no. 2*, 1973 (CEDA Occasional Bibliography, no. 2), 108p.

**780 Historical and cultural dictionary of Nepal.**

Basil Calvin Hedrick, Ann K. Hedrick. Metuchen, New Jersey: Scarecrow, 1972. p. 198. (Historical and Cultural Dictionaries of Asia Series, no. 2)

Covers history, geography, current affairs and items of general cultural significance. The book is useful for quick reference, but contains a number of inaccuracies (e.g. Jang Bahadur's death, which occurred in the *tarai* in 1877 is said to have been at Kathmandu in 1878; and Pulchowki, one of the hills on the rim of the Valley, is defined as a 'mountain in Patan'). It should therefore be checked against a more specialized source wherever possible.

**781 Nepal almanac: a book of facts.**

Yuba Raj Singh Karki. Foreword by Ramchandra Bahadur Singh. Kathmandu: The Author, 1983. 544p. map. bibliog.

This work contains some general information on the country, its culture and economy, but is primarily a directory of commercial concerns and governmental and non-governmental institutions. The section on industrial concerns includes details of capacity and number of employees and, in some cases, of capital value. Shipping agencies, hotels, travel agents, trade associations, libraries and literary institutions are also covered.

**782 Nepal 1982. A reference handbook.**

Ministry of Communication, Department of Information. Kathmandu, 1982. 48p. map.

This compilation of basic information, covers government organization, the judicial system, and most aspects of national life, including social welfare and sport. The Ministry also publishes an occasional booklet entitled *Facts about Nepal*.

**783 Cambridge encyclopaedia of India, Pakistan, Bangladesh, Sri Lanka, Nepal, Bhutan and the Maldives.**

Edited by Francis Robinson. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1989. 520p. maps. bibliog.

This survey of the region, covering land and peoples, history, politics, foreign relations, society, religion and culture, is of greater use for general background information than it is for specific detail on Nepal, but sections on the country include brief outlines of modern history by Rishikesh Shaha and of Nepali literature by Theodore Riccardi.

**Scientific and technological organisations in Nepal.**

*See* item no. 913.

# Bibliographies

## 784 **Bibliography of Asian Studies.**

Association for Asian Studies. 1980- . annual.

Issued before 1979 as part of the *Journal of Asian Studies* (q.v.), this annual bibliography attempts to list all publications on Asian countries judged to be of scholarly interest. The Nepal section is a good guide to the most significant work published in the year, but its usefulness is reduced because the volumes appear several years in arrears. The volume for 1984 remains, at the time of writing, the last to be issued.

## 785 **Bibliographie du Népal, volume 1: sciences humaines – références en langues européennes.** (Bibliography of Nepal, volume 1: humanities and social sciences – references in European languages).

Lucette Boulnois, H. Millot. Paris: Centre Nationale de la Recherche Scientifique, 1969. 289p.

This is the standard bibliography of Nepal, including some 4495 titles, dating from the 17th century to the end of 1967 and organized under subject headings. A supplement published in 1975 covers an additional 3,991 items from the period 1967-73. Lucette Boulnois, the librarian in charge of the C.N.R.S. Himalayan collection, has also, since 1978, produced a mimeographed annual list of acquisitions by the library, covering publications in both humanities and natural sciences for the whole Himalayan region. Together with the published volumes, these provide the most complete record of work on Nepal currently available. Subject to availability, copies of the mimeographed list are provided free to research institutions and scholars, and can be consulted in the main university libraries with an interest in Nepal.

## 786 **Bibliography of the Himalaya.**

R. K. Gupta. Gurgaon, India: Indian Documentation Service, 1981. 375p.

Compiled by a botanist now specializing in environmental research, this bibliography contains 4772 entries, mostly of a technical nature. The items are arranged in



alphabetical order of author under the following heads: bibliography; general accounts of travels; physical geography and geomorphology; climate; geomorphology and water resources; mineralogy, geochemistry and geophysics; petrology; human geography; plant resources; animal resources; and soil conservation.

### 787 **Library of Congress accessions list – Nepal.**

New Delhi: Library of Congress Office, 1966-80. vols. 1-15. semi-annual.

Lists publications from Nepal purchased by the Library of Congress on its own behalf and for other US institutions. Items published in each language are arranged in separate alphabetical sequences. A list of libraries participating from 1973 is included in later volumes (those receiving all the English language material include the University of California, the Center for Research Libraries, the University of Chicago, the University of Wisconsin and Columbia University). Each December issue includes a cumulative list of serials and indexes for the whole year.

### 788 **Library of Congress accessions list – South Asia.**

New Delhi: Library of Congress Office, 1981- . monthly

The successor to the previous separate country lists, this publication combines details of titles from Afghanistan, Bangladesh, Bhutan, India, Maldives, Nepal, Pakistan, and Sri Lanka. Material is listed on the same lines as in *Library of Congress accessions list - Nepal* (q.v.). Serials supplements are issued periodically.

### 789 **Bibliography of Nepal.**

Khadga Man Malla. Kathmandu: Royal Nepal Academy, 1975. 529p.

The preliminary section of this bibliography includes a message by Surya Bikram Gyawali, a foreword by Lain Singh Bangdel and an introduction by Satya Mohan Joshi. The volume draws on earlier work by Lucette Boulnois and H. Millot (*Bibliographie du Nepal* (q.v.)) and by Hugh B. Wood (*Nepal bibliography* (q.v.)), but also includes new titles up to 1972. Although the work by Boulnois, with the 1975 supplement, is more comprehensive, the Royal Academy's compilation, covering the humanities and natural sciences, has the advantage of single volume format and of cheapness, being available in Kathmandu (summer 1989) for only seventy-seven rupees (about £2.50 sterling). The bibliography contains 8327 entries, but this total includes duplicated entries where a title is relevant to more than one subject heading. There are indices of authors, of titles of anonymous works, and of periodicals cited.

### 790 **Abstracts from Ph.D. theses.**

Royal Nepal Academy. Foreword by Lain Singh Bangdel, preface by T.B.Shrestha. Kathmandu: Royal Nepal Academy, 1985. 296p.

Provides summaries of up to 2,000 words in length of thirty-one humanities and fifty-one science theses written by Nepalese students studying abroad. A small number of entries are in Nepali or Hindi. Subject indexes are provided.

## **Bibliographies**

### **791 Research on Nepal 1975-1983. A bibliography.**

Klaus Seeland, Harold Fritz, Rainer Olsen. In: *Recent research on Nepal*. Edited by Klaus Seeland. Munich, Cologne, GFR; London: Weltforum, 1986. p. 219-351. (Shriftenreihe – Internationales Asienforum, Band 3).

Containing 2,300 items, in both European languages and Nepali, this bibliography concentrates largely on the social sciences and humanities and is intended as a supplement to the work of Lucette Boulnois and H. Millot (*Bibliographie du Nepal* (q.v.)) and of Khadga Man Malla (*Bibliography of Nepal* (q.v.)).

### **792 Nepalese national bibliography for 1981.**

Tribhuvan University, Nepal Research Centre. Preface by Axel Michaels, Shanti Mishra. *Journal of the Nepal Research Centre*, vol. 5-6 (1981-82). 54p.

This is the first volume of a bibliography intended to be published on a regular basis and to cover all documents published in Nepal, with the exception of newspapers, periodicals, maps, musical scores, textbooks and ephemeral material such as telephone or trade directories. At a future date the compilers also intend to include works by Nepalese authors published abroad. Publications are listed in a single sequence under Dewey Decimal classification, regardless of language, with author, title and subject indexes provided. Bibliographies for 1982 and 1983 were issued as part of volume seven and eight (1985-88) of the *Journal*, but are also available as a monograph from Tribhuvan University.

### **793 Dissertations (bibliography of M.A. and Ph.D. dissertations available in the Tribhuvan University Central Library).**

Documentation Centre, Central Library. Preface by Shanti Mishra. Kathmandu: Tribhuvan University, 1983. 2 vols.

This bibliography is divided into separate sections for English and Nepali theses, both in Dewey Decimal order. The two volumes cover the period up to 1985 and contain 812 and 625 titles respectively. Further volumes are planned.

### **794 A guide to manuscripts in the British Isles relating to South and South East Asia.**

M. D. Wainwright, Noel Matthews. Supervised by J. D. Pearson. London: Oxford University Press, 1965. 532p.

Organized on a county basis, this work lists documents in both private and public collections, including national and university libraries, county record offices and regimental museums. Material which is held in the India Office Library and Records, or which dates from before 1450, is excluded. There are a small number of references to Nepal.

### **795 Nepal bibliography.**

Hugh B. Wood. Tillamook, Oregon: The America-Nepal Education Foundation, 1957; Kathmandu: College of Education, 1959. 108p.

The first comprehensive listing of materials on Nepal written in Western languages, this bibliography of 1300 items omits mountaineering items and dictionaries, but

incorporates almost all the older work in the humanities and social sciences. The work is divided into separate sections for books, magazine and journal articles, newspaper items, and unpublished material. There are some annotations, and titles considered basic for beginners or suitable for general reading are marked. Most of the material cited is held in the University of Oregon or ANEF libraries, either in the original form or on microfilm. There is an appendix of works in Nepali or Hindi, mostly compiled by Mahesh Chandra Regmi.

**796 Catalogue of Himalayan literature.**

Yoshimi Yakushi. Tokyo: Hakusuisha, 1984. 2nd ed. 759p.

This bibliography of the Himalaya, Tibet and Central Asia, includes 3,750 entries in European languages (predominantly English), and about 800 Japanese titles. Some entries are briefly annotated. Entries are in author alphabetical order, with title and subject indexes at the back.

**Bibliographie du Népal, volume 3: sciences naturelles, tome 3: géologie de l'Himalaya central.** (Bibliography of Nepal, volume 3: natural sciences, part 3: geology of the central Himalaya.)

See item no. 79.

**Bibliographie du Népal, volume 3: sciences naturelles, tome 1: cartes du Népal dans les bibliothèques de Paris et de Londres.** (Bibliography of Nepal, volume 3: natural sciences, part 1: maps of Nepal in Paris and London libraries.)

See item no. 80.

**Bibliographie du Népal, volume 3: sciences naturelles, tome 2: botanique.** (Bibliography of Nepal, volume 3: natural sciences, part 2: botany.)

See item no. 120.

**A medical bibliography of Nepal.**

See item no. 232.

**Population and development in Nepal: an annotated bibliography.**

See item no. 259.

**Bibliographical index of the lesser known languages and dialects of Nepal.**

See item no. 268.

**An anthropological bibliography of South Asia together with a directory of recent anthropological fieldwork.**

See item no. 370.

**A select bibliography of works on the Tamangs of Nepal.**

See item no. 400.

**An annotated bibliography of the Thakalis.**

See item no. 427.

**Annotated bibliography on women in Nepal.**

See item no. 453.

## **Bibliographies**

### **Law bibliography.**

*See item no. 502.*

### **Works on Nepal-Britain relations.**

*See item no. 545.*

### **Catalogue of Nepali printed books in the India Office Library.**

*See item no. 549.*

### **A select annotated bibliography on integrated rural development.**

*See item no. 600.*

### **Economic development and planning in Nepal. Process, performance and perspective – a select bibliography.**

*See item no. 608.*

### **Nepal: an annotated bibliography on rural regional development.**

*See item no. 636.*

### **AGRINDEX.**

*See item no. 655.*

### **Agrisnepal – Nepal agricultural bibliography.**

*See item no. 675.*

### **FAO: Nepal.**

*See item no. 675.*

### **Forestry: Nepal.**

*See item no. 675.*

### **Horticulture: Nepal.**

*See item no. 675.*

### **Livestock: Nepal.**

*See item no. 675.*

### **Small farmer development.**

*See item no. 675.*

### **Soil: Nepal.**

*See item no. 675.*

### **Nepal Agricultural Abstracts.**

*See item no. 676.*

### **A general bibliography on fish and fisheries of Nepal.**

*See item no. 682.*

### **Works on land system in Nepal.**

*See item no. 686.*

### **Status of environmental knowledge in Nepal: annotated bibliography.**

*See item no. 705.*

### **Information resources on Nepal.**

*See item no. 779.*

**Bibliography of Nepalese art.**

*See* item no. 801.

**An annotated bibliography and discography of Nepalese music.**

*See* item no. 857.

# Arts

## General

**797 Nepal's strategy on heritage conservation.**

Shaphalya Amatya. In: *Heritage of the Kathmandu Valley*. Edited by Niels Gutschow, Axel Michaels. Sankt Augustin, GFR: VGH Wissenschaftsverlag, 1987, p. 95-103.

Offers a straightforward account of conservation measures taken so far, including mention of the problems of lack of funds and lack of public enthusiasm. The author, a senior official within the Department of Archaeology of the Nepalese Ministry of Education and Culture, argues that responsibility for conservation activities rests with too many separate bodies and should be centralized in his ministry.

**798 Artibus Asiae. (For Asian arts).**

Ascona, Switzerland: C.Luise Tarabori-Flesch in association with the Institute of Fine Arts, New York University, 1925/26- . quarterly.

This scholarly journal covers the traditional art of all Asian countries. Articles are normally in English.

**799 Arts of Asia.**

Hong Kong: Tuget Nguyet, 1971- . bimonthly.

Intended principally for connoisseurs and collectors this glossy magazine carries occasional articles on Nepal. Volume fourteen, number four (July-August 1984) is a special issue devoted entirely to the country, and covering contemporary painting, historical photographs, Newar windows, metal casting, jewellery and cottage crafts in general, together with a description of Patan's 'Golden Temple'.

**800 The art of Nepal: a guide to the masterpieces of sculpture, painting, and woodcarving.**

Lydia Aran. Kathmandu: Sahayogi, 1978. 237p. bibliog.

Although the illustrations are not of as high a quality as in other works, this paperback survey has the advantage of portability. It includes an introduction to Nepalese religion, and an iconographical appendix explaining the commonest hand-gestures, signs and symbols.

**801 Bibliography of Nepalese art.**

Jagdish Chandra. Foreword by M. L. Bajracharya. New Delhi: Delhi Printers, 1980. 152p.

The compiler lists 1173 items under the headings: art historians and scholars; architecture; sculpture; mythology and symbols; history; historical geography; iconography; painting; palaeography and manuscripts; handicrafts and archaeology. There are also lists of major collections of Nepalese art throughout the world, covering both museums and private collections, and of journals on the subject. An earlier, less comprehensive bibliography is that of Ronald M. Bernier, *Bibliography of Nepalese art* (Kathmandu: Voice of Nepal, 1970.).

**802 The art and architecture of the Indian subcontinent.**

J. C. Harle. Harmondsworth, England: Penguin, 1986. 597p. 2 maps. bibliog. (The Pelican History of Art).

The final chapter (p. 467-88) of this work, by a leading British authority on the subject, has a good introductory survey of Nepalese art, which the author sees in origin as an offshoot of Indian art of the Gupta period, but with 'provincial' characteristics of its own.

**803 Newar art: Nepalese art during the Malla period.**

Alexander W. Macdonald, Anne Vergati Stahl. Warminster, England: Aris & Philips; New Delhi: Vikas, 1979. 153p. bibliog.

This scholarly but accessible work covers the art of the period of the Malla kings in the Kathmandu Valley (c.1000 to 1768), in which the principal artistic achievement took place. The authors set out to explain Newar art in relation to Newari society as a whole, emphasize influences from India and from Tibet and stress the decisive importance of royal patronage of the artist. Also included are architecture and its organizing principles, sculpture and painting.

**804 Contemporary art and artists of Nepal.**

Thakur Prasad Mainali. Kathmandu: Nepal Association for Fine arts, 1975. 122p.

This volume consists principally of biographical details of artists, with rather poor quality black-and-white photographs of them and of their work. There are also a number of short articles, including an outline of the Association's own rôle.

## Arts. General

- 805 **Introduction a l'iconographie du t ntrisme bouddhique. Tome 1.** (Introduction to the iconography of tantic Buddhism. Volume 1.) Marie-Th r se de Mallmann. Paris: Librairie Maisonneuve, 1986. 2nd ed. 495p. bibliog. (Biblioth que du Centre de Recherches sur l'Asie Centrale et la Haute Asie).

First published in 1975, this is a standard reference work on the subject. It is illustrated with black-and-white plates.

- 806 **Nepalese art.** Ministry of Education and Culture, Department of Archaeology. Preface by Ramesh Jang Thapa, introduction by N. R. Banerjee. Kathmandu, 1966. 85p. bibliog. 36 plates.

This is the catalogue of an exhibition of Nepalese art held in Paris in 1966 to mark a visit by the king and queen of Nepal. The introduction provides basic historical and religious background, whilst the exhibits themselves are grouped under the following headings: architecture; stone sculpture; terracotta; bone; woodwork; painting; ivory and crystal.

- 807 **The arts of Nepal.** Pratapaditya Pal. Preface by J. E. van Lohuizen-de Leeuw. Leiden, Cologne: E. J. Brill, 1974, 1978, vols. 1,2. (Handbuch der Orientalisk, 7th Abteilung (Art and Archaeology), 3rd vol, 3rd section, 2nd Lieferung).

The standard account by the leading authority, volume one covers sculpture, and volume two painting, while a final volume on architecture is projected. The first volume is illustrated with 300 black-and-white plates, whilst the text first discusses the securely dateable material, then establishes approximate dates for other early work on the basis of Indian parallels. Thematic chapters conclude with an emphasis on the multiplicity of Indian influences and a rejection of the theory of a special Pala influence. The painting volume gives historical background and an account of the artistic milieu, followed by separate treatments of manuscript illuminations, religious, narrative and secular painting, and a discussion of sources and influences. There are 220 plates including a few in colour.

- 808 **Art of Nepal: a catalogue of the Los Angeles County Museum of Art Collection.** Pratapaditya Pal. Berkeley, Los Angeles, California; London: Los Angeles County Museum of Art in association with University of California Press, 1985. 257p. 2 maps. bibliog.

Presents an illustrated description of the museum's holdings compiled by its curator. In addition to a large number of bronzes, the catalogue includes a substantial collection of drawings in 15th-century sketchbooks which were kept either as model-books in artists' families or as iconographic manuals for priests. A glossary of terms (mostly in Sanskrit) is provided.



**809 Nepal. Where the gods are young.**

Pratapaditya Pal. Foreword by Allen Wardwell. New York: Asia House Gallery, Asia Society in association with John Weatherhill, 1975. 136p. bibliog.

This is the illustrated catalogue of an exhibition of Nepalese bronzes and paintings from various American collections held at Asia House Gallery in New York in 1975.

**810 Himalayan art – wall-painting and sculpture in Ladakh, Lahaul and Spiti, the Siwalik ranges, Sikkim and Bhutan.**

Madanjeet Singh. London; Melbourne: Macmillan; Greenwich, Connecticut: New York Graphic Society, 1968. 295p. bibliog. map.

The author gives a brief introduction to the history and culture of the Himalayan region as a whole, followed by separate studies of each area. Nepal is treated on pages 161-226. There are a large number of colour illustrations. The book is available in paperback (New York: Macmillan, 1968) as well as in a large-format edition.

**811 Nepal: art treasures from the Himalayas.**

Ernst and Rose Leonore Waldschmidt. Translated from the German by David Wilson. London: Elek; Calcutta: Oxford University Press, IBH, 1969. 160p. bibliog.

This book is based on the catalogue which the authors prepared for a 1967 exhibition held in Germany in 1967. The exhibition featured items loaned from Nepal with some additions from the Museum of Indian Art in Berlin. The main part of the work is a collection of black-and-white and colour plates, with a detailed explanation for each object. The categories covered are: archaeological finds, terra-cotta figures, bronzes, wood carvings, ivory objects, manuscripts and book covers, and paintings on cloth or paper. The introduction includes a brief account of the country, a description of Lumbini (the site of the Buddha's birth) when the author first visited it in 1933, and a survey of religion in Nepal, including a straightforward account of tantra.

**Nepal.**

See item no. 3.

**Heritage of the Kathmandu Valley.**

See item no. 9.

**Nepalese cultural heritage in a nutshell.**

See item no. 15.

**Picturesque Nepal.**

See item no. 28.

**Nepal mandala: a cultural history of the Kathmandu Valley.**

See item no. 171.

**The Indian Buddhist iconography, mainly based on the Sadhanamala and cognate tantric texts of rituals.**

See item no. 319.

**The Tharu women of Sukhrwar.**

See item no. 449.

## Painting and photography

**812 Family portraits. A Rana family album chronicle.**

René Brus. *Arts of Asia*, vol. 14, no. 4 (July-August 1984), p. 87-95.

Provides a brief summary of the history of the Rana period, accompanied by reproductions of photographs of leading personalities, including Jang Bahadur and King Surendra.

**813 The contemporary movement in Nepalese art.**

Jagdish Chitrakar. *Arts of Asia*, vol. 14, no. 4 (July-August 1984), p. 60-72.

The author, who is himself a well-known painter, discusses 20th-century Nepalese painters, including the naturalistic work of Chandra Man Maskey and Tej Bahadur Chitrakar, and some more experimental work by his own generation. The article is well illustrated, and is particularly valuable for its contemporary coverage, as studies of Nepalese art are generally devoted only to the country's past achievements.

**814 Nepalese minatures.**

Rajatananda Das Gupta. Foreword by S. K. Saraswati. Varanasi, India: Bharatiya Vidya, 1968. 56p.

This study of paintings executed as illustrations or decorations in manuscripts, covers the period from the 11th to the 20th century, highlighting evidence in them of contemporary material culture.

**815 Nepal rediscovered. Court life from 1846 to 1951.**

Padma Prakash Shrestha. Introduction by David Matthews, historical outline by John Whelpton. London: Serindia, 1986. 110p. map. bibliog.

Presents a collection of black-and-white photographs of the Rana era, comprising mostly formal portraits of the maharajas and their relations, with some informal studies and pictures of hunting scenes and religious ceremonies. The editor's introduction traces the development of photography in Nepal, and the historical essay gives a brief account of each maharaja, concentrating particularly on the founder of the line, Jang Bahadur Rana. A genealogical table includes all those identified in the captions and also shows the main marriage connections between the Rana family and the Shah dynasty.

**816 The cultural aspects of Newar painting.**

Mary Shepherd Slusser. In: *Heritage of the Kathmandu Valley*. Edited by Niels Gutschow, Axel Michaels. Sankt Augustin, GFR: VGH Wissenschaftsverlag, 1987, p. 13-27.

The author draws on particular examples to illustrate the importance for cultural history of the inscriptions on Newar cloth paintings. She also emphasizes the painter's rôle as a cartographer and as a depicter of the cosmic order.

**Journey through Nepal.**

See item no. 2.

**Nepal.**

See item no. 3.

**Picturesque Nepal.**

See item no. 28.

**The Maithili women of Sirsia.**

See item no. 429.

**The arts of Nepal.**

See item no. 807.

## Architecture and sculpture

**817 Simraongadh revisited: a report on some observations made at the ruins of the former capital of Mithila in the terai of Nepal.**

Thomas O. Ballinger. *Kailash*, vol. 1, no. 3 (1973), p. 180-84.

This article includes pictures and discussion of carvings in the ruined city of Simraongadh, from which King Harisingh Dev fled to the Kathmandu Valley in the 14th century.

**818 Nepalese architecture.**

N. R. Banerjee. Foreword by C. Sivaramurti. Delhi: Agam Kala, 1980. 227p. bibliog.

This survey by an Indian who served as archaeological advisor to the Nepal government in 1966-72, concentrates on temple architecture and is illustrated by large black-and-white photographs both of Nepalese structures and of buildings in India with similar features. The author argues that the 7th-century Chinese accounts of Kathmandu temples do not imply that these were of the pagoda type. He links both the multiple roofs and the multiple plinths of the temples with Indian prototypes, though also seeing the roof design as a response to climatic conditions. Sanskrit inscriptions are quoted at length (with translation), and a chapter is devoted to repair and conservation in the past and at present. The presentation of the author's material is not always well organized, and he rather labours the cultural links between Nepal and India, but it remains a stimulating study.

**819 The early sculpture of Nepal.**

Lain S. Bangdel. Foreword by Krishna Deva. New Delhi: Vikas, 1982. 260p. bibliog.

Bangdel surveys the sculpture of Nepal, covering the period principally from the 1st to the mid-5th century AD, and establishing a chronology on the basis of stylistic parallels with India. Discussion of the different categories of deities represented, with particular emphasis on mother goddesses, is followed by illustrative black-and-white photographs. The author, who is vice-chancellor of the Royal Nepal Academy, links

## Arts. Architecture and sculpture

pre-Licchavi icons with pre-Aryan cult objects, for example, the *nagas*, or serpent gods, the *yaksas*, or demons, and the *devi* or mother goddesses, and sees Nepalese developments as influenced particularly by the Indian Mathura, Kushana and Gupta styles.

### 820 **Wooden windows of Nepal – an illustrated analysis.**

R. M. Bernier. *Artibus Asiae*, vol. 39, no. 3-4 (1977), p. 251-67.

This careful analysis of the structure and motifs of the traditional, elaborately carved Newar windows concentrates in particular on a single building-complex at Baidi Chok in Kathmandu. The article is illustrated with black-and-white photographs.

### 821 **The temples of Nepal.**

Ronald M. Bernier. New Delhi: S.Chand, 1978. 2nd ed. 171p.  
bibliog.

Offers a general survey, with less elaborate discussion than in Bernier's *The Nepalese pagoda* (q.v.). The book opens with an introduction to the historical and religious background, including discussion of the origin of the Nepalese style and analysis of the descriptions of Nepalese temples from the early Chinese sources, which are accepted as indicating the pagoda form was already in use in the 7th century. This is followed by descriptions of the principal temples of Patan, Bhaktapur and Kathmandu and of some shrines situated elsewhere.

### 822 **The Nepalese pagoda – origins and style.**

Ronald M. Bernier. New Delhi: S. Chand, 1979. 219p.  
bibliog.

This book, by the leading authority on Nepalese temple architecture, considers Newari architecture in general in its human context, stressing the religious rituals which are part of the traditional building procedure, and then analyzes the different types of pagoda, finding influence on their design from the *mandala* (a ritual drawing supposed to have magic properties) and from a classical Hindu treatise on temple construction. In his final chapter, he compares the style of the Nepalese pagoda with that of pagoda-type buildings elsewhere, but emphasizes the fundamental originality of the Nepalese design. He allows, however, that both Nepalese and Sino-Japanese pagodas might have a common origin in a lost Indian prototype.

### 823 **Four villages: architecture in Nepal.**

Katherine D. Blair. Los Angeles: Craft and Folk Art Museum, 1983.  
71p. (Studies of Village Life).

Written to accompany an exhibition mounted at the Los Angeles Craft and Folk Art Museum in 1983, and based on field-work undertaken in 1972-73 and 1980, this booklet uses black-and-white photographs, plans and cross-sectional diagrams to show how house design and spacing relate to the environment and to the villagers' changing lifestyles. The settlements examined are in widely contrasting parts of the country: the Tharu village of Buddudi in the inner tarai, Gurung Kodgaon on the slopes below Annapurna, Thakali Marpha in the arid upper Gandaki valley, and Newar Satungal in the Kathmandu Valley. Another work on village architecture is *L'architecture sherpa* (Sherpa architecture) by V.Sestini and E. Somigli (Paris: UNESCO, 1978).

**824 Architecture, milieu et société en Himalaya.**

Edited by Denis Blamont, Gérard Toffin. Paris: Centre Nationale de la Recherche Scientifique, 1987. 292p. bibliog. maps. (Etudes Himalayennes, 1).

Presents a series of papers in French and in English, mostly focusing on domestic architecture and its adaptation to the environment. Areas studied include the Kathmandu Valley towns, Marpha and Manang, north of the main Himalayan region, Tamang settlements in the middle hills, villages inhabited by different ethnic groups in the Kosi basin, and Tharu houses in the *tarai*.

**825 Glimpses of Nepal woodwork.**

Shantaram Bhalchandra Deo. *Journal of the Indian Society of Oriental Art*, new series, vol. 3 (1968-69). 43p. + 38p. map. bibliog.

This pioneering study deals with woodwork dating from the 17th to the 19th century. There is a short account of tools and techniques, followed by treatment of individual aspects, including: struts; windows, tympana; wall bands, erotic scenes, symbolism; and social life. The author sees strong links between the Nepalese woodworking tradition and some south Indian styles.

**826 Newar towns and buildings. An illustrated dictionary, Newari-English.**

Niels Gutschow, Bernard Köelver, Ishwaranand Sresthacharya. Sankt Augustin, GFR: VGH Wissenschaftsverlag, 1987. 293p. 7 maps. (Nepalica, 3).

This work consists of a Newari-English glossary of words connected with architecture and building technology (including verbs and adjectives as well as nouns), followed by a collection of black-and-white photographs and plans illustrating many of the words, which takes up the better part of the book. There are also plans of Bhaktapur (where a major German-aided conservation and development project has been implemented) and an explanation of place names there and in the rest of the Kathmandu Valley.

**827 Kathmandu Valley: the preservation of physical environment and cultural heritage – protective inventory.**

His Majesty's Government, UNESCO, UN. Coordination and production by Carl Prasche, contributions by Prayag Raj Sharma, A. Tuladhar, R. R. Bajracharya, K. K. Joshi, H. R. Sakya, K. Lamichane, Eduard Sekler, F. R. Allchin, preface by Prayag Raj Singh Suwal, foreword by Gauri Nath Rimal. Vienna: Anton Shroll, 1975. 2 vols. maps.

This large-format work surveys areas of particular historical and interest and of natural beauty, as well as concentrating on individual monuments as a preliminary step towards the drawing up of conservation rules. The first volume details, with the aid of photographs and maps, districts and zones recommended for varying degrees of protection. The second volume catalogues individual buildings, with large-scale maps or plans showing their situation. The work is of especial interest for the photographs of architecture outside the main urban settlements.

## **Arts. Architecture and sculpture**

### **828 Monuments of northern Nepal.**

Corneille Jest. Paris: UNESCO, 1981. 121p. 2 maps. bibliog.

Covering Buddhist monuments in the Humla, Mustang, Sindhu-Palchok (Helambu), Dolakha and Solu Khumbu areas, this study is based on field-trips made in 1976-78. A short account of the region and of the Tibetan Buddhism found there, together with Buddhist and Hindu festival calendars, is followed by an account of the general principles of temple design, and of the range of artefacts found inside the temples. The central section discusses individual shrines, with black-and-white photographs and plans. The final chapter makes recommendations for a conservation programme, including the introduction of a comprehensive survey of all the monuments of the area. Appendices set out proposed standard formats for the description of buildings (including recommended conservation measures) and also of the art objects contained in them. Extracts from the book are reprinted in *Ancient Nepal*, nos. 86-88 (Feb.-July 1985), p. 13-21; no. 89 (Aug.-Sept. 85), p. 31-32; no. 90 (Oct.-Nov.1985), p. 10-18; no. 91 (Dec.1985-Jan.1986), p. 22-9; nos. 92-97 (Feb. 1986-June 1987), p. 6-13; nos. 98-99 (Feb.-May 1987), p. 9-16.

### **829 The traditional architecture of the Kathmandu Valley.**

Wolfgang Korn. Foreword by Prayag Raj Sharma. Krefeld, GFR: The Author, 1976; Kathmandu: Ratna Pustak Bhandar, 1977. 125p. bibliog. 2 maps. (Bibliotheca Himalayica, Series III, vol. 11).

Perhaps the best introduction to the subject in existence, this survey is illustrated by area plans and line drawings, some of which were originally produced by the author when working as a German volunteer in Nepal and published in the Department of Housing and Physical Planning's *The physical development plan for the Kathmandu Valley* (q.v.). Separate chapters cover: the general nature of urban settlements; fortifications (with discussion of the former town walls, gateways etc., as far as these can be reconstructed from the few remains); the Newar house; Buddhist monasteries; the Hindu priest's house (concentrating on the Pujari Math at Bhaktapur); temples; public resthouses; and general building techniques.

### **830 Tamang art: a parallel style in the tantric Buddhist art of Nepal.**

M. A. Lichtenberg-van Mierlo. *Kailash*, vol. 11, nos. 1-2 (1984), p. 33-54.

This article discusses a class of bronzes, found in central and northern Nepal, and known as 'Tamang' because they were generally made for Tamangs by Shakyas in the Kathmandu Valley. The author links the style with the Buddhist metal sculptures of the 8th to 12th century AD in Bihar and Bengal, which are unrelated to the contemporary Pala-Sen art that greatly influenced the main Nepalese tradition. The text is illustrated with black-and-white photographs.

### **831 Workshops of traditional Newar woodcarving – a stylistic analysis.**

Heimo Rau. *Journal of the Nepal Research Centre*, vol. 7 (1985), p. 141-82.

The author identifies two styles of carving which predate the evolution of the main Malla courtly style. Rau discusses the first of these in detail and suggests that it originated in a single monastery workshop between the 12th and 15th centuries, though the extant carvings in which it is represented date from much later. A second style is exemplified in tantric work, especially representations of the Eight Bhairavas (*Asta Bhairava*) and Eight Mothers (*Asta Matrika*).

**832 Monuments of the Kathmandu Valley.**

John Sanday. Foreword by Trailokya Nath Upraity. Paris: UNESCO, 1979. 129p. 3 maps.

Written by the architect who headed the UNESCO restoration project in the Nepal Valley, this book provides a clear guide to the principal monuments of Kathmandu, Patan and Bhaktapur, including the problems met during restoration. The introductory sections include a list of principal festivals, a discussion of building styles and a brief account of the restoration programme, including the rediscovery of lost traditional skills. The book is illustrated with drawings and black-and-white photographs.

**833 Building conservation in Nepal. A handbook of principles and techniques. Report prepared for the Government of Nepal by the UNESCO acting as executing agency for the United Nations Development Programme.**

John Sanday. Paris: UNESCO, 1978. 192p. bibliog.

This official report encompasses experience gained from the restoration work so far undertaken. The document is in theory restricted, but some copies are available in libraries. A briefer, less formal account is included in the author's *Monuments of the Kathmandu Valley* (q.v.).

**834 Nepal cultural heritage. Master plan for the conservation of the cultural heritage of the Kathmandu Valley.**

E. F. Seckler, R. Allchin, P. Borel, C. Chayabangse, C. Jest, F. Kussmaul, H. S. Saba, C. Tunnard. Paris: UNESCO, 1977. 254p. maps. bibliog.

Prepared by UNESCO for the Nepal government, this report, which follows on from *Kathmandu Valley: the preservation of physical environment and cultural heritage* (q.v.), includes detailed recommendations for the preservation of individual monuments and for overall strategy.

**835 Rati-Lila, an interpretation of the tantric imagery of the temples of Nepal.**

Giuseppe Tucci. Translated from the Italian by James Hogarth. Geneva: Nagel, 1969. 165p. (Unknown Treasures Series).

This volume, in a series on the erotic art of different civilizations, discusses the rôle of sexual motifs in Indian religion from the Indus Valley civilization onwards, and suggests a possible joint origin for tantric sexual ideas and for the Chinese notion of *ying* and *yang*. There are 230 illustrations. Another treatment of this subject is Indra and Trilok Chandra Majupuria's *Erotic themes of Nepal: an analytical study and interpretation of religion-based sex expression misconstrued as pornography* (Kathmandu: Shakuntala Devi, 1976, 268p.).

**836 Nepalese temple architecture: its characteristics and its relations to Indian development.**

Ulrich Wiesner. Preface by J. E. van Lohuizen-de Leeuw. Leiden, Netherlands: E. J. Brill, 1978. 115p. bibliog.

Wiesner studies the principal temples, taking Pashupatinath as the starting point, and looking in particular at the portal system, cornices and roof struts. He argues for the

## **Arts. Traditional crafts and techniques**

derivation of Nepalese brick architecture (both temples and palaces) from Indian prototypes of the Kushana period (1st-2nd century AD). He also tries to show, from the origin legends of the temples, that shrines of three storeys and higher only began to be constructed in the 15th century.

### **The Kathmandu Valley towns.**

See item no. 14.

### **Preliminary report on the art and architecture of the Karnali region, west Nepal.**

See item no. 184.

### **The arts of Nepal.**

See item no. 807.

### **Metal casting in Nepal.**

See item no. 840.

### **On cire perdue casting in Nepal.**

See item no. 844.

# Traditional crafts and techniques

## **837 Nepalese cottage crafts.**

Bindu D. Adhikary. *Arts of Asia*, vol. 14, no. 4 (July-August 1984), p. 101-06.

This brief, illustrated survey includes reference to the production of garments and carpets, the manufacture of khukris and other forms of metalwork. The author also mentions the government's cottage industry export development project.

## **838 Traditional potters of the Kathmandu Valley: an ethnoarchaeological study.**

Judy Birmingham. *Man*, vol. 10 (new series), no. 3 (Sept. 1975), p. 370-86.

Intended to assist archaeologists' interpretation of ceramic remains, this study concentrates on Newar potters in Thimi and Bhadgaon in the Kathmandu Valley. The author looks at the range of pots made, their interrelationship with containers made from other materials and the potters' motivation in producing variations in pattern. She also gives some brief construction details, and a list of Nepali names for different kinds of pot. This article is illustrated with black-and-white photographs and drawings.

## **839 The Tibetan carpet.**

Philip Denwood. Warminster, England: Aris & Phillips, 1978. 2nd. ed. 101p. bibliog.

Drawing partly on observation of the craft in Nepal amongst the Sherpas and in Dolpo, this study discusses techniques, equipment and designs as well as the cultural



background of the 'Tibetan' carpet. The book is illustrated with colour photographs. Another treatment of the subject is Hullvard Kare Kuldy's *Tibetan rugs* (Bangkok: White Orchid, 1983).

**840 Metal casting in Nepal.**

Evelyn Domingo-Barker, David K. Barker. *Arts of Asia*, vol. 14, no. 4 (July-August 1984), p. 107-10.

Provides an account of the *cire perdue* ('lost wax') process, in which a clay mould for casting is prepared by coating a wax model, the wax then being melted to make way for the metal. Whilst not as detailed as Andras Höfer's account, *On cire perdue casting in Nepal* (q.v.), the authors' description is more suitable for the general reader. Additional photographs of a metalworker's workshop are printed with the editorial of the journal in which the article appears.

**841 An illustrated handbook of Indian arms; being a classified and descriptive catalogue of the arms exhibited at the India Museum.**

Wilbrahim Egerton. London: William Allen, 1880. 162p. map.

Reprinted, Bangkok: White Orchid, 1981 (Bibliotheca Orientalis, I).

This work begins with a summary account of Indian military history, followed by a description of techniques of manufacture and an illustrated catalogue, arranged on the basis of ethnic group. Nepal is covered on p. 100-08, with line drawings mostly showing swords and knives.

**842 Traditional arts and crafts of Nepal.**

C. L. Gajurel, K. K. Vaidya. Foreword by Suresh Raj Sharma. New Delhi: S. Chand, 1984. 354p.

This basic reference work on Nepal's traditional technologies, is written with a view to their being employed for both Nepal and other Third World countries. Areas covered include metallurgy and metalwork, building materials and terra cotta, weaving, woollen products, dyeing, paper and ink production, food processing, and various mechanical devices.

**843 A settlement and smithy of the blacksmiths (Kami) in Nepal.**

Andras Höfer. *Kailash*, vol. 4, no. 4 (1976), p. 349-96.

Presents an account of a Kami settlement three days' walk west of Pokhara. The author provides some details of the daily lives of the *kamai* and discusses their relations with other castes (they are an untouchable caste). He gives a full description, with plans and diagrams, of a smithy, of the materials used, and of the process of manufacturing an axe. Höfer gives the Nepali terms for all objects and processes mentioned.

**844 On cire perdue casting in Nepal.**

Andras Höfer. *Journal of the Nepal Research Centre*, vol. 4 (Humanities), (1980). p. 39-66. bibliog.

Offers a detailed treatment of the 'lost wax' casting process which is explained more simply in an article by Evelyn Domingo-Barker and David K. Barker (q.v.). Another account of the same process by a scholar connected with the Nepal Research Centre is Axel Michaels' *The making of a statue* (Stuttgart, GFR: Franz Steiner, 1988).

## **Arts. Traditional crafts and techniques**

### **845 Pottery-making in Thimi.**

Ulrike Müller. *Journal of the Nepal Research Centre*, vol. 6-7 (1981/2), p. 177-92.

Presents an account of the craft in Thimi, the fourth largest settlement in the Kathmandu Valley, which is famous as a potters' village. The author briefly covers the position of the Kumha (potter) caste, discussing marketing arrangements as well as technical details of the clay used and the manufacturing process. There are black-and-white illustrations.

### **846 The Hanuman Dhoka royal palace, Kathmandu. Building construction and local traditional crafts.**

John Sanday. London: Art and Archaeology Research Papers, 1974. 20p.

The restoration of the Hanuman Dhoka palace during the early 1970s involved the resuscitation of traditional crafts which had been virtually lost. This pamphlet, illustrated with black-and-white and colour photographs, includes material on bell casting, telia brick making and wood carving. A fuller description of the overall project is given in the author's *Building conservation in Nepal* (q.v.)

### **847 The use of bamboo in a Rai village in the Uper Arun valley. An example of a traditional technology.**

Klaus T. Seeland. *Journal of the Nepal Research Centre*, vol. 4 (Humanities), (1980), p. 175-88.

After an introduction to the village of Hedangna, the author discusses the local varieties of bamboo and the methods of working them, and gives an inventory of Nepali terms (with English explanations) for the items manufactured from them. In the conclusion, he argues for reliance on traditional technology rather than on inappropriate techniques imported from the West.

### **848 Ancient paper of Nepal.**

Jesper Trier. Copenhagen: Jutland Archaeological Society, 1972. 271p. 2 maps. bibliog. (Jutland Archaeological Society Publications, vol. X).

Illustrated with black-and-white photographs, plans and actual specimens of the paper discussed, this study covers the history of paper-making in Nepal, the techniques traditionally used for manufacture, the uses to which it is put, and the technical analysis of the different varieties. It is suggested that such analysis can provide a valuable means of dating manuscripts.

**La fabrication de la bière chez deux ethnies tibéto-birmanes du Népal: les Tamang et les Néwar.** (Beer-making among two Tibeto-Burman ethnic groups in Nepal: the Tamang and the Newars.)

See item no. 424.

**To plough or not to plough? A Newar dilemma. Taboo and technology in the Kathmandu valley, Nepal.**

See item no. 687.

# Cooking

849 **Joys of Nepalese cooking (A most comprehensive and practical book on Nepalese cookery).**

Indra Majupuria. Madhoganj, India: S.S. Devi, 1981-82. 2nd ed. 332p.

This compilation of 350 recipes is illustrated with drawings and photographs.

850 **Nepali cooking.**

Meg Sheffield, Siddhanta Shaha. *Kailash*, vol. 6, no. 2 (1978). p. 127-40.

This article gives some basic recipes, including boiled rice, black and yellow *dal*, various kinds of chutney (*achar*) and curry, and *jar* (rice beer). There is a glossary of Nepali terms for food and cooking utensils.

851 **Cooking in Nepal.**

Summer Institute of Linguistics. Kathmandu: Ratna Pustak Bhandar, 1982. 204p.

Whilst offering a few genuinely Nepalese recipes, this compilation by the staff of various Western-based organizations working in Nepal, is principally intended to help expatriates make the most of locally available food and of improvised cooking facilities. The book begins with a list of foodstuffs in English and Nepali, and includes hints on cooking and eating while trekking.

# Music and dance

852 **Nepalese musical instruments.**

T. D. Ballinger, Purna Harsha Bajracharya. *South-Western Journal of Anthropology*, vol. 16, no. 4 (1960), p. 398-416. bibliog.

After discussing two 19th-century accounts by Archibald Campbell ('Notes on the musical instruments and agricultural and other implements of the Nepalese', *Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society of Bengal*, vol. 6 (1837), p. 953-56) and Daniel Wright (*History of Nepal* (q.v.)), the authors give brief descriptions of the main instruments of Nepal, with some drawings, including information on how they are played and in what context. There are also details of the various *baja* (ensembles) and the occasions on which they perform. The introduction discusses caste-restrictions affecting music, and the influx of Indian and European musical instruments into Nepal.

## Arts. Music and dance

### 853 **Les récits chantés de l'Himalaya et le contexte ethnographique.** (The ballads of the Himalaya and the ethnographic context.)

Marc Gaborieau. In: *Contributions to the anthropology of Nepal*. Edited by Christoph von Fürer-Haimendorf. Warminster: Aris & Phillips, p. 98-113.

The author classifies the ballads of western Nepal and Kumaon into four types, then analyses in depth the narrative content of twelve love songs in the *bharau* (heroic songs) category. Gaborieau identifies the recurrent pattern of a woman, married off by her father, who subsequently falls in love with another man, with an ensuing conflict between husband and lover. The songs are seen to reverse the prevailing social attitudes, since they idealize the lovers whereas society sympathizes with fathers and husbands.

### 854 **Castes de musiciens au Népal.** (Musician castes in Nepal).

Mireille Helffer. Paris: Musée de l'Homme, 1969. 62p., 39p. map. bibliog.

Comprises two pamphlets, with French and English text, which accompany an excellent record of the same title. The tracks included are examples of *damai baja* (drum band) wedding music, a *hudkiya* dance song and five *gaine* (minstrel caste) songs. The booklets include detailed notes, photographs, song texts and translations. Three other important contributions by Helffer are: 'Fanfares villageoises au Népal' (Village fanfares in Nepal), *Objets et mondes*, vol. 9, no. 1 (1969), p. 51-58, on the *damai* or professional musician caste; 'Une caste de chanteurs-musiciens – les Gaine du Népal' (A caste of singer-musicians – the Gaine of Nepal), *L'Ethnographie*, vol. 73 (1977), p. 45-75; and, with A. W. Macdonald, 'Sur un sarangi de gaine' (On a Gaine's *sarangi*), *Objets et mondes*, vol. 6, no. 2 (1966), p. 133-42, describing the Gaine's fiddle.

### 855 **The folksongs of Nepal.**

W. Kaufmann. *Ethnomusicology*, vol. 6 (May 1962), p. 93-114.

After a general introduction, the author presents text, translation, and some musical details for eighteen Nepalese and five Tibetan songs. He then performs a statistical analysis of scale, range and form, and from his small sample makes generalizations about metre and rhythmic features. There are no details of location or social context.

### 856 **Gurung village music.**

Pirkko Lahtinen, Matti Lahtinen. *Anthropologiska Studier*, nos. 25-26 (Special Ethno-Musicology Issue), (1978), p. 38-41. bibliog.

Presents an anthropological survey of music in the life of the Gurung village of Klinu, in Lamjung district. There is a general introduction to Gurung culture and social organization in Klinu and to the agricultural and musical annual cycles. The authors then describe four musical institutions: *ghatao* dance-drama; *gyapre* (shamanist) funeral music; the celebration of *purpude*, which marks the reception of a first-born male child into the community; and *tetar*, a modern form of dance-drama probably introduced by soldiers returning from India in the 1950s. A brief epilogue considers the effects of social change on the Gurungs and their music.

857 **An annotated bibliography and discography of Nepalese music.**

Carol Tingey. *International Council for Traditional Music UK Bulletin*, vol. 11 (July 1985), p. 4-20, vol. 12 (Dec. 1985), p. 35-44.

In this list, the compiler gives abstracts of fifty-four books or articles, and eighteen recordings. Most of the available literature up to 1984 is included. Tingey is also author of a study of the major five traditional instruments, *Heartbeat of Nepal: the pancai baja* (Kathmandu: Royal Nepal Academy, forthcoming).

858 **The Dhimaybaja of Bhaktapur. Studies in Newar drumming, 1.**

Gert-Matthias Wegner. Stuttgart, GFR: Franz Steiner, 1986. 130p. 2 maps. (Nepal Research Centre Publications, 12).

The author discusses the technique of playing the traditional Newar drum (*dhimay*), and the cymbals (*sichyay*) which accompany it. Wegner lists the various dhimay bands in Bhaktapur, of one of which he himself became a member. Examples of their music are given in the traditional notation (letters of the Devanagari script), in a transliteration of this, and in Western notation. He also gives translations of the ribald verses exchanged between rival districts in accompaniment to the drumming. The book is illustrated with black-and-white photographs and includes a summary in Newari as well as a glossary of Newari terms used. Another work by the author on traditional music is 'Navadapha of Bhaktapur' in Niels Gutschow's and Axel Michaels', *Heritage of the Kathmandu Valley* (q.v.).

859 **Nayakhibaja of the Newar butchers. Studies in Newar drumming, 2.**

Gert Matthias Wegner. Stuttgart, GFR: Franz Steiner, 1988. 109p. 2 maps. bibliog. (Nepal Research Centre Publications, 13).

Presents a study of the traditional music, played at funerals and other rituals by members of the Newar *Nay* or *Kasai* (butcher) caste, with drums (*nayakhi*) and cymbals (*sichyah*). The author obtained his information from a survey taken in 1983 and by his own apprenticeship to one of the bands in 1985-86. As well as explaining technical and organizational aspects, he places the music in its social context, pointing out that its rôle of indentifying the player as a member of one of the lowest castes in the Newar hierarchy has heightened the reluctance of present-day youngsters to learn it, and that the *sibaja* (death music) is believed to bring misfortune if played out of its ritual context. Appendices give details of the various *nayakhibaja* groups, examples of their music in western notation and (transcribed) traditional Newar notation, and a Newari summary together with the Devanagari version of the musical notation. There is a glossary of Newari terms, and the work is illustrated with black-and-white photographs.

860 **A classification of the traditional musical instruments of the Newars.**

Sigrun Wiehler-Schneider, Hartmut Wiehler. *Journal of the Nepal Research Centre*, vol. 4 (Humanities), (1980), p. 67-132. bibliog.

Provides informed descriptions of a comprehensive collection of Newar instruments, including details of construction and mode of playing, measurements of instruments and notes on the types of ensemble in which they feature. All are abundantly illustrated with black-and-white photographs, although the quality of some of the photographs has suffered in reproduction. Some interesting conclusions about Newar music are drawn from the study of the instruments, for example, the importance of rhythm and of percussive tone colours is recognized. The article ends with an excellent summary tabulation of all the essential information.

## Arts. Festivals

### Unknown Nepal.

See item no. 26.

### History of Nepal.

See item no. 175.

### Essays on the ethnography of Nepal and South Asia.

See item no. 375.

# Festivals

## 861 **The festivals of Nepal.**

Mary M. Anderson. London: George Allen & Unwin, 1971; New Delhi: Rupa, 1977. 288p. bibliog.

Presents a straightforward description, without anthropological complexities, of the principal festivals. Arranged in calendar order from the Nepalese New Year in mid-April, it includes some of the legends told in connection with the festivals. The work is illustrated with colour photographs taken by the author, who lived in Kathmandu for five years.

## 862 **The Nepal festivals: with some articles enquiring into Nepalese arts, religion and culture.**

Dhurba Krishna Deep. Kathmandu: Ratna Pustak Bhandar, [1982]. 128p.

This 'pocket-size' collection of essays covers different festivals, gods and shrines. Most of the essays originally appeared as feature articles in *The Rising Nepal* (q.v.).

## 863 **Guide to enjoying Nepalese festivals: an introductory survey of religious celebration in Kathmandu Valley.**

Jim Goodman. Kathmandu: Kali, 1981. 118p. bibliog.

Drawing some of its material from Mary Anderson's book (q.v.), this 'pocket-size' publication, illustrated with some black-and-white photographs. After a general introduction, the author gives a brief, systematic account of the date, duration, location and activities of each festival, and also of their significance. A chart at the back of the book summarizes the key information.

## 864 **Two festivals among the Tharus (Holi and Maghe Sankranti).**

Alexander W. Macdonald. In: *Essays on the ethnology of Nepal and South Asia*, Kathmandu: Ratna Pustak Bhandar, 1975, p. 275-80. (Bibliotheca Himalayica, Series III, vol. 3).

Offers brief descriptions of the celebration by the Tharus (a tribal people of the *tarai*) of spring and winter festivals more readily associated with caste Hindus.

**865 Nepalese notes: the Janaipurnimā and the Gosāinkunda.**

Alexander W. Macdonald. In: *Essays on the ethnology of Nepal and South Asia*, Kathmandu: Ratna Pustak Bhandar, 1975, p. 297-308 (Bibliotheca Himalayica, Series III, vol. 3).

Provides accounts of the festival in July and August at which time high-caste Hindus change their sacred thread (*janai*). Macdonald also describes the ceremonies held at about the same time at the Lake in Gosainkund, which lies at an altitude of 14,372 feet in the hills north-west of the Kathmandu Valley, and is sacred to Shiva.

**866 Nepal, the land of festivals (religious, cultural, social and historical festivals).**

Trilok Chandra Majupuria, S. P. Gupta. New Delhi: S. Chand, 1981. 152p. bibliog.

This illustrated survey includes a discussion of the function and major ingredients of festivals, and of sacrifice as a ritual, with an account of the Hindu calendar and a chronology covering forty individual festivals.

**Tharus of Dang: rites de passage and festivals.**

See item no. 415.

## Customs and costume

**867 Ethnic jewellery of Nepal.**

Evelyn Domingo-Barker, David K. Barker. *Arts of Asia*, vol. 14, no. 4 (July-August 1984), p. 111-16.

Provides an illustrated survey, concentrating in particular on Newar jewellery, and including necklaces, bracelets, charm boxes and other ornaments.

**868 Nepalese customs and manners.**

Keshar Lall. Kathmandu: Ratna Pustak Bhandar, 1976. 59p.

This entertaining compilation includes some basic etiquette and a large number of folk beliefs and superstitions. Most of the material is drawn from the Kathmandu Valley, but this is interspersed with some information on Sherpa beliefs and practices.

**Nepal and the Gurkhas.**

See item no. 17.

**Picturesque Nepal.**

See item no. 28.

**Nepalese women.**

See item no. 433.

**Nepal rediscovered.**

See item no. 815.

# Numismatics

**869 Nepali rastriya muda.** (Nepalese national coinage.)

Satya Mohan Joshi. Kathmandu: Sajha, 2042 V.S. (1985-86).

Apart from an English sub-title (*Nepalese coins with illustrations*), printed on the front-cover but not on the title page, this comprehensive guide to Nepalese coins is entirely in Nepali. It covers issues from the Licchavi period (5th-8th centuries AD) down to 1984-85, and includes, for the modern period, special commemorative coins as well as those minted for general circulation. The illustrations are ample, but have suffered rather in reproduction.

**870 Evolution of Nepali coins.**

Satya Mohan Joshi. *Regmi Research Series*, vol. 8, no. 1 (Jan. 1976), p. 8-15.

This overview of the development of Nepalese coins is translated from 'Nepali mudrako kramik vikas' in the first edition of *Nepali rashtriya mudra* (Nepalese national coinage.) (Lalitpur, Nepal: Jagadamba, 2019 V.S. (1962-63), p. 6-12).

**871 Minting in Nepal.**

Satya Mohan Joshi. *Regmi Research Series*. vol. 8, no. 3 (March 1976), p. 1-5.

Presents a short historical note translated from 'Mudra banaune pranali' (Method of making coins) in *Nepali rastriya mudra*, p. 13-18.

**872 Malla coins.**

Edited by Jagdish Chandra Regmi, Sheshraj Shiwakothi, Ashok Upreti. Forewords by Y. P. Pant, Madhan Bahadur Pradhan. *Nepal Antiquary*, nos. 46-50 (Golden Jubilee Special Issue). 210p. bibliog.

Drawing on the work of E. H. Walsh, Satya Mohan Joshi and Dilli Rahman Regmi, this issue contains a description of individual rulers and their coins, followed by a catalogue of individual coins with brief annotations. Many entries are illustrated, but the illustrations have suffered in reproduction. The issue also contains bibliographies on slavery in Nepal, the district of Dolakha and law studies.

**873 Coins in medieval Nepal.**

N. C. Rhodes, C. Valdettaro. *Numismatic Chronicle*, 7th series, vol. 16 (1976), p. 158-66.

The authors discuss four types of coin and suggest that they belong to the period between the 8th and the mid-16th centuries, a period from which Nepalese coins had not previously been identified. Valdettaro is currently compiling a new, general catalogue of Nepalese coins.



**874 The copper coins of India.**

W. H. Valentine. London: Spink & Son, 1914. 2 vols. maps.  
Reprinted, New Delhi: Inter-India, 1983.

Eight Nepalese coins, from the reigns of Surendra (1847-81) and Prithvi Bir (1881-1911), are described and illustrated on p. 78-79 of the first volume. The 1983 edition is entitled *The copper coins of India, including Bangladesh, Burma, Nepal and Pakistan*.

**875 The coinage of Nepal.**

E. H. Walsh. *Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society of Great Britain and Northern Ireland*, July 1908 (p. 669-759, 1132-36). Reprinted, with an introduction by T. P. Verma, Delhi; Varanasi, India: Indological Book House, 1973. 92p.

This illustrated list of over 100 coins from the British Museum and from the author's own collection, covers the period from Licchavi times to the reign of King Prithvi Bir (1881-1911). Verma's introduction to the 1973 edition adds a general account of the Licchavis and of their coinage.

## Folklore

**876 The king who rides a tiger, and other tales from Nepal.**

Patricia Hitchcock. Berkeley, California: Parnassus, 1966. 134p.

This illustrated volume contains twelve Nepalese folk tales, with notes and a glossary. The titles are: Soonimaya; The perfect husband; How the travellers shared their meal; Bundar Bahadur Poon; The jackal and the bear; The proud father; The stolen jewel; Why the flea hops; The king who rides a tiger; Why the jackal howls; Lato, the stupid one; and The soldier's return.

**877 The abominable snowman adventure.**

Ralph Izzard. London: Hodder & Stoughton; New York: Doubleday, 1955. 250p.

Provides the official account of the expedition of 1954, organized by the London *Daily Mail*, to search for the abominable snowman.

**878 The seven sisters and other Nepalese tales.**

Keshar Lall. Kathmandu: I. M. Bajracharya, 1967. 58p.

Presents thirteen stories from various regions, including the Kathmandu Valley, Palpa and Khumbu, some of the material being of Tibetan origin. Particular words or concepts are glossed in each story. A list of the informants for each story and their place of birth is provided at the end of the book. Another collection compiled by Lall is *Lore and legend of Nepal* (Kathmandu: J. Lall, 1961. 56p.).

## Arts. Folklore

### 879 **Himalayan folklore.**

E. S. Oakley, Tara Dutt Gairola. Allahabad, India: Superintendent Printing and Stationery, United Provinces, 1935. 315p. Reprinted, with an introduction by Marc Gaborieau, Kathmandu: Ratna Pustak Bhandar, 1977. (Bibliotheca Himalayica, Series II, vol. 10).

The original edition, edited by Gairola and referring only to Kumaon, contains thirty-two 'legends of heroes' collected by himself, plus sixty-five folktales collected by Oakley and Pandit Ganga Datta Upreti. In his introduction to the reprint, entitled *Himalayan folklore – Kumaon and West Nepal*, Gaborieau points out that many of the legends are preserved in western Nepal also. He describes the different types of performance now given to the legends, discusses the different categories of bard associated with them, and supplements Gairola's section with missing stories either known from subsequent Indian researches or recorded in the field by Gaborieau himself. Gaborieau also distinguishes between the religious Gairola tales and the legends of possibly historical personages, and considers the history of the region in the light of the latter. Photographs of bardic performances and of a *trance* medium are included.

### 880 **Yeti tells – all about the abominable snowman.**

Ram Kumar Pandey. Foreword by Dor Bahadur Bista. Kathmandu: Sajha, 1981. 2nd ed. 103p. bibliog.

Although related 'tongue-in-cheek', in the persona of the yeti himself, this book also provides a fairly full account of all the evidence to date for the creature's existence. Appendices include a chronological list of alleged sightings.

### 881 **Tales of Kathmandu: folktales from the Himalayan kingdom of Nepal.**

Karna Sakya, Linda Griffith. Foreword by Marich Man Singh.

Brisbane, Australia: House of Kathmandu, 1980. 256p. bibliog.

Presents a collection of sixty-one tales from the Newar and Parbatiya (Indo-Nepalese) traditions, arranged according to the general classification scheme for folk-tales set up by Antti Aarne and Stith Tompson (*The types of the folktale*. Helsinki, 1961). An introduction discusses folktales in general, referring to the main theories of their origin and interconnection, gives some detail of their rôle in Nepalese society and identifies principal motifs and themes in the Nepalese tales. An appendix provides 'tale type' and 'motif type' reference numbers according to the Aarne classification. There is also a short 'pictorial glossary' of Nepalese artefacts. This is probably the best book available for those interested in comparative folklore, while the tales themselves are well rendered and also fully suitable for the general reader.

### 882 **Folklore of Nepal.**

Man Mohan Sharma. New Delhi: Vision, 1978. 2nd ed. 216p.

This anthology was compiled by an Indian army brigadier, who obtained his material from members of his own regiment, the 5th/8th Gorkha Rifles (Sirmoor Rifles), and from the subedar-majors of other Indian Gorkha units. He gives a general introduction to the country and its people, marred by one or two errors (for example, the statement that Nepal's borders have been unchanged since 1816, and his application of the term *matwali* to Magars alone). He then presents fifty-five stories, including both folk-tales in the strict sense and origin myths of such places as the Kathmandu Valley. There are also chapters on folk-song and on proverbs with examples in transliteration and translation, and a glossary of Nepali terms used in the text.

**883 Folk tales of Nepal.**

Nagendra Sharma. New Delhi: Sterling, 1979. 110p. (Folk Tales of the World, no. 2)

Presents thirty-one stories, originally published in the magazine section of *The Rising Nepal* (q.v.). The tales, mostly taken from the middle hills area, are breezily narrated.

**884 Folk tales of Nepal (first series).**

Karunkar Vaidya. Kathmandu: Himalayan Pioneer Publications, 1961. 125p.

Offers a collection of eleven easily readable stories with a brief general introduction. The popular story of 'The seven sisters' is included (as it is in Karna Sakya and Linda Griffith's *Tales of Kathmandu* (q.v.)). Vaidya has also published *Nepalese folk tales and legends (2nd series)* (Kathmandu: Purna Book Stall, 1978) and *Folk lores and legends from Pokhara (western Nepal)* (Kathmandu: Ratna Pustak Bhandar, 1978).

# Statistics

**885 Population census 1981.**

National Planning Commission, Central Bureau of Statistics.  
Kathmandu. 1984. 10 vols.

Presents the official English language text of the findings of the last nationwide census. An analysis of changes revealed by successive censuses since the end of the Rana régime is provided in the NPC's *Intercensal changes of some key census variables – Nepal 1952/4 to 1981* (Kathmandu, 1985).

**886 Statistical year book of Nepal 1987.**

National Planning Commission, Central Bureau of Statistics. Preface by  
B. R. Regmi. Kathmandu, 1987. 516p.

The first issue of what is intended to be a biennial publication, this is a large format book, giving fuller data than that available in the *Statistical pocket book* (q.v.). The chapters, which each have a descriptive introduction, cover the following subjects: area and population; food and agriculture; forest; climate; tourism; health and family planning; transport and communication; education; money; banking and credit; external payments and foreign trade; government finance; national accounts; prices; industry; water power and irrigation; international comparisons; and miscellaneous (including crime rates, legal cases, and vehicle registrations).

**887 Nepal overseas trade statistics.**

Kathmandu: Trade Promotion Centre, 1980-81- . annual.

This publication, which replaced the previous *Overseas trade statistics* in 1975, gives detailed statistics for the country's foreign trade, broken down both by categories of goods and by trading partner. The Trade Promotion Centre has also published *Nepal's trade and transit agreements (as of force 1983)* (Kathmandu, 1983), which includes the text of the 1978 agreements with India.

**888 Statistical pocket book – Nepal.**

Kathmandu: National Planning Commission. 1982- . biennial.

This is a handy and inexpensive publication, with over 100 statistical tables on different aspects of Nepal's population and economy. Each edition is prefaced with a short, general introduction to the country and its people, and there is also a map showing administrative divisions.

**Population monograph of Nepal.**

*See item no. 242.*

**Population projection of Nepal: regional and sectoral 1981-2001.**

*See item no. 243.*

**Population of Nepal.**

*See item no. 261.*

**Handbook of agricultural statistics of Nepal.**

*See item no. 673.*

**National sample census of agriculture 1981/2.**

*See item no. 673.*

**A survey of employment, income distribution and consumption.**

*See item no. 693.*

**Nepal district profile: a districtwise socio techno-economic profile of Nepal.**

*See item no. 777.*

**Nepal: district profile – education.**

*See item no. 899.*

# Education

**889 Action not words: the need to make education a force for rural development.**

Nicholas Bennett. In: *A final report of National Workshop on Educational Innovation, 5-6 June 1983, Pokhara, Nepal*. Kathmandu: National Education Committee, 1983. p. 56-72.

In a trenchant exposition of the ills besetting the Nepalese school system, the author argues that it offers an education irrelevant to the needs of rural communities, and that even that is done inefficiently. This pattern is contrasted with an account of the objectives of the Education for Rural Development project in Seti zone which the author himself headed. A shorter presentation of the author's views is 'Crops cannot be grown on the blackboard nor certificates eaten' in *Bikas-binas? Development-destruction?*, edited by Kunda Dixit and Ludmilla Túting (q.v.).

**890 Higher education in crisis.**

Binod Bhattarai, Sajag Rana. In: *Himal*, vol. 1, no. 1 (July 1988), p. 32-33.

This brief survey is perhaps unduly pessimistic, but does highlight the problems of low standards, low staff morale and general drift, which preoccupy many involved in Nepalese education.

**891 Education and development.**

Kathmandu: Resource Centre for Educational Innovation and Development. 1975- . annual.

This publication carries articles both on Nepalese education and on broader regional and Third World issues. It is probably the best source for keeping track of the latest Nepalese thinking on education.

**892 Education reform in Nepal: an evaluation.**

Louis D. Hayes. *Asian Survey*, vol. 21, no. 6 (June 1981), p. 676-88.

The author describes the rationale behind Nepal's National Educational System Plan and its implementation in the early 1970s, focusing on the attempts to make education more vocational and to restrict enrolment for arts courses at college level. Hayes also considers the creation of the National Development Service, which made a period of village service a compulsory requirement for completion of a Master's degree. He sees the NDS as having enjoyed some success in the early days, particularly where students were posted to remote villages. The NDS was suspended during the agitation before the 1979 referendum, and the attempt to limit arts enrolments was abandoned at the same time. Hayes is also co-author, with Peter Koehn, of 'Student politics in traditional monarchies: a comparative analysis of Ethiopia and Nepal' (*Journal of Asian and African Studies*, vol. 13, no. 1-2 (Jan.-April 1978), p. 33-49), which contrasts the Ethiopian students' opposition to the former régime of Emperor Haile Selassie with their Nepalese counterparts' acceptance of the Nepalese monarchy.

**893 Schoolhouse in the clouds.**

Edmund Hillary. London: Hodder & Stoughton, 1964. 180p. maps.

Presents an account of the building of a school for the Sherpa children of Khumjung in Solu Khumbu. The project was undertaken by the author at the request of the children themselves, and led to his continuing involvement in other development projects in the area. The book includes some colour photographs.

**894 The road to nowhere: a selection of writings, 1966-1977.**

Kamal Prakash Malla. Kathmandu: Sajha, 1979. 255p.

This collection of twenty frequently acerbic essays is the work of a prominent Nepalese academic, who was rector at Tribhuvan University until the disturbances of 1979. Malla's general theme is an intellectual's dissatisfaction with many aspects of Nepalese life. The book contains an account of his own experience with the English language, culminating in two periods of university life in the UK, and discussions of many national institutions, including Tribhuvan University, the Royal Nepal Academy, and the English-language government daily, *The Rising Nepal* (q.v.). There is also comment on the ill-fated National Education System Plan, in the implementation of which Malla was himself closely involved. Malla is also author of *English in Nepalese education* (Kathmandu: Ratna Pustak Bhandar, 1977. 40p.)

**895 A final report of National Workshop on Educational innovation, 5-6 June, Pokhara, Nepal.**

National Education Committee. Kathmandu, 1983. 127p.

Presents papers and working group recommendations from a conference of national and international agencies sponsored by UNESCO. The main focus is on technical education, non-formal education, and the gearing of study to employment. Past policies are reviewed and suggestions for change are made.

## **Education**

### **896 Education in Nepal. Report of the Nepal National Education Planning Commission.**

Kathmandu: Bureau of Publications, College of Education, 1956. 259p. maps.

This report was submitted by the commission set up in 1953 to survey the existing system and to make recommendations on the establishment of a system of universal education. Although actual progress since then has not been as fast as the commission envisaged, the document remains a major milestone in the evolution of Nepalese education. A less formal account of the commission's work has been provided by its American advisor, Hugh B. Wood, in his *Nepal diary* (q.v.).

### **897 Patterns of education and literacy in a village panchayat of central Nepal.**

Todd Ragsdale. *Contributions to Nepalese Studies*, vol. 2, no. 1 (Feb. 1975), p. 19-38. bibliog.

Presents the results of the author's census of schooling and literacy in a Gurung-dominated village panchayat, a few hours' walk north-east of Pokhara. Ragsdale finds that seventy per cent of the male Gurungs were literate, a figure far above the national average, but one consistent with that reported by Bernard Pignède, *Les Gurungs – une population himalayenne du Népal* (q.v.). He suggests that the high rate of literacy is due to education during army service, and also to Gurung community cohesiveness which facilitates their acquisition of surplus funds to be invested in education. The author has now published a full-length study of the impact of education on the Gurungs, focusing on the effects of the new National Education System Plan in the 1970s: *Once a hermit kingdom* (New Delhi: Manohar, 1989).

### **898 Nepal in transition: educational innovation.**

Horace B. Reed, Mary J. Reed. Pittsburgh, Pennsylvania: University of Pittsburgh Press, 1968. 215p. bibliog. (University of Pittsburgh, Studies in Comparative Education, 7).

Based on the authors' experiences in Nepal in 1964-65, this study includes lengthy reports of conversations with individual Nepalese. The authors survey cultural patterns which are seen as impeding the growth of modern education and development. It is suggested that these include the lack of real desire for change, an excessive preoccupation with individual power and wealth rather than with community values, and a Hindu-Buddhist philosophy that mitigates against a scientific outlook and is interested more in the manipulation of symbols for their own sake. The problems caused by a lack of a precise sense of time, and the widespread acceptability of cheating in examinations are also discussed.

### **899 Nepal: district profile – education.**

Nirmal Nath Rimal. Kathmandu: National Research Associates, 1986. 280p. map.

Educational statistics from official sources are presented by districts. The information given includes details of: schools, students and enrolment; teachers and teacher-student ratios; teacher qualifications; school and campus populations as a proportion of the total population according to the censuses of 1971 and 1981; estimated out-of-school population in 1979; drop-out percentages at primary level; School Leaving Certificate results; literacy rate; and the adult literacy programme.



**900 Establishing and development of Tribhuvan University (1955-1973).**

Soorya Bahadur Shakya. Foreword by Netra Bahadur Basnyat.  
Kathmandu: Research Division, Rector's Office, Tribhuvan University,  
1984. 370p. bibliog. (Silver Jubilee Publication Series).

Provides a detailed account of the early years of the University prior to its reorganization under the National Education System Plan in 1973. The author emphasizes the absence before that time of serious research work, or of scientific and technical work, a defect which has now been partially remedied. Rather inconveniently for foreign readers, the history employs Nepalese dates without Julian equivalents.

**901 Educational experiments in Nepal.**

Kedar N. Shrestha. Kathmandu: Institute of Education, Tribhuvan  
University, 1982. 135p. bibliog.

A good introduction to the present system and its historical development, this book comprises papers originally written for use in the training of education personnel. Topics covered are: primary education; secondary education; school management; school financing; the instructional supervision system; popular participation; and teacher training. The author regrets the unravelling of the National Education System Plan proposals of the 1970s, and in particular the rescinding of the ban on private, English medium education, but admits that rigidities in the scheme's implementation were partly to blame for its failure.

**902 Adult literacy in Nepal.**

Ramesh Shrestha. Kirtipur: Institute of Nepal and Asian Studies,  
1977. 145p. bibliog.

This report is the result of a one-year study of the adult literacy programmes undertaken in Nepal since 1950. The author's findings suggest that the much-publicized adult literacy drive under the National Education System Plan (1971-76) had remained largely a paper exercise with few practical results.

**903 English as a second language/English as a foreign language distinction: its pedagogy and the Nepalese context.**

Ramesh Shrestha. *Contributions to Nepalese Studies*, vol. 11, no. 1  
(Dec. 1983), p. 45-59.

The author examines the teaching of English in Nepal and in particular its rôle as a medium of instruction at tertiary level. He suggests that in Nepal, English has some features of a foreign, and some of a second language. He argues that it is inappropriate to aim for native-speaker competence in the spoken language, and that priority needs to be given to reading, followed by writing.

**904 Some innovative educational programmes of education and rural development in Seti zone.**

I. P. Upadhyaya. *Education and Development*, p.119-29.

Presents an account of the Education for Rural Development project being run in Seti zone by the Nepal government, UNESCO, UNDP and UNICEF. Aspects emphasized include: the attempt to make the school and its compound into a development model for the catchment area; the improvement of teaching methods; special classes conducted by women for girls not attending regular school; adult education classes;

## **Education**

and the production of supplementary readers. Accounts by Nicholas Bennett, the project director, are given in *Action not words* (q.v.) and in *Bikas-binas? Development-destruction?* (q.v.), edited by Kunda Dixit and Ludmilla Tüting.

### **905 Education and polity in Nepal – an Asian experiment.**

Dharam Vir. Foreword by R. P. Bhatnagar. New Delhi: Northern Book Centre, 1988. 231p. bibliog.

The author discusses the relationship between education and modernization on the basis of his sample surveys of students at two campuses in Pokhara and Tansen undertaken in 1973-74. Vir compares one group studying under the old education system, and another under the National Education System Plan. He presents detailed information on the students' performance, attitudes and social background, concluding that education can be an important force for breaking down old restrictions, but that it can also serve in some ways to buttress tradition. Some of the author's ideas are presented in more concise form in 'Higher education and modernization in Nepal', *Eastern Anthropologist*, vol. 34, no. 4 (Oct.-Nov. 1981), p. 317-21.

### **906 Nepal.**

John Whelpton. In: *Arriving where we started. 25 years of Voluntary Service Overseas*. London: VSO, Intermediate Technology Development Group, 1983. p. 52-63.

This brief account of the author's experiences in 1972-74 as a volunteer teacher in campuses in Birganj on the Indo-Nepal border and in Kathmandu, includes reference to the problems of the higher education system and to student political involvement.

### **907 Nepal diary.**

Hugh B. Wood. Tillamook, Oregon: American Nepal Education Foundation, 1987. 366p. maps. bibliog.

Presents an account of the author's experiences as advisor to Nepal's National Educational Planning Commission in 1953-59, with a postscript on his return with UNESCO in 1962, when, in contrast to earlier boundless enthusiasm, he advised 'caution' in the pace of expansion. Montages of contemporary newspaper clippings are included to provide background to the educational developments. Among the author's many other writings on related topics are: (with Bruno Knall) *Educational planning in Nepal and its economic implications* (Kathmandu: UNESCO, 1962); *The development of education in Nepal* (Washington, DC: Department of Health, Education and Welfare, 1965); 'Agents of education and development in Nepal' (In: *The anthropological study of education*, The Hague: Mouton, 1976, p. 147-58. (World Anthropology)); and 'The humanities v. vocational education in Nepal' (*Journal of Development and Administrative Studies*, vol. 1, no. 1 (Aug. 1978)). The American Nepal Education Foundation, of which the author is the director, maintains a collection of materials for researchers and others, and details can be obtained from 2790 Cape Meares Loop NW, Tillamook, Oregon 97141, USA.

### **Some aspects of cultural policy in Nepal.**

See item no. 1.

### **The two-year mountain.**

See item no. 98.

**A classful of gods and goddesses in Nepal.**

*See item no. 102.*

**Population monograph of Nepal.**

*See item no. 242.*

**Population of Nepal.**

*See item no. 261.*

**The dynamics of student politics in Nepal 1961-75.**

*See item no. 456.*

**Graduates' elections – arena for opposition.**

*See item no. 457.*

**Dimensions of student politics.**

*See item no. 467.*

**Educational reform and student political behaviour in Nepal.**

*See item no. 472.*

**The seventh plan 1985-90 (a summary).**

*See item no. 615.*

**Drive against poverty – Nepal.**

*See item no. 620.*

**Earth, man, trees: development aid in Nepal.**

*See item no. 664.*

**The use and misuse of social science research in Nepal.**

*See item no. 909.*

**Research papers in physics.**

*See item no. 911.*

# Science and Technology

**908 Adoption of new technology and its social impact on rural communities in Asia (a country study of Nepal).**

Udaya Bahadur Amatya. Foreword by Santa Bahadur Gurung.

Kathmandu: Centre for Economic Development and Administration, 1987. 115p. map. bibliog.

In this study, sponsored by the Asian and Pacific Development Centre (APDC), Kuala Lumpur, Malaysia, the author discusses government policy on technology for rural development, and presents a case study on the impact of mechanical tillage. His conclusions are generally positive, arguing that although mechanization may widen some inequalities, women have more decision-making power in families owning tractors and that displaced labour tends to find employment elsewhere.

**909 The use and misuse of social science research in Nepal.**

J. Gabriel Campbell, Ramesh Shrestha, Linda Stone, with assistance from Lynn Bennett. Kathmandu: Centre for Nepal and Asian Studies, 1979. 154p. bibliog.

Offers an influential critique of the methodology of much research conducted in Nepal, arguing in particular that questionnaires such as that used in the fertility survey of 1976 often yield unreliable results because respondents do not answer truthfully and/or because the language used is too complicated. The chapter by Shrestha on the language issue is a good presentation of the problems caused by the divergence between the colloquial Nepali of the villager and the highly-Sanskritized, literary language.

**910 Research papers in zoology (papers presented in national and international scientific gatherings).**

Compiled by Shanti Mishra, Jeevan Shrestha. Kathmandu: Tribhuvan University, Central Library, 1986. 486p.

Comprises a collection of sixty-five papers presented by Nepalese scientists in Nepal and abroad from 1979 to 1983. The compilers set out to produce a comprehensive collection but admit that some papers will have been omitted. The book is divided into four sections: ecology; entomology; fisheries; and parasitology and malarial control.

**911 Research papers in physics (papers presented in national and international gatherings).**

Compiled by Shanti Mishra, Devi Dutta Poudyal. Kathmandu: Tribhuvan University, Central Library, 1987. 74p.

Presents a collection of seven papers, all of which are highly technical, apart from two on the teaching of physics. N. A. Joshi (p. 26-30) discusses problems at certificate level (the first two years of tertiary education), including the lack of demonstration equipment, excessively large classes, and the appointment of teachers on the basis of research ability only. In 'Teaching aids in physics in Nepal', Suresh R. Chalise and Devi D. Paudyal point out the lack of even the most basic aids, with overhead projectors being available in 1982 only at graduate level, and emphasize the difficulties of using English as a teaching medium. They assert that although some items have been produced by the national centre for materials development (the Janak Siksa Samagri Kendra), marketing has not been aggressive enough, and they recommend that the Asian Physical Society and the national physical societies should work together for change.

**912 Research papers in botany (papers presented in national and international scientific gatherings).**

Compiled by Shanti Mishra, K. K. Joshi. Kathmandu: Tribhuvan University, Central Library, 1986. 321p.

Offers a collection of papers, some of which were previously published in national or international journals. The papers are divided into the following classes: cytology/cytogenetics/cytotaxonomy; ecology/phytogeography; ethnobotany; plant pathology; physiology; taxonomy/floristic studies; miscellaneous. In 1985, the Library also published two sets of abstracts of theses in its collection: *Ph.D. and M.Sc. dissertation abstracts: botany and zoology*, and *Ph.D. and M.Sc. dissertation abstracts: chemistry and physics*.

**913 Scientific and technical organisations in Nepal.**

National Council for Science and Technology. Kathmandu, 1980. 188p.

An introductory note on the Council itself is followed by a description of institutions for science and technology, providing details of locations and aims, publications, and available laboratory equipment.

## **Science and Technology**

### **914 Science and technology for development in Nepal.**

National Council for Science and Technology. Foreword by Ratna Shumshere J. B. Rana. Kathmandu, 1978. 157p.

Presents the proceedings of the first National Science convention organized by the Council from 12 May to 15 May 1978, comprising working papers and summaries of panel discussions. Topics covered include the application of science and technology to development in the fields of: food and agriculture; health and nutrition; industry; natural resources and construction materials. The final paper deals with the development of science and technology themselves. Opening addresses in Nepali are printed at the back of the book.

### **915 Scientific research, technology development, transfer and dissemination: some guiding concepts (priority areas and programme components).**

Royal Nepal Academy of Science and Technology. Foreword by Ratna S. J. B. Rana. Kathmandu, 1983. 53p.

Sets out the objectives of RONAST, and outlines questions for discussion by working groups of Nepalese scientists, including areas for future research, and required institutions and incentives. The document identifies long-term and immediate priority activities in the areas of: agriculture; cottage and small-scale industry; the industrial sector; transport and communications; forestry; energy; building and construction; education; health and nutrition; and basic research. The groups' recommendations, including both detailed suggestions on research priorities, and some general proposals on the organization of science and technology in Nepal, were published in 1986 as *Consolidated report of 23 working groups constituted by RONAST in May 1983*.

### **916 Planning science and technology for national development.**

Royal Nepal Academy of Science and Technology. Kathmandu, 1985. 139p.

Presents proceedings of a conference held in December 1984 to mark RONAST's second anniversary. The papers are prefaced by a welcome address by Ratna S. J. B. Rana and an inaugural address by Lokendra Bahadur Chand. The principal aim of the conference was to compare the experiences of different countries, and participants from India, China, Malaysia, Japan, Singapore, Philippines, Thailand and Nepal presented papers on their national science policies. Summaries of the discussion are included after each group of papers.

### **917 National conference on science and technology – abstracts of scientific papers.**

Royal Nepal Academy of Science and Technology. Kathmandu, 1988. 118p.

Comprises abstracts of papers presented at a conference in April 1988. Papers are classified under the headings: biological science (agriculture, natural science, health and medicine); physical science; industry, technology and engineering; and general papers. An appendix of late entries covers agriculture, baby care, plant physiology and Ayurvedic medicine, the author of a paper on the last-mentioned endeavouring to prove *inter alia* that scientific evidence supports the Hindu prohibition on the eating of beef.

**Agricultural research in Nepal: resource allocation, structure and incentives.**  
See item no. 688.

# Index

The index is a single alphabetical sequence of authors (personal and corporate), titles of publications and subjects. Index entries refer both to the main items and to other works mentioned in the note to each item. Title entries are in italics. Numeration refers to the items as numbered rather than to page numbers.

## A

- Aarne, A. 881  
*Abode of snow* 741  
Abominable snowman  
  *see also* 'yeti' 718, 877  
*Abominable snowman*  
  *adventure* 877  
Abortion 237  
*Abstracts from Ph.D.*  
  *theses* 790  
Accidence 285  
*Account of the kingdom of*  
  *Nepal* (Hamilton) 37  
*Account of the kingdom of*  
  *Nepal* (de Rovato) 53  
*Account of the kingdom of*  
  *Nepaul* (Kirkpatrick)  
  37, 43, 53  
Achar 850  
Achard, T. 225  
Acharya, Babu Ram 208  
Acharya, Bhanubhakta 556  
Acharya, M. 261, 428-430  
Acharya, Rajeshwar 527  
Acharya, Tanaka Vilas 576  
Acoustics 276  
Adhikari, Krishna Kant  
  161, 189  
Adhikari, S.M. 176  
Adhikari, Shyam Prasad  
  591  
Adhikary, Bindu D. 837  
Adhikary, K.R. 312  
*Adikavi Bhanubhakta*  
  *Acharya* 556  
Administration 455-490  
  *passim*, 716  
*Administration and politics*  
  *in a Nepalese town* 360  
Administrative history 189,  
  193  
*Administrative Science*  
  *Quarterly* 638  
*Administrative system of*  
  *Nepal: from tradition*  
  *to modernity* 455  
*Adoption of new*  
  *technology and its*  
  *social impact on rural*  
  *communities in Asia*  
  908  
Adshead, R. 510  
*Adult literacy in Nepal* 902  
Adult literacy programmes  
  664, 899, 902  
Afforestation 664, 667  
Afghanistan 496, 788  
Agra 42  
*Agrarian reform and rural*  
  *development in Nepal*  
  – *a country review*  
  *paper* 658  
Agrawal, Govind Ram  
  429-430, 445, 447,  
  449-451, 527, 592,  
  594, 662  
Agrawal, Hem Narayan  
  455, 491  
Agrawal, R.G. 436  
*Agricultural credit survey*  
  677  
*Agricultural Development*  
  *Bank* 644  
*Agricultural Development*  
  *Council* 454  
*Agricultural development*  
  *in Nepal* 681  
*Agricultural finance in*  
  *Nepal* 668  
*Agricultural handbook:*  
  *Nepal* 669  
*Agricultural Project*  
  *Services Centre* 600,  
  636, 658-660, 676  
*Agricultural research in*  
  *Nepal: resource*  
  *allocation, structure*  
  *and incentives* 688  
*Agricultural techniques*  
  419  
*AGRINDEX* 655, 675-676  
*Agrisnepal – Nepal*  
  *agricultural*  
  *bibliography* 655, 675  
Ahicchatra 148  
Ahluwalia, R.S. 328  
Ahluwalia, H.P.S. 724  
Ahluwalia, I.B. 226  
Air transport 722-723  
*Air transport in Nepalese*  
  *perspective. A case*  
  *study of R.N.A.C.*  
  723  
Aiselukharka 98  
Aishwarya, Queen of  
  Nepal 583  
Alexander the Great 61

- Algae 126  
 Allchin, F.R. 827, 834  
 Allen, B. 698  
 Allen, M.R. 316-317, 431-432, 440, 442, 687  
 Allen, N.J. 227, 278  
 Almorah 44  
 Alps 29  
*Altitude geography: effects of altitude on the geography of Nepal* 73  
 Amatya, D.B. 593  
 Amatya, Purna P. 146, 761, 769  
 Amatya, Shaphalya 1, 797  
 Amatya, Soorya Lal 656  
 Amatya, Udaya Bahadur 908  
*American Ethnologist* 445  
 American Nepal Education Foundation 795, 907  
 Amin, M. 2  
 Amnesty International 492  
 Amodabalam 738  
*Among the Himalayas* 57  
*Among the Magars* 116  
 Amphibians 141  
 Amsuvarman 59  
*Ancient Nepal* (journal) 48, 146, 151, 158, 828  
*Ancient Nepal* (Regmi) 183  
*Ancient paper of Nepal* 848  
 Anderson, M.M. 861, 863  
 Anglo-Gorkha war 170, 162, 190, 191, 203, 205-206, 210, 217-218  
*Anglo-Nepalese relations from the earliest times of the British rule in India to the Gorkha war* 190, 214  
*Anglo-Nepalese relations in the 19th century* 200, 214  
*Angreji nepali sajha samkshipta shabdakosh* 299  
 Ankhu Khola-Trisuli (map) 81  
 Annapurna 56, 81, 92, 100, 126, 421, 671, 726, 743, 823  
*Annapurna south face* 727  
*Annapurna to Dhaulagiri* 735  
*Annapurna: a woman's place* 726  
*Annapurna: conquest of the first 8,000 metre peak* 736  
*Annapurna-Dhaulagiri* (map) 81  
*Annotated bibliography on women in Nepal* 453  
 Ansari, H. 716  
*Anthropological bibliography of South Asia* 370  
*Anthropological study of education* 907  
*Anthropologiska Studier* 856  
 Api 735  
 Applegate, G.B. 657  
 Arakhola 420  
 Aran, L. 800  
*Archaeological excavations in Kathmandu* 148  
*Archaeological excavations in the Nepal Tarai: 1946* 149  
*Archaeological remains of Kapilvastu, Lumbini and Devadaha* 159  
*Architecture sherpa* 823  
*Architecture, milieu et société en Himalaya* 824  
 Archives 794  
*Archives des sciences sociales des religions* 353  
*Area handbook for Nepal, Bhutan and Sikkim* 23  
 Armington, S. 96  
 Arms 841  
 Army (Nepalese) 55, 189, 224  
 Arne, A. 881  
*Arriving where we started. 25 years of Voluntary Service Overseas* 906  
 Arsenal Museum 41  
*Art and architecture of the Indian subcontinent* 802  
 Art galleries 1  
*Art of Nepal: a catalogue of the Los Angeles County Museum of Art collection* 808  
*Art of Nepal: a guide to the masterpieces of sculpture, painting, and woodcarving* 800  
*Artibus Asiae* 798, 820  
*Arts of Asia* 160, 799, 812, 813, 840  
*Arts of Nepal* 807  
 Arun river 100, 127  
*Arun – a natural history of the world's deepest valley* 118  
 Arun Valley 118, 521, 733  
 Arun-Tamar region 368  
 Aryal, Deepak Kumar 776-777  
 Aryal, Mukunda Raj 3  
 Asan Tol 340  
*Ascent of Dhaulagiri* 732  
*Ascent of Everest* 739, 742  
 Ascetics 227, 323-324, 330, 386  
 Ashoka 150, 157  
 Asia 156, 671  
*Asia Yearbook* 749  
 Asian and Pacific Development Centre (APDC) 908  
*Asian bureaucratic systems emergent from the British imperial tradition* 470  
 Asian Development Bank 605  
*Asian highland societies in anthropological perspective* 367, 495  
 Asian Physical Society 911  
*Asian Profile* 714  
*Asian Survey* 468, 470, 472, 506, 536, 626, 628, 629, 759, 892  
 Asiatic Society of Bengal 346  
*Aspects of a great traditional city in Nepal* 337



- Assam 504  
 Assum, G. 89  
*At the edge of psychology: essays in politics and culture* 339  
*Athpahariya Rai* 388  
 Atkinson, Edwin T. 162  
 Augusthy, K.T. 661  
 Austin, H. 292  
 Australia 657  
 Australian National University 698  
*Avadana* 570, 573-574  
 Avalokiteshvara 342  
 Axinn, G.H. 661  
 Ayurvedic medicine 253, 917  
 Azizur, R.K. 692
- B**
- B.P. Koirala. A case study in third world democratic leadership* 465  
 Back to the Village National Campaign 476  
 Badger, K. 72  
*Badhu-Siksha* 556  
 Baglung 116  
*Baha* 330, 344  
 'Baha Buddhism' 340  
*Bahi* 330, 344  
 Baidi Chok 820  
 Baidya, Bhuchandra P.R. 528  
 Bailey, F.G. 324  
 Baitadi district 697  
*Baja* 852  
 Bajpai, S.G. 170  
 Bajracharya, Bhuban Bajra, 715, 722  
 Bajracharya, Bhuban. B. 493  
 Bajracharya, Deepak 696  
 Bajracharya, M.L. 801  
 Bajracharya, Mana Bajra 318  
 Bajracharya, Purna Harsha 852  
 Bajracharya, Pushkar M. 493
- Bajracharya, R.R. 827  
 Bakundol 436, 437  
*Bala Krishna Sama* 557  
 Balance of payments 617  
 Bali 251  
 Ballads 853  
 Ballantine, H. 24  
 Ballinger, T.O. 817, 852  
 Bamboo 667, 847  
 Bandhu, C. 265  
 Banepa 102  
*Banepa* (map) 90  
 Banerjee, Manabendu 177  
 Banerjee. N.R. 818  
 Bangdel, Lain Singh 22, 122, 302, 306, 559, 580, 789, 790, 819  
 Bangladesh 544, 788  
 Banister J. 228  
 Banjarahi 149  
 Banke 635  
 Banking 617, 630, 644, 646, 648, 677  
 Bannerji, H.G. 45  
 Banskota, Mahesh 594, 595, 650, 662, 695, 722  
 Banskota, N.P. 640  
 Banyan Hill 399  
 Baragaon 369, 451  
 Baral, Ishwar 546, 569  
 Baral, Leelanteshwar Sharma 562  
 Baral, Lok Raj 456, 457, 458, 459, 460, 468, 527, 529, 748  
 Baral, M.R., 229  
 Bardiya 635  
 Bardiya Wildlife Reserve 125  
 Barker, D.K. 840, 844, 867  
 Basham, A.L. 178, 179  
*Basic colloquial Maithili. A Maithili-Nepali-English vocabulary with some structure* 280  
*Basic course in colloquial Newari* 286  
*Basic course in spoken Nepali* 287  
*Basic Gurkhali dictionary* 305  
*Basic Gurkhali grammar* 305
- 'Basic needs' 616, 634  
 Basket-making 424  
 Basnet, Agni Bahadur 93  
 Basnet, Lal Bahadur 509  
 Basnet, Netra Bahadur 900  
 Basnets 224  
 Basti district (U.P.) 160  
*Batisputrikakatha, the tales of the thirty-two statuettes* 571  
 Batt, D.D. 697  
 Batta, Motiram 270  
 Baume, L.C. 725  
 BBC *see* British Broadcasting Corporation  
 Bechert, H. 338  
 Beegun, H.L. 333  
 Beer-making 424  
*Beginning Nepali* 291  
 Belaspur (*pseudonym*) 360-361  
 Belbase, K. 663  
 Belknap, B.J. 757  
 Bendall, C. 25  
 Bengal 203, 326, 354, 734, 830  
 Bengal tiger 132  
 Bengali (language) 32, 555  
 Bennett, L. 230, 430, 433, 434-437, 909  
 Bennett, N. 889  
 Berger, F. 664  
 Berkeley 638  
 Berlin 811  
 Berne Convention 752  
 Bernier, R.M. 801, 820-821, 822  
 Berreman, G.D. 357  
 Beyer, J.C. 596  
 Bezruchka, S. 97  
 Bhadgaon 838  
*see also* Bhaktapur  
 Bhadra, Binayak 719  
 Bhairawa 137  
 Bhaktapur 8, 85, 90, 91, 355, 612, 678, 713, 821, 826, 829, 832, 838, 858  
*Bhaktapur* (map) 85  
*Bhaktapur: a town changing* 604, 612  
 Bhaktapur Development Project 604, 612

- Bhaktipur 355, 829  
 Bhanubhakta 270  
*Bharadars* 219  
 Bharau (song genre) 853  
 Bhasin, A.S. 530  
 Bhatnagar, R.P. 905  
 Bhatt, D.D. 117  
 Bhatta, Bhim Dev 461  
 Bhattachan 397  
 Bhattacharyya, B. 319  
 Bhattarai, Binod 890  
 Bhattachan, K.B. 427  
 Bheri 350  
 Bhiksu, Bhawani 581  
 Bhooshan, B.S. 597  
 Bhot Khola 379  
 Bhotias 341, 368, 507  
*Bhuchyah* 858  
 Bhujel 701  
*Bhumigat giroh* ('the underground gang') 758  
 Bhurtel, S. K. 163  
 Bhutan 23, 94, 163, 621, 751, 788  
 Bia, J.B. 226  
*Bibliographical index of the lesser-known languages and dialects of Nepal* 268  
*Bibliographie du Népal*  
*Volume 1, Sciences humaines* 785  
*Volume 3, tome 1, Cartes du Népal* 80  
*Volume 3, tome 2, Botanique* 120  
*Volume 3, tome 3, Géologie de l'Himalaya central* 79  
*Bibliography of Asian Studies* 765, 784  
*Bibliography of Nepal* 789  
*Bibliography of Nepalese art* (Chandra) 801  
*Bibliography of Nepalese art* (Bernier) 801  
*Bibliography of the Himalaya* 786  
*Bibliography of the Summer Institute of Linguistics* 275  
 Bigler, M. 664  
 Bihar 252, 277, 322, 504, 830  
*Bikas-binas? Development-destruction?* 711, 889, 904  
*Bikas: evolution in Nepal* 637  
 Bilingualism 265  
 Biogas 706  
*Biography of Juddha Shamsheer J. B. Rana* 204  
 Biratnagar 733  
*Biratnagar-Kanchenjunga* (map) 81  
*Birds of Nepal* (with reference to Kashmir and Sikkim) 122  
*Birdwatcher's guide to Nepal* 124  
 Birendra Bir Bikram Shah, see 'Shah'  
 Birganj 906  
 Birmingham, J. 838  
 Birth control (see also 'family planning') 256  
 Bishop Stortford (Herts) 13  
 Bishop, R.N.W. 26  
*Bishwa Janjyoti* 758  
 Bista, Dor Bahadur 13, 239, 358-359, 503, 880  
 Bista, Khem Bahadur 320  
 Bista, Nirmal K. 594, 650, 695, 722  
 Blaikie, P. 598-599, 622, 698  
 Blair K.D. 823  
 Blamont, D. 824  
 Blindness 229  
*Blue mimosa* 576  
 Blum, Arlene 726  
 Blumhardt, J.F. 549  
*Boddhisattva* 329, 332  
 Bodic 412  
 Bolt, D. 511  
*Bombos* 335, 423  
 Bon 350, 352  
 Bonington, Christian 727-728, 736  
*Borderland of Nepal* 28  
 Borel, P. 834  
 Borgström, B.E. 462  
 Botanical gardens 120  
 Botanique see *Bibliographie du Népal*  
 Boudha 249  
 Bouillier, V. 332, 386  
 Boulnois, L. 27, 80, 164-165, 767, 785, 789, 791  
 Bowman, E.N. 66, 732  
 Brahmanism (see also 'Hinduism') 348  
 Brahmans 14, 224, 227, 287, 317, 324, 361, 373, 387, 399, 402, 409, 416, 434-435, 437, 447, 563, 697  
 Braibanti, R. 470  
 Brazil 650  
 Breast feeding 240, 253  
 Bribery 360  
 Bride price 441  
*Bridewealth and dowry* 441  
*Brief survey of Nepali historiography* 161  
 Brigade of Gurkhas 18, 26, 101, 107, 305, 310, 380, 387, 400, 510-526 passim, 548, 576, 756, 897  
 Brinkhaus, H. 318, 563-564  
 Britain 4, 40, 30, 496, 522, 526, 530, 682, 719, 721, 737, 742, 894  
*Britain's Brigade of Gurkhas* 524  
 Britain-Nepal Medical Trust 250  
 Britain-Nepal relations 167, 190, 192, 200, 201, 206, 213-215, 217-220, 222-223, 250  
*British and the brave* 523  
*British attitude to Nepal's relations with Tibet and China, 1814- 1914* 192  
 British Broadcasting Corporation 521  
 British embassy (in Kathmandu), 215  
 See also British Residency  
*British India's relations with the kingdom of*

*Nepal* 195  
 British Library 549  
 British Military Hospital (Dharan) 250  
 British Museum 875  
 British Residency (in Kathmandu) 36, 40-41, 45-46, 49-50, 54, 60, 167, 175, 194, 219  
 Bronzes 15, 808, 811, 830  
 Brookfield, H. 698  
 Brough, John 321, 352  
 Broughton, C. 438  
 Brown, Joe 729  
 Brown, L.R. 700  
 Bruce, C.G. 29  
 Brus, R. 812  
 Buckwheat 390  
 Buddha 59, 150-151, 153, 157, 159, 179, 573, 811  
*Buddha's relics from Kapilavastu* 160  
 Buddhabare 617  
 Buddhankanth (see also *Burhanilkant*), 33  
 Buddhism 11, 14, 15, 49, 59, 167, 175, 249, 316, 319, 321, 327-335, 340-342, 346-347, 349-350, 352, 356, 365, 390, 394, 406, 452, 507, 552, 828, 830, 898  
*Buddhism without monks: the Vajrayana religion of the Kathmandu Valley* 316  
*Buddhist Himalaya: travels and studies in quest of the origin and nature of Tibetan religion* 349, 352  
*Buddhist monasteries of Nepal* 344  
*Buddhist traditions and culture of the Kathmandu valley* 356  
 Buddudi 823  
 Budget 602  
*Budget innovations in developing countries: the experience of Nepal* 596

*Bugles and a tiger: a volume of autobiography* 517  
*Building conservation in Nepal* 833, 846  
*Bulletin of the Nepal Studies Association* 400  
*Bulletin of the School of Oriental and African Studies* 760  
 Bulu 447  
 Bunga-dya 342  
 Bungamati 14, 90, 342  
 Bunge, F.M. 23  
 Bureaucracy 662  
 Burghart, R. 252-253, 280, 322-324, 463  
*Burhanilkant* (map), 90  
 Buri Gandaki 350  
 Burma 338, 586  
 Bushell, J.W. 59  
 Business and Progressive Women's Club 446  
 Buss, A.E. 341  
 Butterflies 123, 126, 128, 131, 143  
*Butterflies of Nepal (Central Himalaya)* 143  
*Butterflies of the Himalayas* 131  
 Butwal Ramapithecus 156  
*Butwal-Mustang* (map) 81  
 Byers, C. 124

## C

Calcutta 11, 195, 733  
 Calendar 171  
 California 638  
 Calkins, P.H. 663, 665  
*Cambridge encyclopaedia of India, Pakistan, Bangladesh, Sri Lanka, Nepal, Bhutan and the Maldives* 783  
 Cambridge University Library 570  
 Cameron, I. 61-62  
 Cameron, J. 598-599  
 Cameron, S. 262  
 Campbell, A. 852

Campbell, J.G. 325, 909  
*Capital market, financial flows and industrial finance* 648  
 Caplan, A.C. 361  
 Caplan, L. 360, 387  
 Caplan, Patricia 462  
 Capuchins 34, 52-53  
 Carpets 654  
 Carson, B. 698  
*Carte écologique du Népal* 81  
*Cartes du Népal* see *Bibliographie du Népal*  
*Cash crop farming in Nepal* 656  
 Cash crops 656  
*Caste and kin in Nepal, India and Ceylon* 365, 393, 418, 507  
*Caste hierarchy and the state* 373, 384  
 Caste system 7, 11, 199, 322, 324, 355, 357-358, 361, 364-365, 372-374, 381, 386, 393, 398-399, 442, 843  
*Castes de musiciens au Népal* 854  
 Castration 339  
*Catalogue of Himalayan literature* 796  
*Catalogue of Nepalese vascular plants* 130  
*Catalogue of Nepali printed books in the India Office library* 549  
*Catalogue of the Library of the India Office* 549  
 Cavenagh, O. 30-31  
 Census 428  
 Center for Research Libraries 787  
 Central Asia 62, 70, 113, 352, 363, 796  
 Central Bureau of Statistics 243-244  
 Centre for Action Research 778  
 Centre for Economic Development and Administration 428, 592

- Centre for Nepal and Asian Studies 504-505, 761
- Centre National de la Recherche Scientifique 767, 785
- Chalise, Suresh R. 911
- Chandra, J. 801
- Change and continuity in the Nepalese culture of the Kathmandu Valley* 411
- Chant, C. 512
- Chantel 367
- Chapple, Sir John 513
- Char jat* 403
- Charles, Prince of Wales 525
- Charleston, B.M. 10
- Chatterji, Bhola 464-465
- Chatterji, S.K. 547
- Chaudhuri, K.C. 190, 214
- Chaudhuri, N.C. 326
- Chauhan, R.S. 466-467
- Chauni 41
- Chayabangse, C. 834
- Chemjong, I.S. 298
- Chemsing 402
- Chepang (language) 301
- Chepangs 12, 110, 412
- Chetris, 11, 287, 317, 320, 348, 364-366, 384-385, 393, 402, 434-435, 437, 440, 447
- Child birth 230, 415
- Child care 226, 229-230, 252-253, 262
- Child in Nepal.* 229
- Child welfare 236
- Children and women of Nepal. A situation analysis* 262
- China 16, 42, 48, 70, 90, 96, 157, 160, 164, 213, 251, 352, 407, 521-522, 552, 674, 719, 721, 818, 821-822, 835, 916
- China factor in Indo-Nepalese relations 1955-72* 541
- China illustrata* 42
- China's strategy in Nepal* 532
- China-Nepal relations 192, 198, 200, 213, 528, 529, 530, 531, 537, 539, 540, 541, 542,
- China-Nepal relations and India* 532
- Chinese 90, 719, 818, 821
- Chinese Turkestan, see 'Turkestan (Chinese)'
- Chisapani 43
- Chitawan 100, 123, 125, 137, 412
- Chitawan Irrigation Project 680
- Chitawan National Park 123, 125, 132
- Chitrakar, D.B. 881
- Chitrakar, Jagdish 813
- Chitrakar, Ramesh 641
- Chitrakar, Tej Bahadur 813
- Chittadhar 'Hridaya's' Nepal bhasa short stories* 568
- Chittaurgarh 175
- Cho Oyu, 90 737
- Choice of songs* 584
- Chopra, P. 543
- Choudhury, N.C. 509
- Christensen, S. 124
- Christianity 233, 275, 385
- Christoph, H. 699
- Chronicles 182
- Chumik 452
- Churautes 396
- Cire perdue* (lost-wax process) 840, 844
- Clark, T.W. 264, 279, 283, 289-290, 578
- Clarke, P. 331
- Clarke, W. 698
- Classful of gods and goddesses in Nepal* 102
- Classic postage stamps of Nepal* 717
- Classical Newari literature: a sketch* 552
- Clause, sentence and discourse patterns* 267
- Cimate 69, 129, 144, 786
- Climbing the fish's tail* 743
- CNAS Year Review* 759
- Coale, A. 234
- Coinage 175, 869-875
- Colophons 25, 181
- Colorado, university of 770
- Columbia University 787
- Come tomorrow* 586
- Committee on Studies for Cooperation in Development in South Asia* 594
- Community forestry 657
- Comparative and etymological dictionary of the Nepali language* 13, 315
- Comparative evaluation of road construction techniques in Nepal* 719
- Compulsory savings 691
- Concise dictionary (Newar-English)* 314
- Concise English-Nepali dictionary with transliteration and Devanagari* 312
- Concise flowers of the Himalayas* 136
- Concise Limbu grammar and dictionary* 297
- Concise Oxford Dictionary* 299
- Condoms 240
- Conquest of Everest* 739
- Conservation (cultural) 1, 797, 818, 827-828, 833
- Consolidated report of 23 working groups constituted by RONASt in May 1983* 915
- Constitution of Nepal. English translation.* 498
- Consultations with Himalayan gods* 325
- Contemporary art and artists of Nepal* 804
- Continental drift 70
- Contributions to Indian Sociology* 364, 408, 410
- Contributions to Nepalese Studies* 180-181, 188, 193, 230, 245, 257,

- 269, 343, 385, 411,  
427, 435, 444, 503,  
612, 651, 748, 753,  
761, 769, 897, 903
- Contributions to the  
Anthropology of  
Nepal* 405, 348, 367,  
379, 853
- Conversational Gurung* 281
- Conversational Nepali* 283
- Conversational Newari  
(Sresthacharya,  
Maskey, Hale)* 292
- Conversational Newari,  
(Sresthacharya)* 293
- Conversion, prohibition on  
492
- Conway, D. 63
- Cooking in Nepal* 851
- Coon, Carlton 102
- Cooperative movement  
668, 673
- Copper coins of India* 874
- Copyright law 752
- Corruption 461, 481, 487
- Corvinus, G. 147
- Cottage industries 654, 664
- Cottage Industry Export  
Development Project  
837
- Course in Nepali* 289
- Crime and punishment in  
Nepal: an historical  
perspective* 174
- Crisis in Nepalese  
commercial banks* 646
- Crittenden, R. 698
- Cronin, E. W., Jr. 118
- Crop-rotations 659
- Cross J. P. 510, 513-514,  
525
- Cult of Kumari – virgin  
worship in Nepal* 317,  
432
- Culte du kuldevata au  
Népal* 320
- Cultural geography of  
Nepal* 76
- Cultural patterns and  
economic change  
(Anthropological study  
of Dhimals of Nepal)*  
416
- Cumulative index to  
selected Nepalese  
journals* 146, 761,  
768-769, 772
- Cunningham, J. E. 26
- Cunningham, J. S. 250
- Current issues on Nepalese  
development* 592
- Current trends in  
Linguistics* 264
- D**
- Dahal, B. M. 265
- Dahal, Dilli Ram 362, 388.  
504
- Daily Mail* 877
- Dairy production 660
- Dal* 850
- Damai* 854
- Damai baja* (shawm and  
kettledrum band) 854
- Damak Panchayat 416
- Danda 438
- Dang 147, 401, 413
- Dang-Deukhuri 376, 449
- Dangaura 413
- Dangerous wives and  
sacred sisters* 434, 437
- Dangol, Balaram 529
- Dangol, H. L. 122
- Dani, D. D. 231, 703
- Dantwala, M. L. 668
- Daphne 667
- Darbhangha 521
- Darchula 362
- Darjeeling 26, 32, 40, 194,  
300, 307, 509, 554, 734
- Das Gupta, R. 814
- Das, R.K. 532
- Das, Sarat Chandra 32,  
734
- Dasai 442
- Datta-Ray, S. K. 509
- Davies, E. P. 601
- Davis, A. I. 280
- Davis, H. 33
- Davis, R. W. 601
- Dayabhaga* 494
- De la voûte céleste au  
terroir du jardin au  
foyer* 424
- De Mallman,  
Marie-Therese  
*see* Mallman,  
Marie-Therese de
- Debout, M. 165
- Debt 668
- Decentralization 461
- Deep, Dhurba Krishna 862
- Deficit financing 607
- Deforestation 621, 696,  
701
- Dehra Dun 67, 357
- Deleay, J. A. 72
- Delhi 67, 504, 555
- Democratic innovations in  
Nepal* 469, 473
- Demographic sample  
survey 1986/7* 244
- Demography 225-263  
passim, 405
- Denis, Armand 33
- Denis, Leila Roosevelt 33
- Denmark 496
- Denwood, P. 11, 839
- Deo, Shantaram  
Bhalchandra 148-149,  
825
- Department of  
Archaeology 1, 146,  
797
- Department of Housing  
and Physical Planning  
712
- Department of Industry  
651
- Department of Soil and  
Water Conservation  
699
- Desh* 463
- Desideri, Ippolito 34, 52
- Deukhuri 147
- Deutsche  
Forschungsgemein-  
schaft 66
- Deutschle, P. 98
- Deva, Krishna 819
- Devadaha 157
- Devanagari 42, 140, 280,  
283, 287, 289,  
291-292, 298,  
300-301, 304-305,  
312, 346, 685, 756,  
858-859
- Development  
administration in  
Nepal* 461

- Development experience of Nepal* 597
- Development in South Asia* 609
- Development of education in Nepal* 907
- Devies, L. 736
- Devkota, Lakshmi Prasad 270, 535, 555, 558-559, 565-566, 569, 580-581, 589
- Devkota, Madhusudan 566, 580, 582
- Devkota, Padma 559
- Dhading 334, 412, 425
- Dhakal, K. P. 15
- Dhanalaxmi, R. 192
- Dhangarhi-Api* (map) 81
- Dhangarhi – Dandeldhura road 719
- Dhankuta 119, 388, 733
- Dharamdasani, Murlidhar 468, 531
- Dharan 250, 733
- Dharan-Dhankuta highway 388
- Dharmashastras* 495
- Dharmis 256
- Dhaubhadei, B. 600
- Dhaulagiri 81, 92, 94, 116, 701, 732, 735
- Dhaulagiri zone 444
- Dhikur* 251
- Dhimals 12
- Dhimay* 858
- Dhimaybaja of Bhaktapur. Studies in Newar drumming* 858
- Dhorpatan 113
- Dhulikhel 436
- Dhungana, Bhavani 429-430, 436, 445, 447, 449-451
- Dhungel, Ramesh 163
- Dhungel, Surya P. S. 493
- Dibya Upadesh* 216, 562
- Dictionary of Himalayan people* 382
- Dictionary of the classical Newari* 303
- Dillon, R. P. 119
- Directory of research organisations in private sector* 778
- Disability 262
- Discovering trees in Nepal and the Himalayas* 145
- Discovery of Kapilavastu* 157, 160
- Discovery of the Malla* 187
- Dissertations (bibliography of M.A. and Ph.D. dissertations)* 793
- Distant hills* 588
- Distilling 445
- District administration 189
- District administration in Nepal: issues and ideas* 488
- District panchayats 623
- District plans 623
- Diversions of an Indian political* 41
- Divorce 433, 441, 444
- Diwas, Tulsi 565
- Dixit, Hemang 232
- Dixit, Kanak Mani 505
- Dixit, Kunda 711
- Dixit, Mani 586-587
- Dixit, N. M. 299
- Djurkovic, A. 737
- Dobremez, J.-F. 81, 120, 142
- Documents from the Rudravarna-Mahavira, Patan* 181
- Documents on Nepal's relations with India and China* 530
- Doherty, V. S. 389
- Doig, D. 738
- Dolakha 225, 239, 256, 367, 664, 828, 872
- Dolpo 105, 113, 138, 351, 368, 390, 839
- Dolpo – the world behind the Himalayas* 113
- Domingo-Barker, E. 840, 844, 867
- Dorville, Albert 42
- Doti 376
- Downs, H. R. 327
- Dowry system 441
- Drabya Shah, king of Gorkha 345
- Dragonflies 126
- Dreamland Nepal* 6
- Drinking water 263
- Drive against poverty – Nepal* 620
- Drosophila 126
- Drought 709
- Drugs 587
- Duari (pseudonym) 361
- Dudh Kosi* (map) 90
- Dumont, L. 324, 364, 408
- Dun valleys 147
- Duncan, H. C. 300
- Dunham, V. C. 104
- Durga 326, 339
- Dyhrenfurth, G.O. 66, 730
- Dynamics of a hill society (the Nepalis in Darjeeling and Sikkim Himalayas)* 509
- Dynamics of polyandry,* 452
- Dzemu (pseudonym) 406
- E
- Early sculpture of Nepal* 819
- Earth, man, trees: development aid in Nepal* 664
- Earthquake (of 1934) 204
- Earthquakes (general) 70, 709
- East Africa 744
- East and West* 160
- East India Company 37, 162, 191, 205, 214
- East-west highway 719
- Eastern Anthropologist* 905
- Eckholm, E. P. 698, 700
- Ecology 81, 86, 118, 121, 129, 696-711 passim, 705, 751, 910
- Economic development and planning in Nepal* 608
- Economic development of Nepal* 619
- Economic Journal of Nepal* 762
- Economic planning 597, 602, 626, 628, 634, 638-639, 650, 662
- Economic survey* 602
- Economics of Indo-Nepalese*

- co-operation* 611  
*Ecstasy and healing in Nepal: an ethnopsychiatric study of Tamang Shamanism* 249  
*Education and Development* 891, 904  
*Education and polity in Nepal – an Asian experiment* 905  
*Education for Rural Development project* 889, 904  
*Education in Nepal. Report of the Nepal National Education Planning Commission* 896  
*Educational experiments in Nepal* 901  
*Educational planning in Nepal and its economic implications* 907  
 Edwards, D. W. 193  
 Egerton, F. 35  
 Egerton, W. 841  
 Egger, A. 731  
 Eiselin, M. 732  
*The emergence of a new aristocracy in Nepal* 196  
*Employees Provident Fund Corporation* 644  
*Employment and development in Nepal* 692  
*Employment Distribution and Consumption Patterns in Nepal* 246  
 Energy 592  
 English (language) 499, 555, 560, 571-572, 581, 589, 664, 750, 754, 761, 793, 796, 798, 824, 854, 901, 903, 911  
*English in Nepalese education* 894  
 Entomology 910  
*Enumeration of the flowering plants of Nepal* 134  
*Epic of Mount Everest* 746  
*Equal Access of Women to Education* 446  
 Erosion 697-698, 707  
*Erosion and sedimentation processes in the Nepalese Himalaya* 698  
*Erotic themes of Nepal: an analytical study and interpretation of religion-based sex-expression* 835  
*Essays in Nepal's foreign affairs* 536  
*Essays in the practice of government in Nepal* 483  
*Essays on the ethnology of Nepal and South Asia* 375, 864-865  
*Essays on the languages literature and religion of Nepal and Tibet* 11  
*Establishing and development of Tribhuvan University* 900  
*Ethnographic study of social change among the Athpahariya Rais* 388  
*L'Ethnographie* 854  
*Ethnomusicology* 855  
 Eton 637  
*Etudes Rurales* 353  
 Etymology 303, 315  
 Europe 30-31, 42, 161  
*European Journal of Sociology* 383, 398, 411  
 Europeans (in Nepal) 24-57 passim 108  
*Evaluation of land reform in Nepal* 690  
 Evans, Charles 745  
 Everest (Mt.) 4, 29, 66, 81, 90, 92, 98, 101, 103, 110, 328, 521, 724, 731, 733, 735, 737, 746  
*Everest – the epic of great Mount Everest* 746  
*Everest 1938* 744  
*Everest adventure – the pictorial history from Kathmandu to the summit* 740  
 Everest base camp 90  
*Everest the hard way* 727  
*Everest years: a climber's life* 728  
*Everest-Lhotse adventure* 731  
*Everest: the challenge* 747  
 Evolution 131  
 Ex-servicemen 399  
*Excavations at Tilaurakot and Kodan and explorations in the Nepalese tarai* 152  
 Exchange rate 647  
 Exorcism 406  
 Exploration 61-62  
*Exploring the Himalayas* 62  
 Exports 643, 645, 673  
*Export strategy for Nepal* 643  
*Expression after death* 589

## F

- Fa-Hsien 160  
*Fabulous Flemings of Kathmandu: the story of two doctors in Nepal* 233  
*Face of the tiger* 132  
*Faces of Everest* 724  
*Facts about Nepal* 782  
 Faith healers 226, 239, 247, 249, 256-258  
*see also 'spirit possession'*  
*Faith healers: a force for change* 256, 247  
*Faith-healers in the Himalayas* 239  
 Falklands War 515  
 Family planning 228, 230, 234-238, 240, 242, 246, 251, 254, 256, 259-260, 391  
 Family Planning and Maternal Child Health Project 240  
 Family size 240

- Fantin, Mario 328  
**FAO**  
*see* 'Food and Agriculture Organisation'  
**FAO: Nepal** 675  
*Far Eastern Economic Review* 749  
*Far Eastern Quarterly* 765  
Farrow, D. 124  
Farwell, B. 515  
*Fauna and flora of Nepal Himalaya* 126  
Feminism 450  
Ferns 126  
Fertility 230, 238, 240, 242, 243, 244, 317  
Fertilizer 659, 692  
*Festivals of Nepal* 861  
Feudalism 481  
Fezas, J. 494  
Fibre crops 117  
*Field guide to Nepali names for plants* 140  
5th/8th Gorkha Rifles (Sirmoor Rifles) 882  
Filippi, Filippo de 34  
Film 753  
*Final report of National Workshop on Educational Innovation* 889, 895  
Finance Ministry, 596, 626  
*Financial institutions and economic development* 644  
*Financing public sector expenditure in Nepal* 605  
Finsterwalder, R. 82, 90  
First World War 220  
*Fiscal system of Nepal* 633  
*Fish farming in Nepal* 661  
Fisher, J. F. 372, 389-390, 400, 434  
Fisher, J. T. 363, 503  
Fisher, M. 469  
Fisheries 139, 682, 910, 661  
*Fishes of Nepal* 139  
*Flash of the Khukri. History of the 3rd. Gorkha Rifles* 522  
Fleming, Bethel 233  
Fleming, L. 5  
Fleming, R. 5  
Fleming, R. L., Jnr. 121-122, 128  
Fleming, R. L., Snr. 122, 233  
Fletcher, G. N. 233  
Flinn, W. R. 601  
Floods 709  
*Flora of British India* 40  
*The flora of eastern Himalaya: third report: results* 134  
*Flowers of the Himalayas* 135  
*Folk lores and legends from Pokhara (Western Nepal)* 884  
*Folk tales of Nepal (first series) (Vaidya)* 884  
*Folk tales of Nepal* 883  
*Folklore of Nepal* 882  
Food and Agriculture Organisation 113, 657, 666, 675, 690  
Forbes, D. 99  
Foreign aid 23, 110, 448, 486, 528, 531-533, 537, 607, 614, 616, 622, 629, 638, 647-648, 680, 721  
*Foreign aid and development – proceedings of a seminar* 448, 486, 528, 533, 595, 616, 680  
*Foreign aid and politics in Nepal: a case study* 537  
Foreign investment 641, 649, 652  
Foreign Investment and Technology Act 1981 641, 649  
Foreign Investment Division 649  
*Foreign investment in Nepal* 641  
*Foreign policy of Nepal* 534  
'Foreign political' 219  
'Foreign secret' 219  
Forestry 121, 129, 141, 144-145, 642, 657, 705  
Forestry Department 657  
*Forestry: Nepal* 675  
*Forests and their destruction in the Himalayas of Nepal* 704  
*Forests of Nepal* 144  
*Formation of the Maithili language* 280  
*Formation, population and exploration of the Mount Everest region* 66, 90  
*Four lamas of Dolpo* 350-351  
*Four villages: architecture in Nepal* 823  
France 27, 223, 733, 736  
Franco, J. 733  
Frank, D. 6  
French (language) 375, 386, 401, 555, 824, 854  
Freshfield, D. W. 734  
Freyre, Emanoel. 34  
Fricke, T. 391  
Friedel, F. A. 3  
Friedman, L. C. 265  
*Friends in high places-a season in the Himalayas* 106  
Fritz, H. 791  
*From the other end* 567  
Fuhrer, A. 150, 153  
*Fundamentals of Nepalese foreign policy* 527  
Funerals 415  
Funke, F. W. 405  
Fürer-Haimendorf, C. von 66, 348, 363-370, 379, 392-395, 405, 418, 422, 495, 507, 711, 853  
Fürer-Haimendorf, E. 370  
*Future of South Asia* 543

## G

- Gaborieau, M. 7, 37, 48, 184, 396, 495, 853, 879  
Gaigne, F. H. 371  
Gaine (minstrel caste) 375, 854,  
Gairola Tara Dutt 879  
Gajurel, C. L. 842  
Gandaki 210  
Gandaki valley 369, 823



- Ganesh Himal 126, 391, 735  
 Ganges 702  
 Gangtok 507  
 Gansser, A. 64, 72  
 Garhwal 162, 266, 357  
 Garment industry 651  
 Garwood, E. J. 734  
 GATT 643, 645  
 Gauchan, S. 397  
 Gautam, D. P. 647  
 Geiss, Th. 82  
 Gellner, D. N. 329, 330, 331, 332, 398, 411  
 Genealogy 172  
*General bibliography on fish and fisheries of Nepal* 682  
*General ecology, flora and fauna of midland Nepal* 121  
 Geneva 643  
 Geneva Convention 513  
*Geography of Nepal* 78  
*Géologie de l'Himalaya central*  
*see Bibliographie du Népal*  
 Geology 64, 66, 69-70, 72, 74-75, 79, 86, 129, 730, 786  
*Geology of Nepal* 74  
*Geology of the Himalayas* 64  
 German (language) 555, 563, 664, 768  
 Germany 768, 811  
*Geschichte und Sozialordnung der Sherpa* 405  
 Ghaisu 403  
*Ghatao* (dance-drama) 856  
 Ghimire, Durga 439  
 Ghimire, Madhav Prasad 302, 306, 559, 565, 569, 580  
 Ghimire, Raghu 309  
 Ghoble, T. R. 532  
 Giddens, J. A. 23  
 Gilmour, D. A. 657  
 Gimlette, G. H. D. 36  
 Giri, Banira 567  
 Giri, Rudra Prasad 712  
 Glaciers 75, 86  
 Glover, J. R. 281, 301  
 Glover, W. W. 301  
 Goetzal-Cooper, J. L. 3  
 Gokarna (map) 90  
 'Golden temple' 799  
 'Golden triangle' 421  
 Goldman, N. 234  
 Goldstein, M. C. 282, 254  
 Gombrich, R. F. 332  
 Goodman, J. 8, 863  
 Goodman, M. R. 470  
 Goody, J. R. 441  
*Gopalarajavamsavali* 188  
 Gorakhnath 347, 354  
 Gorakhpur 508  
 Gorkha 89, 217, 345, 354, 463  
*Gorkha* 173  
 Gorkha conquest (of Kathmandu Valley) 37, 164, 167, 171, 217, 419  
*Gorkha map Nepal* 89  
 Gorkhali 463  
*see also Nepali*  
*Gorkhapatra* 284, 529, 750, 754, 757  
*Gorkharajavamsavali* 167  
 Gorkhas (people) 37, 107, 380  
 Gosainkund 865  
 Gothale, Govinda Bahadur 577  
*Government and politics of Nepal* 485  
 Goyal, N. 496  
 Grabowski, G. 663  
*Grammar of Limbu* 295  
*Grammar of the classical Newari* 285, 303  
 Gray, J. 431, 440  
 Greenwald, J. 100  
 Grewal, Bikram. 125  
 Grierson, G. 266, 277, 280  
 Griffin, D. M. 657  
 Griffith, L. D. 113, 881  
 Grimmett, R. 124  
 Groniek 490  
*Groundwater resources of Nepal* 75  
 Grueber, Joannes 42  
 Gruscke, A. 72  
 Gubhaju, B. B. 260-261  
*Guide to enjoying Nepalese festivals* 863  
*Guide to Gurung tone* 281  
*Guide to manuscripts in the British Isles relating to south and south east Asia* 794  
*Guide to the birds of Nepal* 124  
*Guide to trekking in Nepal* 97  
 Gujaras 184  
 Gulliver, P. H. 361  
 Gunand, S. 175  
*Gunas* 442  
*Gupha basne* 435  
 Gupta (North Indian dynasty) 148, 179, 819  
 Gupta, Anirudha 471  
 Gupta, R. K. 786  
 Gupta, S. P. 866  
 Gupta, Tanu 776  
*Gurkha – the legendary soldier* 510  
*Gurkha: the illustrated history of an elite fighting force* 512  
 Gurkhali 305, 756  
*see also Nepali*  
 Gurkhas (Nepalese soldiers in British service)  
*see Brigade of Gurkhas*  
 Gurkhas (people)  
*see Gorkhas (people)*  
*Gurkhas* (Bolt) 511  
*Gurkhas* (Farwell) 515  
*Gurkhas* (Morris) 380  
*Gurkhas* (Tucci) 525  
*The Gurkhas. An ethnology* 380  
*Gurkhas: their manners customs and country* 18, 380  
 Gurung (language) 266, 269, 281, 301  
*Gurung phonetic survey* 281  
 Gurung, Chandra Bahadur 408  
 Gurung, Deu Bahadur 281, 301  
 Gurung, Harka 65, 84-86, 88, 93, 101, 112, 128, 137, 241, 262, 468, 603, 610, 734-735

Gurung, K. K. 123, 125  
 Gurung, Nareshwar Jang 379  
 Gurung, Santa Bahadur 908  
 Gurung, Vishnu Maya 438  
*Gurung-Nepali-English dictionary* 301  
 Gurungs 238, 379, 398, 403, 408, 438, 823, 856, 897  
*Gurungs of Nepal* 403  
 Guthi Sansthan 337, 386  
 Gutschow, Niels 9, 82, 88-89, 330, 336, 345, 381, 713, 797, 816, 826, 859  
 Gyapre (shamanist) 856  
 Gyawali, Bharat M. 779  
 Gyawali, Surya Bikram 166, 302, 558, 789  
*Gymnosperms of Nepal* 142

## H

Haaland, A. 604, 612  
 Hagen, T. 10, 66  
 Haigh, M. J. 703  
 Haile Selassie, emperor 892  
 Hale, A. 267, 304  
*Half-closed eyes of the Buddha and the setting sun* 270, 548  
 Haman, P. 124  
 Hamilton, Francis Buchanan 37  
*Handbook of agricultural statistics of Nepal* 673  
*Handicrafts development* 654  
*Hanuman Dhoka royal palace, Kathmandu. Building construction and local traditional crafts* 846  
 Hara, H. 134  
*Hard years* 729  
 Hardiman, C. 430  
 Hardy, F. 331  
 Hari, A. M. 283  
 Harigaon 148  
 Harisiddhi 336

Harisingh Dev 817  
 Harle J. C. 802  
 Harris, G. L. 23  
 Harsdorf, E. V. 90  
 Hartmann, J.-V. 338  
 Hartsell, L. 572  
 Hasrat, V. 167  
 Hastings, Marquess of 191, 205  
 Hatley, T. 710  
 Haverbeck, D. S. 717  
 Hayes, L. D. 472, 892  
 Health  
   *see* 225-263 *passim*  
 Health education 229  
*Heart of Nepal* 99  
*Heart of the jungle: the wildlife of Chitwan Nepal* 123  
 Hedangna 847  
 Hedin, S. H. 38  
 Hedrick, Ann K. 780  
 Hedrick, Basil Calvin 780  
*Heartbeat of Nepal: the pancai baja* 857  
 Heidelberg South Asia Institute 699  
 Helambu 828  
 Helffer, M. 854  
 Helgerson, S. D. 226  
 Hellrigl, W. C. 717  
 Hepper, C. 717  
 Heraldry 45  
*Heritage of the Kathmandu Valley* 9, 330, 336, 345, 381, 797, 816, 858  
 Herzog, Maurice 726, 735-736  
 Hetaura 43  
 Heuberger, A. 82  
*Hidden Himalayas* 104  
 Higbie, R. 102  
*High adventure* 737  
*High in the thin cold air* 738  
 High-yielding-variety (HYV) seeds 659  
 Hill farming 660, 674, 656-691 *passim*  
 Hillary, Edmund 13, 97, 724, 737, 738, 740, 742, 893  
*Himal* 505, 751, 890  
 Himalaya 10, 29, 52,

61-62, 64, 66, 67, 69-71, 79, 114, 115, 131, 134-136, 138, 162, 165, 251, 349-350, 357-358, 370, 372, 383, 389, 401, 405, 505, 702, 704, 710, 725, 734, 741, 744, 747, 751, 763, 770, 785, 796  
 Himalaya Studies Centre 235  
*Himalayan anthropology: the Indo-Tibetan interface* 363, 372, 389, 400, 434, 503  
*Himalayan art* 810  
*Himalayan dilemma – reconciling development and conservation* 702  
*Himalayan flowers and trees* 133  
*Himalayan folklore* 879  
*The Himalayan gazetteer* 162  
*Himalayan Geology* 67  
*The Himalayan household: Tamang demography and domestic processes* 391  
*Himalayan journals – notes of a naturalist* 40  
*Himalayan kingdoms – Bhutan, Sikkim & Nepal* 16  
*Himalayan pilgrimage, a study of Tibetan religion* 350  
*Himalayan Research Bulletin* 579, 763  
*Himalayan traders. Life in highland Nepal* 368, 394  
*Himalayan voices: Nepali poets of the twentieth century* 270, 548  
*Himalayan wanderer: the reminiscences of Brigadier C. G. Bruce* 29  
*Himalayan woman* 441  
 Himalayas  
   *see* Himalaya

- Himalayas – a journey to Nepal* 103  
*Himalayas* 64, 72  
*Himalaya: aspects of change* 69, 369, 697, 707  
Himalchuli 735  
*Himavat Khanda* 564  
Hindi 42, 209, 277, 306, 371, 555, 790, 795  
Hindu Kush 61, 751  
Hindu law 174, 433, 494-495  
Hinduism 167, 317, 320, 322-326, 329, 331, 333-334, 337, 339-341, 345, 347, 349, 365-366, 385-387, 390, 394, 402, 414, 416, 431-432, 437, 443, 449, 507, 548, 564, 713, 866, 898  
*Hinduism. A religion to live by* 326  
*Hindus of the Himalayas* 357  
Hippies 100, 587  
*Hired to kill. Some chapters of autobiography* 517, 521  
*Historic cities of Asia – Kathmandu* 716  
*Historical and cultural dictionary of Nepal* 780  
*Historical atlas of South Asia* 170  
Historical linguistics 274  
*History of Buddhism in Nepal, A.D. 704-1396* 347  
*History of Janakpurdham: a study of asceticism and the Hindu state* 322  
*History of Maithili literature* 553  
*History of Nepal* 175, 330, 852  
*History of Nepali literature* 554  
*The history of Nepal as told by its own and contemporary chroniclers* 167  
*History of the political and military transactions during the administration of the Marquess of Hastings* 205  
Hitchcock, J. 372, 506  
Hitchcock, J. T. 333, 372, 399, 506, 701  
Hitchcock, P. 876  
*Hitopadesa* 552  
Hodgson, Brian Houghton 11-12, 54, 119, 167, 193-194, 224, 278, 346  
Hoefler, H. J. 125  
Höfer, A. 88, 90, 334, 373, 384, 400, 843  
Hoffmeister, A. 39  
Hoffmeister, W. 39, 58  
Hogarth, J. 835  
Holi 864  
Holmberg, D. 335  
Homosexuality 521  
Hong Kong 421, 525, 674  
Hongu valley 402  
Hooker, J. D. 40  
Horrocks, B. 524  
Horticulture 127, 665, 685  
*Horticulture: Nepal* 675  
Hosken, F. P. 14  
Hotel Management and Tourism Training Centre 15  
Hotels 781  
Houlden, C. 331  
Housing 14, 419, 424, 823-824, 829  
Hoyer, U. 82, 88  
‘Hridaya’, Chittadhar 568  
Hsüan-Tsang 59  
Hudkiya 854  
Hugoniot, R. D. 268  
Humboldt, A. von 58  
Humla 104, 828  
Hunt, Sir John 739-740, 742, 745  
Hunter, W. W. 194  
Hunting 29, 41  
Husain, A. 195  
Hutt, M. J. 269-270, 548-549  
Hyderabad 195  
Hydro-electricity 697  
Hydro-power 706  
Hydrology 75
- I
- Icangu (map)* 90  
Ilam 26, 94, 256, 387  
*Illness beliefs and feeding the dead in Hindu Nepal* 257  
*Illustrated handbook of Indian arms* 841  
Iltis, L. L. 336  
Immigration 244  
Imports 645, 647  
*In Gurkha company. The British army Gurkhas 1948 to the present* 513  
Income tax 592, 649  
India 11, 16, 20, 24-26, 29, 31, 42, 44, 57, 59, 61-62, 67, 69-71, 94, 100, 107, 114, 137, 148-149, 162, 178-179, 180, 184, 191, 205, 212-213, 241, 252, 264, 347, 349, 352, 361-362, 366, 371-373, 383, 385, 396, 401, 404, 422, 426, 432, 442, 464, 478, 482, 496, 504-506, 508, 513, 515, 517, 521-522, 526, 549, 555, 582, 609, 611, 630, 640, 647, 650-651, 659, 668, 674, 692, 719, 721, 724, 742, 751, 788, 803, 807, 818-819, 835, 852, 882, 916  
India Office Library 549  
India Office Records 219  
India-Nepal relations 195, 200-201, 206, 213, 214, 217-220, 222, 241, 528-531, 537, 539-543, 599, 764  
*Indian Buddhist iconography* 319  
Indian Cooperation Mission 148  
*Indian diplomacy in Nepal* 531  
*Indian Journal of Nepalese*

- Studies* 764
- Indian literature* 554, 574
- Indian Mutiny* (1857 revolt) 49, 200, 214, 220
- Indian National Archives* 195
- Indian national movement* 41, 202
- Indian ritual and its exegesis* 332
- Indian wildlife – Sri Lanka, Nepal* 125
- Indo-Aryan* (language group) 274, 277, 303, 315
- Indo-Chinese war* (1962) 16
- Indo-Nepal trade and economic relations* 640
- Indo-Nepalese* (ethnic group) 381, 396, 398, 402
- Indo-Nepalese relations, 1816-77* 206, 214
- Indo-Nepalese relations (1858-1914)* 220
- Indo-Nepalese relations, 1877-1923* 201, 214
- Indo-Tibetan Buddhism* 349, 352
- Indology* 345
- Indonesia* 674
- Indrawati* (river) 98
- Indreni* 569
- Indus Valley civilization* 835
- Industrial Enterprises Act* 752
- Industrial investment* 648
- Industrial policy and acts of His Majesty's Government* 649
- Industrial Service Centre* 642
- Industrialisation in Nepal: a macro and micro study* 652
- Infant mortality* 240, 244
- Information resources on Nepal* 779
- Inheritance* 433, 436, 450
- Inner world* 339
- Innocents abroad in the forests of Nepal* 657
- Inscriptions* 3, 25, 45, 59, 157, 171, 176-177, 179-183, 185, 772
- Inscriptions of ancient Nepal* 183
- Inskipp, C.* 124
- Inskipp, T.* 124
- Institute for Nepal and Asian Studies* 283
- see also* Centre for Nepal and Asian Studies
- Institutions concerning women in Nepal* 446
- Integrated cereals project* 680
- Integrated community health programme* 236
- Integrated Development Systems (IDS)* 533, 605, 643, 644-645, 666
- Integrated hills development project* 225, 664
- Integrated rural development* 591, 603, 619, 623, 660
- Integrated rural development projects in Nepal: a review* 623, 664
- Integration of women in development – the case of Nepal* 450
- Integration of women in the main stream of national development* 454
- Intercaste marriage* 360
- Intermediate Nepali structure* 296
- Intermediate Nepali reader* 296
- Internal and international migration in Nepal* 241
- International Council for Traditional Music UK Bulletin* 857
- International Institute of Environment and Development* 597
- International Labour Organisation* 627
- International Studies* 456, 484
- International Womens' Year* 439
- International Year of the Child* 229
- International Youth Year* 378
- Introduction a l'iconographie du Tāntrisme bouddhique* 805
- Introduction to Nepal* 21
- Introduction to Nepalese economy* 631
- Introduction to Nepalese food plants* 685
- Introduction to Nepali* 279, 289-290, 578
- Introduction to the Maithili dialect of the Bihari language* 280
- Invasion of Nepal: John Company at war* 203
- Investors' guide to Nepal* 642
- Iran* 496
- Irrigation* 612, 659-660, 669
- Irvine, Andrew* 746
- Islam* 385
- Islam, R.* 692
- Isogamy* 410
- Israel, S.* 125
- Italians* 52
- Itihas samshoddhan mandal* (History correction circle) 171
- Ives, J. D.* 702
- Izzard, R.* 877

J

- Jackson, D. P.* 168
- Jar* 850
- Jagat Prakash Malla, king of Bhaktapur* 563-564
- Jagatprakasamallas Muladevasasidevavya-khyanataka* 563
- Jain, K. C.* 814
- Jain, M. S.* 196
- Jain, R. B.* 481

- Jain, S. C. 606, 618-619, 681, 684  
 Jaipur 542  
*Jaladyah* 336  
*Janai* 865  
*Janaipurnima and the Gosainkunda* 865  
 Janak 322-323  
 Janak Siksa Samagri Kendra 911  
 Janakpur 322-323, 429  
 Janakpur zone 25, 81  
 Janch Bujh Kendra 626  
*Jang Bahaduko Belait Yatra* 223  
*Jang Bahadur in Europe* 223  
 Japan 159, 650, 822, 916  
 Japanese (language) 796  
 Jarmul, C. 284  
 Jayasthiti Malla, king of the Nepal valley 347  
 Jenkins, W. M. 68  
 Jenkins, W. P. 16  
 Jest, C. 81, 184, 351, 828, 834,  
 Jesuits 42, 52  
 Jewellery 867  
 Jha, H. N. 179  
 Jha, Hari Bansh 607, 646-647  
 Jha, Kumar Kant 668  
 Jha, Makhan 337  
 Jha, Shaktinath 608  
 Jha, Shree Krishna 468, 497, 534  
 Jha, Subhadra 280  
*Jhankris* 239, 256  
 Jhapa district 416  
 Jharahi 157  
*Jharra* 393  
 Jirel (language) 267  
 Jiri 81, 664  
*Jiri-Thodung* (map) 81  
 Jørgensen, Hans 285, 303-304, 570, 571, 573  
 Jodha, N. 698  
 Johnson, B. L. C. 609  
 Joint-family system 450  
 Jomosom 92, 113  
 Jones, Rex L. 333, 441  
 Jones, Shirley K. 441  
 Jordan 496  
 Joshi, Bhuvan Lal 466, 469, 473  
 Joshi, D. R. 703  
 Joshi, Giri Raj 302  
 Joshi, Jigbar 610  
 Joshi, K. K. 827, 912  
 Joshi, M. D. 699  
 Joshi, N. A. 911  
 Joshi, Ram Mohan 669  
 Joshi, S. C. 703  
 Joshi, Satya Mohan 869-872  
 Joshi, Tulashi R. 714  
*Journal of Asian and African Studies* 892  
*Journal of Asian Studies* 374, 463, 765, 784  
*Journal of Developing Areas* 255, 663, 766  
*Journal of Development and Administrative Studies* 767, 907  
*Journal of the Bengal Asiatic Society* 11, 852  
*Journal of the Indian Society of Oriental Art* 825  
*Journal of the Institute of Medicine* 225  
*Journal of the Institute of Muslim Minority Affairs* 396  
*Journal of the Nepal Research Centre* 338, 386, 699, 761, 768, 792, 831, 845, 847, 860  
*Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society* 875  
 Journalism 284  
*Journals kept in Hyderabad, Kashmir, Sikkim and Nepal* 55  
*Journals of Honoria Lawrence* 46  
*Journey of a winter's tour in India with a visit to the court of Nepal* 35  
*Journey of literary and archaeological research* 25  
*Journey through Nepal* 2  
*Journey to Kathmandu with the camp of Jung Bahadur* 51  
*Journey to Lhasa and central Tibet* 32, 734  
*Joys of Nepalese cooking* 849  
 Jugul Himal 735  
 Jumla 186, 325, 366  
*Jumla-Saipal* (map) 81  
 Jungle swine 137  
 Justice, J. 236  
 Jute 656, 679  
*Jute - white gold of Nepal* 679  
 Jyapus 424
- ## K
- K. C., Kaisher Bahadur 474  
 K. C., Ram Bahadur 670, 686  
 Kabhrepalanchok 481, 488, 657  
 Kafle, Balaram 237  
 Kailali 376  
*Kailash* 180, 338, 384, 401, 405, 411, 413-415, 417, 421-422, 546, 761, 769, 817, 830, 843, 850  
 Kainla, Vairagi 581  
*Kaisher vamsavali* 188  
*Kakani* (map) 90  
 Kakar 339  
 Kali 326  
 Kali Gandaki (river) 368, 379, 397  
 Kali Gandaki Valley 110, 247, 427, 451  
 Kamis (blacksmith caste) 843  
 Kanchanjanga 118, 729, 734, 745  
 Kanchanpur 256  
*Kanchenjunga* 745  
 Kanitkar, H. 370  
 Kanjiroba 81  
*Kanphata - untersuchungen zu Kult, Mythologie und Geschichte der sivaitischer Tantriker in Nepal* 354  
 Kansakar, T. R. 271, 286, 568  
 Kapilavastu 151, 157, 160

- Karakoram 725, 741  
 Karan, P. P. 16, 68  
 Karki, T. B. 287  
 Karki, Y. R. S. 781  
 Karmacharya, Madhav Lal 580, 752  
 Karnali (river) 138, 176, 270  
 Karnali basin 72, 210, 348, 359-360, 372, 417  
 Karnali valley 119  
 Karnali zone 368, 452  
 Karthak, Peter 590  
 Karunamaya 342, 352  
 Kasais (butcher caste) 859  
 Kashmir 122, 163, 751  
 Kashmiri traders 396  
 Kaski 367  
 Kathmandu 2, 4, 11, 22, 24, 26, 28, 30, 33-37, 39-41, 43, 46, 63, 81, 87, 90-92, 94, 100-101, 106-109, 112, 114, 148, 190, 205, 215, 219, 249, 254, 257, 317, 334, 350, 396, 421, 423-424, 561, 588, 590, 599, 600, 674, 694, 719, 780, 818, 820-821, 826, 832, 861, 906  
*Kathmandu city* (map) 88  
*Kathmandu* (map) 90  
 Kathmandu Valley 7-8, 13-14, 28, 42, 45, 52, 55, 59, 94, 97-99, 102, 111, 121, 148, 167, 171, 175, 179-182, 241, 272, 318, 320-321, 329, 331, 340, 342, 352, 354-356, 410, 424, 426, 436, 440, 447, 462-463, 488, 564, 568, 678, 687, 713, 780, 803, 817, 823-824, 830, 832, 838, 845, 865, 868, 878, 882  
*Kathmandu Valley maps* 90  
 Kathmandu Valley Town Development Committee 715-716  
*Kathmandu Valley town planning and its impact* 715  
*Kathmandu Valley towns* 14  
*Kathmandu Valley* (1:50,000) (map) 90  
*Kathmandu Valley* 5  
*Kathmandu Valley: the preservation of physical environment and cultural heritage* 827, 834  
*Kathmandu-Everest* (map) 81  
*Kathmandu-Patan* (map) 91  
 Kathmandu 8  
 Kaufmann, W. 855  
 Kaushik, Brij Mohan 468  
*Kavi Shiromani Lekh Nath Paudyal* 558  
 Kazami, T. 103  
 Kelly, T. L. 104  
 Kempe J. W. R. 745  
 Kennion, R. L. 41  
 Kerr, K. 727  
*Khairini Ghat* 572  
*Khaling* 294  
 Khaling Rai language 294  
 Kham (eastern Tibet) 405  
 Kham Magar language 267  
*Kham Magar women of Thabang* 445  
 Kham Magars 444  
 Khambas 405  
 Khampas 407, 587  
 Khanal, Krishna P. 509  
 Khanal, Yadunath 527, 535-536, 550  
 Khas 7, 186, 348, 357, 359, 383  
 Khas empire 176, 184, 186-187  
*see also* Mallas (western)  
*Khas kura* 463  
*see also* Nepali  
*Khasa kingdom – a trans-Himalayan empire of the Middle Ages* 176  
 Khatri, T. B. 718  
 Khatri, Prem K. 716  
 Khattiwada, K. K. 669  
 Khetri, T. B. 240  
 Khotan 321, 352  
*The Khukri* 576  
 Khumbu 395, 878  
*see also* Solu Khumbu  
*Khumbu Himal* (map) 90  
*Khumbu-Himal* (journal) 82, 90, 373, 405  
 Khumjung 395, 738, 893  
 Kihara, H. 126, 671  
 Kilgour, R. 300  
*The King and his constitution* 496  
*The King who rides a tiger and other tales from Nepal* 876  
*Kingdom in the sky* 250  
*Kings, soldiers and priests: Nepalese politics and the rise of Jang Bahadur Rana* 224  
 Kingship 322, 353  
 Kinship 301, 360, 402  
 Kinship terms 314  
*Kipat* 185, 251, 387, 402  
 Kiranti, 295  
*Kirata-Jana-Krti – the Indo-Mongoloids: their contribution to the history and culture of India* 547  
 Kiratas 180, 383, 402  
 Kircher, Athanasius 42, 80  
 Kirkpatrick, William 43, 190  
 Kirong 99  
 Kirtipur 601, 612  
*Kirtipur – a Newar community in Nepal* 601  
*Kirtipur* (map) 90  
 Kitini 462  
 Klinu 856  
 Kloppenberg, R. 338  
 Knox, Captain 37, 190  
 Kodari 90  
 Kodgaon 823  
 Kohli, M. S. 724  
 Koirala, Bisheshwar Prasad 460, 465, 479, 585  
 Koirala, Matrika Prasad 558  
 Koirala, Mohan 580  
 Koirala, Shankar 572  
 Kölver, B. 88, 181, 318,

713, 826  
 Kondos, A. 651  
 Kondos, V. 339, 431, 442  
 Korn, W. 829  
 Koshi Hills Area Rural  
 Development  
 Programme 110  
 Koshi (river) 137, 824  
 Koshi Tappu 137  
 Koshi zone 295  
 Kostka, R. 89  
 Kot Massacre 30, 106, 219  
 Krauskopff, G. 401, 422  
 Krishna 564  
 Ksatri 320  
*see also* Chetri  
 Kshemendra 579  
 Ku 687  
 Kuala Lumpur 908  
 Kudan 152  
 Kukri 516  
 Kul 320  
 Kuldevata 320, 348  
 Kuldy, H. K. 839  
 Kulöy, H. H. 42  
*Kulunge Rai: a study in  
 kinship and marriage  
 exchange* 402  
 Kumaon 162, 184, 266,  
 357, 417, 853, 879  
 Kumar, Satish 197  
 Kumari 317  
 Kumha (potter) caste 845  
 Kushana period 819, 836  
 Kussmaul, F. 834  
 Kvaerne, T. P. 58

## L

Ladakh 734, 751  
 Lahtinen, M. 856  
 Lajimpat 148  
 Lal, N. 508  
 Lalitpur 356, 481  
*see also* Patan  
 Lall, J. S. 69, 369, 697, 707  
 Lall, Keshar 868, 878  
 Lama, Mahendra P. 611  
 Lamas 423, 335, 351  
 Lamichane 379  
 Lamjung 101, 248, 403,  
 856

*Lamosangu to Mt. Everest*  
 92  
 Lamosangu-Jiri road 664,  
 720  
 Lancaster, R. 127  
*Land and crops of the  
 Nepal Himalaya* 671  
*Land and migration in far-  
 western Nepal* 362  
*Land and social change in  
 eastern Nepal* 387  
*Land degradation and  
 society* 698  
 Land reform 488, 620, 628,  
 631, 634, 658, 662,  
 666, 668, 670, 684,  
 686-687, 689-691  
*Land reform: progress and  
 prospects in Nepal* 670  
*Land settlement in Nepal*  
 635  
*Land sides and soil erosion  
 in Nepal* 709  
 Land tenure 185, 376, 402,  
 463, 683-684, 686, 689-  
 691  
*Land tenure and taxation in  
 Nepal* 211, 683  
*Land use map* 83, 95  
 Landlessness 666  
 Landon, A. H. S. 44  
 Landon, P. 45  
 Landslides 709  
 Langtang 56, 99, 108, 114  
*Lapchikang (map)* 90  
*Latest road and trekking  
 map* 87  
*Latest trekking maps* 92  
 Law and order 487, 488  
*Law and Population in  
 Nepal: some strategy  
 for action* 237  
*Law Bibliography* 502  
 Lawrence, Henry 46, 54  
 Lawrence, Honoria 46  
 Lawrence, J. 46  
 Le Mesurier, Mrs. 734  
*Learner's glossary of  
 Nepali* 309  
 Lediard, M. 247, 256  
 Lee, E. 692  
 Lehrstuhl für Kartographie  
 und  
 Reproduktionstechnik 90

Leonard, R. C. 17  
 Lepchas 341, 507, 509  
 Leprosy 236, 248  
*Les Gurungs – une  
 population  
 himalayenne du Népal*  
 408  
*Les Rana et le pouvoir  
 1846-1951* 199  
*L'Ethnographie* 386  
*Letters from Kathmandu:  
 The Kot Massacre* 219  
 Leuchtag, E. 47  
 Lévi, Sylvain 48  
 Levine, N. K. 374, 452  
 Lewis, G. C. 745  
 Lewis, T. T. 340, 604, 612  
 Lhasa 32, 62, 503, 747  
*L'homme* 353  
 Lhotse 731  
 Libraries 1  
 Library of Congress 549, 787  
*Library of Congress  
 Accessions list – Nepal*  
 787  
*Library of Congress  
 Accession list – South  
 Asia* 788  
 Licchavis 148, 171, 174,  
 179-181, 183, 185, 347,  
 819, 869, 875  
*Licchavis of Vaisali* 179  
 Lichens 126  
 Lichtenberg-van Mierlo,  
 M. A. 830  
 Lienhard, S. 411, 551, 570,  
 573-574  
*Life among the Magars* 420  
*Life and writings of  
 Prithvinarayan Shah*  
 562  
 Life expectancy 428  
*Life of Brian Houghton  
 Hodgson* 194  
*Life of Maharaja Sir Jung  
 Bahadur Rana* 209  
 Limbus 12, 32, 118, 185,  
 387-388, 402, 416, 419,  
 441  
 Limbu (language) 269,  
 295, 297-298  
 Ling, T. 341, 507  
*Linguistic survey of India*  
 266

*Linkage politics* 541  
 Lissanevitch, Boris 109  
 Literacy 244, 428, 449  
 Lithosphere 71  
 Livestock 660, 673  
*Livestock: Nepal* 675  
 Lo Mustang 168  
   *see also* Mustang  
 Locke, J. K. 15, 42, 342-344  
 Lohani, Ishwor R. 662  
 Lohani, Sudarshan 776  
 Lohuizen-de Leeuw, J. E. van 807, 836  
 London 54, 215, 219, 223, 597, 877  
 London University 289  
*Long term planning for agriculture in Nepal* 681  
*Look down not up* 137  
*Lore and legend of Nepal* 878  
 Los Angeles 823  
*Losing ground* 700  
 Lost wax process 840, 844  
   *see also* cire perdue  
 Lumbini 45, 59, 149-152, 155, 157, 159, 811  
*Lumbini-Kapilwastu-Dewadaha* 157  
 Lux, T. E. 23  
*Lyrical poems by Chadani Shah* 583

## M

Macdonald, A. W. 239, 375, 803, 854, 864-865  
 Macfarlane, A. 238, 403  
 Machhapuchhare 743  
 Mackenzie, C. 26  
 Mackintosh, E. N. 254  
 Maes, K. 699  
 Magadha 179  
 Magar language 267, 420  
 Magars 390, 398-399, 420, 701, 882  
*Magars of Banyan Hill* 399  
*Maghe sankranti* 864  
 Maha Bodhi Society 338  
 Mahakali basin 417  
*Mahakavi Laxmi Prasad*

*Deokota* 555  
 Maharani Jhinda 200  
 Maharjan, M. L. 91  
 Mahat, Ram Sharan 648  
 Mahat, T. B. S. 657  
*Mahaton* 413  
 Mahayana Buddhism 11, 329, 332, 352  
 Mahendra Bir Bikram Shah,  
   *see* 'Shah'  
 Mahendra Rajmarg 719  
 Mainali, Guru Prasad 574, 579, 585  
 Mainali, Thakur Prasad 804  
 Maithili (language) 267, 272, 277, 280, 553, 564  
*Maithili phonetics and phonology* 276  
*Maithili women of Sirsia* 429  
*Maîtres et possédés: ies dieux, les rites et l'organisation sociale chez les Tharu* 401, 422  
 Maize 663  
 Majupuria, Indra 129, 377-378, 443, 835, 849  
 Majupuria, Trilok Chandra 128-129, 143, 377-378, 835, 866  
 Makalu 90, 738  
*Makalu* 733  
*Making of a statue* 844  
 Makwanpur 412  
 Malaria 236, 910  
 Malaysia 908, 916  
 Maldives 788  
 Malla dynasty (Kathmandu Valley) 53, 148, 344, 553, 803, 831  
 Malla, B. C. 753  
 Malla, Kamal Prakash 19, 65, 180-181, 188, 265, 272, 288, 359, 383, 501, 535, 550, 552, 894  
 Malla, Khadga Man 789, 791  
 Malla, S. B. 130  
 Malla, Umesh Bahadur 715  
 Malla, Vijaya 580

Mallas (western) 176, 184, 186-187  
 Mallick, R. N. 672  
 Mallman, Marie-Thérèse de 805  
 Mallory, George Leigh 746  
 Malnutrition 229, 666  
 Mammals 141  
*Man* 838  
*Man of Everest: the autobiography of Tenzing* 742  
 Manandhar, R. 613  
 Manandhar, Thakurlal 285, 304, 551  
 Manandhar, Tri Ratna 174, 198  
 Manang 421, 824  
*Manas* 590  
 Manaslu 81, 126  
*Mandala* 822  
 Mandelbaum, D. 370  
 Manesvara 148  
*Mani Rimdu. Nepal. The Buddhist dance drama of Tengpoche* 328  
 Mani, M. S. 131  
 Mani Rimdu ritual 327-328  
*Muni-rimdu: Sherpa dance-drama in Nepal* 328  
 Manichuda 573  
*Manicudavadanoddrtta: A Buddhist re-birth story* 570, 573  
*Manicur* (map) 90  
 Mantrayana 349  
*Manual of afforestation in Nepal* 667  
 Manuscript painting 15  
 Manuscripts 25, 181, 175, 194, 285, 303, 346, 578, 772, 807, 814, 848  
 Manzardo, A. E. 362  
*Map inventory of Nepal* 93  
*Maps of Nepal* 88  
*Maps of Nepal: inventory and evaluation* 86  
 Maquet, J. 249  
 Marize, J.-C. 199  
 Marpha, 369, 823-824  
 Marriage 244, 377, 402, 405, 408, 410, 415, 432-433, 441, 444, 449, 451-452



- Marriage customs in Nepal* 377
- Marsyangdi (river) 379
- Martens, J. 704
- Marxism 599, 678
- Maskey, Chandra Man 813
- Maskey, J. N. 292
- Mason, K. 741
- Massage 252
- 'Masta' 348
- Masters, J. 517-518
- Mathur, P. C. 475
- Mathur, R. B. 170
- Mathura 819
- Matsyendranath 342
- Matthews, D. J. 279, 287, 289, 815
- Matthews, N. 794
- Matthiessen, P. 105, 138
- Matwalis 882
- Max Weber in Asian Studies* 341
- Mayfly nymphs 126
- Mayne, P. 106
- Mcdougal, C. 132, 376, 402
- Mechi zone 297
- Media 1, 748-58
- Mediaeval history of Nepal c. 750-1482* 181
- Medical Bibliography of Nepal* 232
- Medicine 97, 141, 225-263 passim, 281
- Medieval Nepal* 182
- Meerendonck, M. 305
- Meghalaya 504
- Menarche 435
- Menstruation 230, 317, 435
- Mercer, A. V. A. 17
- Mero Avishkar* 567
- Merrick, H. 730-731
- Mesopotamia 700
- Messer, J. 698
- Messerli, B. 702
- Messerschmidt, D. A. 97, 379, 403
- Metallurgy and metalwork 842
- Meteorology 724
- Mewa valley 419
- Mewar (Rajasthan) 562
- Mexico 650
- Michaels, Axel 9, 330, 336, 345, 381, 792, 797, 816, 844, 859
- Middle Indo-Aryan 274
- Mierow, D. 133
- Miers, C. J. P. 601
- Migration 21, 76, 231, 241-244, 362, 365, 504, 506-508, 694, 697, 701, 707
- Mihaly, E. B. 531, 537
- Mikesel, S. L. 519
- Miller, C. S. 239
- Millet 390
- Millot, H. 785, 789
- Mills, D. 124
- Mineral resources 74
- Ministry of Agriculture 659, 673
- Ministry of Communication 782
- Ministry of Defence (U.K.) 17
- Ministry of Education and Culture 1, 797
- Ministry of Food and Agriculture 674
- Ministry of Health 234, 240
- Ministry of Industry 649
- Ministry of Law and Justice 498, 538
- Ministry of Panchayat and Local Development 591
- Ministry of Public Works and Transport 712
- Minorités musulmanes dans le royaume hindou du Népal* 396
- Mir munshi* 175
- Miscellaneous essays relating to Indian subjects* 12
- Mishra, Chaitanya 504, 520, 614
- Mishra, Indra Deo 476, 477
- Mishra, Jayakanta 553
- Mishra, S. P. 465
- Mishra, Shanti 792-793, 910-912
- Mishra, Tara Nanda 151, 160
- Missionari italiani nel tibet e nel Nepal* 34, 52
- Missionaries 27, 34, 42, 48, 52-53
- Mitaksara* 494
- Mithila 22, 29, 223, 252, 322, 383, 429
- Mitra, Debala 152, 153, 155
- Mitra, R. L. 346
- Moddie, A. D. 69, 369, 697, 707
- Modern Asian Studies*, 409
- Modern Nepal* 210
- Modern Nepal: a political history, 1769-1955* 171, 223
- Modern Nepali poems* 580, 584
- Modi valley 408
- Mohariya 408
- Mohonk 702
- Mojumdar, K. 200-202, 214, 220
- The mollas of Mustang* 168
- Molnar, A. 444-445
- Molnar, P. 70-71
- Monasteries 342-344, 349, 394, 829
- Monastic initiation in Newar Buddhism* 332, 343
- Monasticism 338
- Monetary and credit policies of the Nepal Rastra bank* 624
- Monetary policy 624, 630
- Monetary structure in the Nepal economy* 624, 630
- Mongoloid 404
- Monk, householder and priest: Newar Buddhism and its hierarchy of ritual* 329
- Monograph on Buddha Sakyamuni's birthplace in the Nepalese tarai* 150
- Monuments of northern Nepal* 828
- Monuments of the Kathmandu valley* 832-833
- Morals and merit – a study of values and social controls* 366
- Morin, D. N. 733

Morphology 274, 288, 295  
 Morris, C. John 18, 380,  
 107, 262, 517, 521  
 Morrison, J. 698  
 Mortality 242-244, 262  
 Morton, B. 265  
 Mosses 126  
 Mother goddess 339  
 Mother tongue 242  
 Mothers' Club 446  
*Mountain environment and  
 development* 708  
*Mountain Research and  
 Development* 621, 702,  
 710, 770  
*Mountain village in Nepal*  
 399, 506  
*Mountains of the gods* 61-  
 62  
*Mr. Raja's neighbourhood,  
 letters from Nepal* 100  
 Mu tu divination ceremony  
 247  
 Mukherjee, S. N. 431-432,  
 440, 442  
 Mukherji, A. C. 209  
 Mukherji, P. C. 153  
*Mukhtiyar* 218  
 Muktinath-Manang  
 trekking route 103  
*Muladevasasidevavyakhy-  
 anataka* 563  
 Müller, U. 845  
 Multi-national companies  
 641  
*Multipurpose household  
 budget survey* 693  
*Muluk* 463  
*Muluki Ain* (1854) 174,  
 196, 373, 384-385, 494-  
 495,  
*Muluki Ain* (1963) 174,  
 495, 502  
*Muna-Madan* 559, 565-566  
 Muni, S. D. 457, 478, 539  
 Murphy, D. 108  
 Murphy, J. D. 284  
 Museums 1  
 Music recording 753  
 Musk deer 128  
 Muslims 7, 34, 178, 396  
*see also* Islam  
 Mustang 38, 81, 168, 368-  
 369, 407, 828

*see also* Lo Mustang  
*Mustang – a lost Tibetan  
 kingdom* 407  
*Mustang, the forbidden  
 kingdom* 407  
 Mustard oilseed 656  
*My recollections of the  
 great poet Laxmi  
 Prasad Devkota* 559  
 Mysticism 747

## N

Nagali Sagar 45  
 Nagarkot 39  
*Nagarkot* (map) 90  
 Nagas 318, 819  
 Naini Tal 422  
 Nakane, Chie 341, 507  
 Namikawa, I. 671  
 Nana Saheb 200  
 Nandy, A. 339  
 Narayanghat 420  
 'Narikot' (pseudonym) 437  
*Narrative of a five years'  
 residence at the court  
 of Nepaul* 54  
 Nath, Tribhuvan 540  
 National Agricultural  
 Documentation  
 Centre 675  
 National Archives of India  
 219  
 National Commission on  
 Population 235, 241  
 National Committee for  
 Man and the  
 Biosphere 705  
*National conference on  
 science and technology  
 – abstracts of scientific  
 papers* 917  
 National Council for  
 Science and  
 Technology 93,  
 913-914  
 National Development  
 Council 626  
 National Development  
 Service 591, 892  
 National Education  
 Committee 895  
 National Education

Planning Commission  
 896  
 National Education System  
 Plan 456, 472, 489,  
 894, 897, 900-902, 905  
 National Educational  
 Planning commission  
 907  
 National Insurance  
 Corporation 644  
 National parks 61  
 National Planning  
 Commission 242-244,  
 246, 596, 603, 615,  
 626, 662, 666, 692,  
 885-886  
*National sample census of  
 agriculture 1981-2* 673  
 Nationalism 270  
*Native postmarks of Nepal*  
 717  
*Natural hazards and man-  
 made impacts in the  
 Nepal* 709  
*Natural history and  
 economic botany of  
 Nepal* 117  
*Natural resources of Nepal*  
 75  
 Nay (butcher caste) 859  
*Nayakhi* 859  
*Nayakhibaja of the Newar  
 butchers* 859  
 Nayars 432  
 Neolithic period 156  
*Nepal* (Aryal, Winkler) 3  
*Nepal* (Hoefler) 13  
*Nepal* (Landon) 45  
*Nepal* (map) 94  
*Nepal* (Raj) 111  
*Nepal* (Whelpton) 906  
*Nepal after the revolution  
 of 1950* 474  
*Nepal Agricultural  
 Abstracts* 676  
*Nepal almanac: a book of  
 facts* 781  
*Nepal and its neighbours:  
 quest for status of a  
 land-locked state* 532  
*Nepal and the East India  
 Company* 214  
*Nepal and the Gurkhas* 17,  
 380

- Nepal and the Indian nationalist movement* 202
- Nepal and the Nepalese* 36
- Nepal: an annotated bibliography on rural development* 636
- Nepal Antiquary* 169, 382, 872
- Nepal: art treasures from the Himalayas* 811
- Nepal: an assertive monarchy* 457, 467, 478
- Nepal: atlas of economic development* 632
- Nepal – Australia forestry project* 657
- 'Nepal bhasa' 568  
see also Newari
- Nepal bibliography* 795
- Nepal-China and India: Nepal-China relations* 542
- Nepal-China war* 43
- Nepal: a conspectus* 550
- Nepal cultural heritage. Master plan for the conservation of the cultural history of the Kathmandu Valley* 834
- Nepal: development performance and prospects* 639
- Nepal diary* 896, 907
- Nepal: dimensions of development* 603
- Nepal district profile – a districtwise socio techno-economic profile of Nepal* 777
- Nepal district profile – education* 899
- Nepal district profile – population* 777
- Nepal documentation* 779
- Népal et ses populations* 7, 396
- Népal – étude historique d'un royaume hindou* 48
- Nepal fertility and family planning survey report* 240
- Nepal festivals: with some articles enquiring into Nepalese arts, religion and culture* 862
- Nepal: feudalism and rural formation* 689
- Nepal for foreign investors* 649
- Nepal health survey 1965-6* 263
- Nepal Himalaya (Shirahata)* 115
- Nepal Himalaya (Tilman)* 56, 744
- Nepal Himalaya: geo-ecological perspectives* 231, 508, 703
- Nepal: history of the country and people* 175
- Nepal in crisis: growth and stagnation at the periphery* 599, 622, 627
- Nepal in maps* 632
- Nepal in perspective* 65, 359, 383, 501, 535, 550, 684
- Nepal in transition: educational innovation* 898
- Nepal: the kingdom in the Himalayas* 10
- Nepal, the land of festivals* 866
- Nepal, land of mystery; adventures in Burma, China, India and the kingdom of Nepal* 33
- Nepal: the land question* 681
- Nepal Law Review* 499
- Nepal mandala: a cultural history of the Kathmandu valley* 171
- Nepal Medical Association* 229
- Nepal Miscellaneous Series* 500
- Nepal: a miscellany* 22
- Nepal namaste* 112
- Nepal 1982. A reference handbook* 782
- Nepal overseas trade statistics* 887
- Nepal: a pattern of human rights violations* 492
- Nepal: perspectives on development issues* 625
- Nepal Philatelic Society* 718
- Nepal Press Digest* 754
- Nepal Press Report* 755
- Nepal: profile of a Himalayan kingdom* 20
- Nepal: progress and problems 1972-80* 489
- Nepal Rajpatra* 500
- Nepal Rastriya Jana Vikas Parishad* 598
- Nepal Rastra Bank* 617, 624, 630, 644, 677
- Nepal Recorder* 500
- Nepal rediscovered. Court life from 1846 to 1951* 815
- Nepal Remote Sensing Centre* 95
- Nepal Research Centre* 699, 768, 844
- Nepal: rule and misrule* 207
- Nepal: a small nation in the vortex of international conflicts* 222
- Nepal: a state of poverty* 627
- Nepal: strategy for survival* 213, 544
- Nepal: struggle for existence* 544
- Nepal Studies Association* 763
- Nepal Studies Association Newsletter* 763
- Nepal: study in constitutional change* 491
- Nepal Thesis Abstracts* 676
- Nepal-Tibet relations 1850-1930* 221
- Nepal: transition from isolationism* 533, 550
- Nepal Treaty Series (1972-4)* 538
- Nepal under Jang Bahadur, 1846-77* 189

- Nepal, where the gods are young* 809
- Nepal: the years of trouble* 198
- Nepalamahatmya* 564
- Nepalese administration: an image* 487
- Nepalese agriculture: a comparative evaluation* 662
- Nepalese architecture* 818
- Nepalese art* 806
- Nepalese coins with illustrations* 869
- Nepalese cultural heritage in a nutshell* 15
- Nepalese customs and manners* 868
- Nepalese Dilemma 1960-74* 540
- Nepalese folk tales and legends (2nd. series)* 884
- Nepalese Journal of Political Science* 480
- Nepalese manuscripts. Part I: Nevari and Sanskrit* 551
- Nepalese minatures* 814
- Nepalese national bibliography* 768
- Nepalese pagoda – origins and style* 821-822
- Nepalese short stories* 585
- Nepalese temple architecture* 836
- Nepalese women: a vivid account* 443
- Nepalganj-Dailekh (map)* 81
- Nepali (language)* 42, 43, 175, 176, 188, 189, 217, 264-315 passim, 427, 463, 499, 502, 517, 521, 546, 548, 549, 550, 554, 560, 566, 572, 578, 580, 583, 585, 685, 750, 756, 761, 768, 790-791, 793, 795, 869, 882, 909
- Nepali Awaj* 758
- Nepali ama: portrait of a Nepalese hill woman* 438
- Nepali brihat shabdakosh* 302, 306
- Nepali Congress* 455, 459-460, 464-465, 471, 473, 479, 586
- Nepali Congress since its inception* 479
- Nepali conversation manual* 290
- Nepali emigrants in India* 504
- Nepali literature: background and history* 561
- Nepali newspaper reader* 284
- Nepali politics: retrospect and prospect* 482
- Nepali rastriya mudra (Nepalese national coinage)* 869-871
- Nepali samkshipta shabdakosh* 302
- Nepali shabdakosh* 311
- Nepali version of the Vetalapancavimsati* 578
- Nepali visions, Nepali dreams. The poetry of Laxmi Prasad Devkota* 555, 581
- Nepali women's organisation* 446
- Nepali, Gopal Singh* 381, 404
- Nepali-English Dictionary* 312
- Nepali: a national language and its literature* 270, 548
- Nepal's economy: an overview* 594, 695, 722
- Nepal's experience in hill agricultural development* 674
- Nepal's experiments in constitutionalism* 1948-81 497
- Nepal's fiscal issues: new challenges* 593
- Nepal's politics of referendum* 460
- Nepal's quinquennial missions to China* 198
- Nepal's trade and transit agreements* 887
- Netherlands* 496
- Nevarigitimanjari. Religious and secular poetry of the Newars* 570, 573-574
- New standard dictionary: English- Nepali* 307
- New Yorker* 4
- Newar art: Nepalese art during the Malla period* 803
- The Newar women of Bulu* 447
- Newar society* 398, 411
- Newar towns and buildings. An illustrated dictionary* 826
- Newari (language)* 8, 43, 175, 180, 188, 266-269, 271-272, 286, 288, 292-293, 304, 313-314, 336, 550-552, 555, 563, 568, 570-571, 573, 574, 585, 826, 858-859
- Newari (classical)* 285, 303-304
- Newari language: a working outline* 288
- Newari root verbs* 313-314
- Newari-English dictionary* 285
- Newari-English dictionary* 304
- Newars* 7, 14, 28, 52, 102, 185, 190, 245, 304, 317, 329, 331, 332, 336, 340, 342, 353, 355-356, 363-365, 381, 389, 398, 404, 410-411, 418, 424, 426, 432, 447, 547, 568, 573, 601, 687, 803, 823, 829, 838, 859-860, 867, 881
- Newars: an ethno-sociological study of a Himalayan community* 404
- Niglihawa* 45, 157
- Non-alignment* 527, 539
- Non-governmental*

organizations 235  
 Norgay, Tenzing 737, 739,  
 742  
*North of Pokhara* (map) 92  
 North-west frontier 44,  
 517, 521  
 North-west Provinces 162  
 Northeym W. B. 18, 380  
 Norway 728  
 Noyce, W. 739, 743  
*Numismatic Chronicle* 873  
 Numismatics 164, 869-875  
 Nuptiality 242, 244  
 Nutrition 263, 663  
 Nuwakot 257, 335, 425,  
 663  
 Nyinba 452  
 Nyishang 421  
 Nykiel, J. 72  
 Nyungne 406

## O

Oak-rhododendron 121  
 Oakley, E. S. 879  
 Ohashi, H. 134  
 Oil seeds 117  
 Okhaldunga 409  
 Old Indo-Aryan 274  
 Oldfield, H. A. 49-50  
 Oldfield, M. A. 50  
 Oliphant, Lawrence 51  
 Olschak, B. C. 72  
 Olsen, R. 791  
*On India's frontier or  
 Nepal, the Gurkhas'  
 mysterious land* 24  
*On Yuan Chwang's travels  
 in India* 59  
*Once a hermit kingdom* 897  
 Ong, S. E. 674  
*Operational experiences in  
 forestry management  
 in the hills of Nepal*  
 657  
 Oppitz, M. 405  
*Oppositional politics in  
 Nepal* 456-459  
*Ordered space concepts  
 and functions in a  
 town of the  
 Kathmandu Valley* 713  
*Origin and development of*

*the Nepali language*  
 274  
 Ornithology 118, 122, 128,  
 141  
 Orthography 264-265  
 Ortner, S. B. 406  
 Osterreichischer  
 Alpenverein 66  
*Other side of polyandry*  
 452  
*Overseas trade statistics* 887  
 Oxford 741

## P

Pabyuk 507  
 Pacific Ocean 70, 749  
*Pacific Viewpoint* 332, 687  
 Pagoda 818, 821-822  
 Pahari culture 176, 357  
 Pahari (language group)  
 264, 266  
 Painted scrolls 15  
 Paisia 149  
 Pakistan 114, 138, 522,  
 609, 674, 751, 788  
 Pal, Pratapaditya 319, 807-  
 809  
 Pala style 807  
 Pala-Sen style 830  
 Palace secretariat 626  
*Palace, people and politics:  
 Nepal in perspective*  
 465  
 Palaeolithic period 156  
 Palaeontology 129, 156  
 Pali 346  
 Pallachaundly 697  
 Palpa 18, 878  
 Pamirs 521  
 Panauti 426  
 Panauti (map) 90  
*Panchalis* 185  
 Panchayat system 20, 235,  
 360-361, 413, 456-458,  
 460, 462, 466, 468,  
 471, 473, 475-477, 479,  
 482, 485, 489-492, 497,  
 501, 623, 637, 684, 689  
 Panchen Lama 38  
 Panchgaon 369  
 Panchthar district 297  
 Panday, Chapla 261  
 Panday, D. R. 605  
 Panday, Devendra Raj  
 533, 616  
 Panday, R. K. 73  
 Pande, B. R. 254  
 Pande, Bhuvan Lal 155  
 Pande, Ranjang 219  
 Pandey, Krishna Raj 712  
 Pandey, R. N. 15, 155-156  
 Pandey, Ram Kumar 880  
 Pandey, S. R. 678  
 Paneru, Sudha 245  
 Pangma 696  
 Pangtey, Y. P. S. 703  
 Pant, Hari Dhoj 679  
 Pant, T. N. 680  
 Pant, Y. P. 246, 872  
 Pant, Yadav Prasad 617-  
 619, 681  
 Panthare 297  
 Paper making 842, 848  
*Papers respecting the  
 Nepaul war* 191  
 Parasitology 910  
*Parbate* 756  
 Parbatiya (language) 463  
*see also Nepali*  
*Parbatiya women of  
 Bakundol* 436  
 Parbatiyas 381, 419, 442,  
 881  
*see also Indo-Nepalese*  
 Parijat 576  
 Park, M. 601  
 Parker, B. 247  
 Parker, M. 124  
 Parkin, D. J. 361  
 Parliamentary government  
 360, 446, 471, 501  
 Parmanand 479  
 Parsa district 689  
*Pashupati Purana* 564  
 Pashupatinath 836  
 Pastoralism 238  
 Patan 14, 84, 87, 91, 233,  
 336, 342, 356, 447,  
 780, 799, 821, 832  
*Patan* (map) 90  
*Patan city map* 82  
*Patan city* (map) 84  
 Patna 179  
 Patrimonial administration  
 193, 481  
*Patrimonial and*

- bureaucratic administration in Nepal* 193
- Patron and the panca: village values and panchayat democracy* 462
- Patterns of change in the Nepal Himalaya* 251
- Patterns of migration and labour force in Kathmandu* 694
- Patterson, A. G. 510
- Paudel, Mehar Man 620
- Paudyal, Lekhnath 270, 558, 565, 580
- Paysan limbu sa maison et ses champs* 419
- Peace Corps 98, 102, 287, 438
- Pearson, J. D. 794
- Pearson, M. 248
- Peasants and landlords: land tenure in the Kathmandu Valley* 687
- Peasants and workers in Nepal* 598
- Peissel, M. 109, 407
- Peking 42, 198
- Pemble, J. 203
- People of Nepal* 358
- People of the stones: the Chepangs of Central Nepal* 412
- Percival, A. D. 26
- Perera, A. D. T. E. 159
- Perkins, P. 613
- Perrin, J. 744
- Persistence of high fertility in Nepal* 234, 260
- Personnel administration 461, 486-487
- Pest control 669
- Petech, L. 52, 181
- Peters, L. C. 249
- Ph.D. and M.Sc. dissertation abstracts* 912
- Pharchamo 98
- Pharphing* (map) 90
- Phedappe (Limbu dialect) 295
- Philip, Duke of Edinburgh 739
- Philippines 916
- Philology 760
- Phonology 274, 276, 285, 288, 295, 301
- Photography 815
- Phulchoki 90
- Physical and cultural geography of Nepal* 68
- Physical development plan for the Kathmandu Valley* 712, 829
- Physiography 129
- Picturesque Nepal* 28
- Pignède, B. 403, 408, 897
- Pike, K. L. 267
- Pilgrims 61
- Piprahawa 160
- Pitt, D. C. 621
- Pitt, P. 250
- Planned development in Nepal – a study* 622
- Planning for people* 626, 634
- Planning science and technology for national development* 916
- Plant collecting 120, 127, 130, 144
- Plant hunting in Nepal* 127
- Plant research and development* 704
- Poffenberger, M. 251
- Pokernomics. Essays on economics development and self-reliance* 613
- Pokhara 81, 87, 92, 103, 107-108, 113-114, 238, 281, 399, 421, 438, 506, 719, 743, 843, 897, 905
- Pokhara to Annapurna-Dhaulagiri Himal* (map) 92
- Pokhara to Jomosom-Mustang* (map) 92
- Pokhrel, Bal Krishna 306, 311
- Political development in Nepal 1950-70* 466
- Political developments in Nepal with particular reference to the post-referendum period* 608
- Political economy of foreign aid in the Third World* 531
- The political economy of Nepalese land reform* 678
- Political economy of soil erosion in developing countries* 698
- Political participation and change in South Asia* 468
- Politics in Nepal: a study of post-Rana political developments* 471
- Politics of balanced independence – Nepal and SAARC* 529
- Politics of development: transportation policy in Nepal* 721
- Politics of Nepal: persistence and change in an Asian monarchy* 469
- Politics, plans and people: culture and health development in Nepal* 236
- Polunin, Oleg 56, 135-136
- Polyandry 452
- Polygamy 444
- Population and development in Nepal: an annotated bibliography* 259
- Population and family planning in Nepal* 260
- Population Census 1981* 885
- Population distribution 231
- Population dynamics of Nepal* 228
- Population growth 228, 246, 255, 391
- Population growth and employment opportunities in Nepal* 246
- Population monograph of Nepal* 242, 261
- Population of Nepal* 261
- Population projection of*

- Nepal* 243  
*Population, labour force and employment* 695  
 Porters 388, 423, 598, 711  
*Postage stamps of Nepal* 717-718  
 Potter, L. 698  
 Pottery 148, 838, 845  
*Poudres d'or et monnaies d'argent au Tibet* 164  
 Poudyal, Devi Dutta 911  
 Poudyal, H. 122  
 Poudyal, Lekh Nath 569  
 Poudyal, M. P. 481  
 Poudyal, Sriram 622  
 Poverty 620-621, 625, 692, 606  
*Poverty to prosperity in Nepal* 606  
*Prêtrise, pouvoirs et autorité en Himalaya* 332  
 Prabhavati 564  
 Pradhan, Bharat Bahadur 623, 664, 712  
 Pradhan, Bhavani 447, 454  
 Pradhan, Bhuvan Lal 151, 157, 159-160  
 Pradhan, Bina 446, 448  
 Pradhan, G. P. 300  
 Pradhan, Krishna Bhai 273  
 Pradhan, Kumar 554  
 Pradhan, Madhan Bahadur 872  
 Pradhan, N. M. 307  
 Pradhan, Paras Mani 307, 554-558, 575  
 Pradhan, Prachanda 501  
 Pradhan, Pustun 527  
 Pradhan, Radha S. 652  
 Pradyumna 564  
*Pradyumna-Prabhavati legend in Nepal* 564  
*Pradyumnajayanataka* 564  
 Prahlad 582  
 Prasad, I. 204  
 Prasad, Shashi Bhushan 541  
 Prasai, T. B. 240  
 Prasche, Carl 827  
*Prashnottar* 556  
 Pre-Hindu religion 320, 819
- Pregnancy 230  
*Preliminary report on the art and architecture of the Karnali basin* 184  
*Preliminary report on two scientific expeditions in Nepal* 184, 186  
*Preparatory workshop on Himalayan studies* 163  
*Priests and cobblers* 361, 462  
*Primary health care in the hills of Nepal* 225  
 Primary health care programme 258  
 Prindle, P. H. 409  
 Prinsep, H. T. 205  
 Printing 752  
 Prisons 492  
 Prithvi Bir *see* Shah  
 Prithvi Narayan Shah *see* Shah  
*Prithvi Narayan Shah in the light of Ditya Upadesh* 216, 562  
 Prithvi Rajmarg 719  
 Privatization 605, 650  
*Problems in fiscal and monetary policy* 617  
*Proceedings of the Royal Geographical Society* 55  
 Proto-Tamang-Gurung-Thakali (reconstructed language) 301  
 Proudfoot, C. L. 522  
 Pruchnik, J. 138  
 Prussia 39  
 Puberty 432  
*Public administration and nation building in Nepal* 481  
 Public finance 592, 605, 607, 617, 633, 644  
 Public Record Office 215  
 Public Security Act 492  
*Publishing world in Nepal* 752  
 Pugh, G. 739  
 Pujari Math 829  
 Pulchowki 780  
*Puranas* 345  
*Purpude* 856
- Purusartha* 332, 353  
 Pyakurel, B. D. 93  
 Pyangaon 424, 426  
*Pyangaon, une communauté newar de la vallée de Kathmandou* 424  
 Pye-Smith, C. 110  
 Pygmy Hog 137
- Q
- Quality of data in the Nepal fertility survey* 234  
 Quigley, D. 398, 410-411, 418
- R
- R. Kilgour's Dictionary, English-Nepali* 300  
 Radhakrishnan, S. 266  
 Radio 753  
 Ragsdale, T. 897  
 Rahman Ziaur 544  
 Rai 388  
 Rai (Khaling) 294  
 Rai (Kulunge) 402  
 Rai (Lohrung) 430  
 Rai (Thulung) 227  
 Rai, Navin Kumar 362, 412  
 Rai, Shiva Kumar 579  
*Raikar* 387  
 Railways 212, 722  
 Raj, Prakash A. 111  
 Rajasthan 175, 562  
 Rajaure, Drone P. 401, 413-415, 422, 449  
 Rajbanshi, B. S. 261  
 Rajbanshi, K. G. 682  
 Rajgurus 35, 111, 224  
 Raji 417  
 Rajopadhyay Brahmans 353  
 Rajputs 354, 357, 562  
*Rajyabhisekavidhana* 345  
 Raksha Dal 586  
 Ram, Rajendra 347  
 Ramakant 200, 206, 214, 220, 468, 532, 542  
 Ramapithecus 156  
 Ramayana 322, 556

- Ramechap 664  
*Ramgita* 556  
 Rampur Agricultural Campus 661  
 Ramsay, W. J. H. 703  
 Rana family 45, 174-175, 546  
*Rana Nepal – an insider's view* 208  
*Rana polity in Nepal: origin and growth* 197  
 Rana régime 4, 41, 173, 193, 196-197, 202, 207-208, 211-213, 299, 358, 360, 455, 464-465, 471, 473, 482, 490-491, 512, 534, 572, 577, 586, 588, 634, 653, 812, 815  
 Rana, Bam Bahadur (Kunwar) 35, 51  
 Rana, Bir Shamsheer Jang Bahadur 212  
 Rana, Chandra Shamsheer Jang Bahadur 18, 41, 45  
 Rana, Daman Shamsheer Jang Bahadur 207, 577  
 Rana, Dev Shamsheer Jang Bahadur 106, 750  
 Rana, Greta 577, 588  
 Rana, Hemanta S. J. B. 523  
 Rana, Jagat Jang 577  
 Rana, Jagut Shamsheer Jang Bahadur 106  
 Rana, Jang Bahadur (Kunwar) 4, 27, 30-31, 35-36, 41, 49, 51, 54, 175, 189, 196, 198, 201, 206, 209, 219, 223-224, 373, 483, 512, 577, 780, 812, 815  
 Rana, Juddha Shamsheer Jang Bahadur 204, 207  
 Rana, Kaisher Shamsheer Jang Bahadur 188  
 Rana, Kamal 454  
 Rana, Khadga Shamsheer Jang Bahadur 150  
 Rana, Madhukar Shamsheer Jang Bahadur 428, 433, 446, 453, 719  
 Rana, Mohan Shamsheer Jang Bahadur 119  
 Rana, Mussoorie Shamsheer Jang Bahadur 106  
 Rana, Padma Shamsheer Jang Bahadur 491, 497  
 Rana, Pashupati Shamsheer Jang Bahadur 19, 65, 166, 272, 359, 383, 501, 535, 550  
 Rana, Pramode Shamsheer 208  
 Rana, Pudma Jang Bahadur 209  
 Rana, Ranoddip Singh 24-25, 198, 577  
 Rana, Ratna Shamsheer Jang Bahadur 914-916  
 Rana, S. Shamsheer Jang Bahadur 15  
 Rana, Sajag 890  
 Rana, Shersingh 223  
 Rapti zone 444-445  
 Rastriya Panchayat 371, 457, 477, 484, 602, 776  
 Rasuwa 335  
 Rathaur, K. R. S. 523  
*Rati-Lila, an interpretation of the tantric imagery of the temples of Nepal* 835  
 Ratna Book Distributors 308  
*Ratna trekker's pocket pal* 308  
 Rau, H. 699, 831  
 Ray, H. 532  
*Readings in the legal system of Nepal* 493  
*Recent research on Nepal* 425, 494, 791  
*Récits chantés de l'Himalaya et le contexte ethnographique* 853  
 'Red Matsyendranath' 342  
*Red Temple* 587  
 Reed, H. B. 898  
 Reed, M. J. 898  
 Reejal, Pushkar Raj 450, 624  
 Referendum (1980) 8, 460, 465, 476, 479, 483, 491, 498  
 Refugees 10  
*Regional development in Nepal – an exercise in economic reality* 618  
*Regional imbalances and process of regional development* 618  
*Regional patterns of migration in Nepal, 1952-54* 241  
 Regional planning 603, 610, 618  
*Regional strategy for development – a case study of Nepal* 610  
*Regionalism and national unity in Nepal* 371  
 Registration of deaths and births 242  
*Regmi Research Series* 686, 771, 870-871  
 Regmi, B. R. 886  
 Regmi, Dilli Rahman 177, 182-183, 210, 872  
 Regmi, Jagdish Chandra 382, 872  
 Regmi, Mahesh Chandra 211-212, 653, 683-684, 771  
 Regmi, Nirmal 777  
 Regmi, Puskal Prasad 685  
 Regmi, Rabindra Nath 776-777  
 Regmi, Rishikeshab Raj 416  
 Reincarnation 394  
 Reinhard, J. 417  
 Reissland, N. 252-253  
*Reminiscences of an Indian official* 31  
 Remote sensing 95  
 Renaud, J.-P. 667  
*Renewable energy resources in Nepal* 706  
 Renunciation 317  
*see also ascetics*  
*A report on a tour of excavation of the antiquities of Kapilavastu* 153  
*Report to the government of Nepal on land reform* 691  
 Reptiles 141



- Research Centre for Applied Science and Technology 706  
*Research on Nepal 1975-1983. A bibliography* 791  
*Research papers in botany* 912  
*Research papers in physics* 911  
*Research papers in zoology* 910  
 Resettlement 635, 670  
 Resource Conservation and Utilisation Project 110  
*Resource mobilization and economic development in Nepal during the plan period* 607  
*Resource mobilization in Nepal* 592  
 Resources 699  
*Resources and population: a study of the Gurungs of Nepal* 238, 251  
 Revato, Fr. Giuseppe 53  
*Revue Franaise d'Histoire d'Outre-Mer* 27  
 Rexaul 26  
 Rhodes, N. C. 873  
 Rhys Davis, T. W. 59  
*Rhythms of a Himalayan village* 327  
 Riccardi, Theodore 48, 578-579, 783  
 Rice 390, 663, 672  
*Rice in Nepal* 672  
 Rice weevils 126  
 Richmond, J. P. 386  
*Riding the mountains down. A journey by bicycle to Kathmandu* 114  
 Riefel R. 112  
 Rieger, H. C. 707, 719  
 Rijal, Babu Krishna 15, 155, 158-160  
 Rimal, Gauri Nath 827  
 Rimal, Gopal Prasad 22, 580  
 Rimal, Nirmal Nath 776, 899  
 Rintz, F. C. 23  
*Rise of the house of Gorkha* 190, 214, 217, 562  
*Rising Nepal* 22, 529, 559, 750, 754, 757, 862, 883, 894  
 Ritter, C. 39  
*River systems of Nepal* 75  
 Road construction 634, 664, 719-721  
*Road construction in the Nepal Himalaya* 720  
*Road past Mandalay: a personal narrative* 518  
*Road to nowhere: a selection of writings, 1966-197* 894  
 Robertson, C. V. L. 601  
 Robinson, F. 783  
 Robson, C. 124  
 Rockhill, W. W. 32  
 Roe, Thomas 80  
 Rohini 157  
*Rolamba* 772  
*Role of non-governmental and class organisations in family planning programmes* 235  
 Rolpa district 444  
 Romantic poets 581  
 Roncoli, M. C. 262  
 Rooke, S. 124  
 Ropeways 10, 722  
 Rose, Leo E. 20, 213, 469, 473, 482, 531, 544, 625, 684, 721  
 Roseneau, J. 541  
 Ross, J. 34  
 Rosser, C. 418, 657, 720  
*Rough notes on the state of Nepal* 30  
*Round Kangchenjunga* 734  
*Rowaling Himal (map)* 90  
 Royal Nepal Academy 1, 819, 894  
 Royal Nepal Academy of Science and Technology 915-917  
 Royal Nepal Airlines Corporation 722-723  
 Rubin, David 555, 581  
 Rural development 591, 603, 619-620, 623, 705, 908  
*Rural development in Nepal: problems and prospects* 591, 623  
*Rural landlessness in Nepal* 666  
*Rural problems and rural development in Nepal* 619  
*Rural women of Nepal: an aggregative analysis and summary of 8 village studies* 430  
 Russia 57, 62, 195, 531, 537, 719, 721  
 Rylander, R. 613

## S

- SAARC Voyage 529  
 Saba, H. S. 834  
*Sacred and symbolic animals of Nepal* 129  
*Sacred and useful plants of Nepal* 129  
*Sacred complex in Janakpur* 337  
*Sadhanamala* 319  
 Sagant, P. 419  
 Sagarmatha zone 388, 409  
 Sagauli 24  
 Sagauli, treaty of 218  
 Sahitya Akademi 555  
 Sainju, Mohan Man 260, 454, 686, 723  
 Saketa 573  
 Sakya  
*see* Shakya  
 Sakya, H. R. 827  
 Sakya, Karna 113, 137, 881  
 Sallyan 376  
 Salt 391  
 Sama, Bal Krishna 22, 270, 546, 557-558, 565, 569, 579-580, 582, 589  
 Sampurnanand 422  
 Samsher, Pushkar 579  
 Sanday, J. 13, 832-833, 846  
 Sandes, P. 829  
 Sanitation 263  
*Sankhya* 442  
*Sannyasis* 386  
*see also* ascetics  
 Sanskrit 25, 42, 48, 175-908

- 177, 180, 183, 186,  
188, 272, 306, 315,  
346, 350, 550-552, 555,  
564, 570-571, 573-574,  
578, 808, 818
- Sanskrit Buddhist literature  
of Nepal* 346
- Sanskrit inscriptions of  
Nepal* 177
- Sanskritization 272, 416,  
687
- Sanwal, D. S. 214
- Sapt Koshi (river system)  
118
- Saptahik Bimarsha* 758
- Saptahik Manch*, 758
- Saraswati. S. K. 814
- Sarin, H. C. 724
- Sarkis 361
- SATA  
see Swiss Agency for  
Technical  
Assistance
- Satellite photography 70-71
- Satungal 823
- Satyaj, J. L. 686, 718
- Saudi Arabia 496
- Schaffner, U. 720
- Schaller, G. 105, 138
- Schloss, A. 626, 721
- Schmeichel, J. 90
- Schmidt, R. L. 273, 290,  
309
- Schneider, E. 66, 89, 730
- Scholz, J. T. 20
- School enrolment 244
- School of Oriental and  
African Studies 773
- Schoolhouse in the clouds*  
893
- Schuler, S. R. 254, 451-452
- Schwartzberg, J. E. 170
- Science and technology for  
development in Nepal*  
914
- Sciences humaines*  
see *Bibliographie du  
Népal*
- Scientific American* 70-71
- Scientific and technical  
organisations in Nepal*  
913
- Scientific research,  
technology*  
*development, transfer  
and dissemination* 915
- Scott, D. 741
- Search for the Spiny  
Babbler: an adventure  
in Nepal* 119
- Seboek, T. A. 264
- Seckler, D. 698
- Seckler, E. F. 834
- Seddon, D. 598-599, 627
- Seeland, K. T. 425, 494,  
791, 847
- Selby, B. 114
- Select annotated  
bibliography on  
integrated rural  
development – Nepal*  
600
- Select bibliography of  
works on the Tamangs  
of Nepal* 400
- Selected index of articles  
from the Rising Nepal*  
757
- Seminar papers in  
linguistics* 265
- Sengupta, N. A. 509
- Senior, H. W. R. 310
- Seor 227
- Sestini, V. 823
- Seti valley 281
- Seti zone 889
- Seto Bagh* 578
- Settlement distribution 76
- Settlement type 76
- Seven mountain travel  
books* 56, 744
- Seven poets* 565
- Seven sisters and other  
Nepalese tales* 878
- Seventh Plan 1985-90 (a  
summary). Part 1* 615
- Sewerage system 612
- Shah dynasty 45, 167, 175,  
354, 562, 815
- Shah, Birendra Bir  
Bikram, king of Nepal  
306, 345, 465, 468,  
479, 489-491, 544, 584,  
615, 625-626, 637, 757
- Shah, Chadani 583
- Shah, Khadga Bikram 388,  
412, 716
- Shah, M. B. B. 565, 580
- Shah, Mahendra Bir  
Bikram, king of Nepal  
107, 371, 455, 459,  
473, 482, 540, 565,  
580, 584, 626, 681, 757
- Shah, Narayan K. 263
- Shah, Prithvi Narayan,  
king of Nepal 52-53,  
182, 190, 210, 214-217,  
562
- Shah, Sukhidev 628-629
- Shah, Surendra Bir  
Bikram, king of Nepal  
219, 812, 874
- Shah, Tribhuvan Bir  
Bikram, king of Nepal  
47, 215
- Shaha, Rishikesh 21, 215,  
223, 468, 482-484, 543-  
544, 783
- Shaha, Siddhanta 850
- Shaivites 386, 564
- Shakha, Kusum Shrestha  
433
- Shakya, H. 181
- Shakya, Soorya Bahadur  
22, 900
- Shakyas (Buddha's tribe)  
57
- Shakyas (Newar caste)  
342, 344, 830
- Shamanism 249, 335, 367
- Shamsher Ranas 24, 198,  
209, 380, 577
- Shankaracharya 347, 386
- Shankar, B. 694
- Shanta Bhawan hospital  
233
- Sharan, Parmatma 485
- Sharma, Bal Chandra 306,  
311
- Sharma, Bharat 716
- Sharma, Chandra K. 74-  
75, 709
- Sharma, Gunanidhi 624,  
630
- Sharma, Jagadish 544
- Sharma, Kul Shekhar 259
- Sharma, Kumar Dhar  
(‘Gyani’) 302
- Sharma, Kyl Shekhar 645
- Sharma, Man Mohan 882
- Sharma, Nagendra 883
- Sharma, Pitamber 614, 632

- Sharma, Prayag Raj 184-185, 265, 317, 348, 362, 383-385, 433, 827, 829
- Sharma, Ram Krishna 558
- Sharma, S. P. 654
- Sharma, S. R. 842
- Sharma, Taranath 291, 296, 583
- Sheffield, M. 850
- Shepherd, G. 116, 420
- Sherchan (clan) 397
- Sherchan, Bhupi 535, 580
- Sherpas 66, 245, 327, 365-366, 368, 394, 402, 405-406, 704, 726, 742, 839, 868, 893
- Sherpas of Nepal-Buddhist highlanders* 368, 394
- Sherpas through their rituals* 327, 406
- Sherpas transformed-social change in a Buddhist society of Nepal* 395
- Shifting elite loyalties* 459
- Shigatse (Tashilunpo) 32, 38
- Shipping agencies 781
- Shipton, E. 730
- Shirata, S. 115
- Shiva 865
- Shivaite 354
- Shiwakothi, Shesh Raj 382, 502, 545, 686, 872
- Shore, John 53
- Shorong Hinku* (map) 90
- A Short history of Nepal* 172
- Shrestacharya  
*see* Sresthacharya
- Shresthas 418
- Shrestha, Aditya Man 262
- Shrestha, Ananda 163
- Shrestha, Badri Prasad 618, 631
- Shrestha, Barun Prasad 82, 88-90
- Shrestha, Bishnu K. 486
- Shrestha, Chandra Bahadur 76, 559, 715-716
- Shrestha, Chij K. 287
- Shrestha, Indira 430, 448, 453
- Shrestha, Jamuna 519
- Shrestha, Jeevan 139, 910
- Shrestha, Kedar N. 901
- Shrestha, Keshab. 140
- Shrestha, Mangal Krishna 487
- Shrestha, Nanda R. 63, 255
- Shrestha, Padma Prakash 815
- Shrestha, Ram Krishna 632
- Shrestha, Ramesh 590, 902-903, 909
- Shrestha, Ramesh M. 247, 256
- Shrestha, Ratna Lall 722
- Shrestha, Sharan Hari 77, 632
- Shrestha, Siddhicharan 565, 580
- Shrestha, Tej Kumar 141
- Shrestha, Tirtha Bahadur 133, 142, 790
- Shrestha, Tulsi Narayan 487-488
- Shrestha, Vijay 454
- Shrishko Phul 576
- Shrivastava, D. 274
- Shrivastava, K. M. 153, 157, 160
- Sibaja* (death music) 859
- Siberia 249
- Sichyah* 858-859
- Siddha* 332
- Siddhicharan 535, 569
- Siebenlechner, A. 82, 90
- Sikkim, 23, 40, 55, 57, 122, 163, 341, 365, 507, 509, 734, 751
- Sikkim – a short political history* 509
- Silent cry – the people of Nepal: 1816-39* 214, 218
- Simhasanadvatrimsatika* 571
- Simple geography of Nepal* 77
- Sinclair, T. 125
- Sindhupalchok 657, 664, 828
- Singapore 916
- Singh, C. L. 312
- Singh, D. P. 461
- Singh, G. P. 240
- Singh, K. B. 527
- Singh, K. N. 508
- Singh, Madanjeet 810
- Singh, Marich Man 881
- Singh, Matshyendra Lal 312
- Singh, Naresh Man 631
- Singh, Ramchandra Bahadur 781
- Singh, S. Karom 633
- Singh, S. S. 175
- Singh, Shilu 433
- Singh, T. B. 527
- Sirsia 429
- Sita 337, 429
- Sivalaya: explorations of the 8000-metre peaks of the Himalaya* 725
- Sivaramurti, C. 818
- Siwaliks 156
- Siwapuri* (map) 90
- 6th Queen Elizabeth's Own 524
- Sketch of the portion of Nepal open to Europeans* 60
- Sketch of Thulung grammar with three texts and glossary* 278
- Sketches from Nepal* 49-50
- Slash-and-burn cultivation 238
- Slavery 251
- Slusser, Mary Shepherd 102, 171
- Small Farmer Development programme 620, 623, 675
- Smallpox 236
- Smash and grab – annexation of Sikkim* 509
- Smil, V. 698
- Smith, Colin 128, 143
- Smith, E. D. 524
- Smith, Elizabeth 280
- Smith, H. H. 23
- Smith, J. A. 736
- Smith, T. B. 468
- Smith, Thomas 54
- Smith, Vincent 153
- Smith, Warren W. 318

- Smithsonian Institution 119  
 Snellgrove, D. L. 349-352  
*Snow leopard* 105, 138  
*Social science and medicine* 226, 236, 247-248, 252-253, 258  
 Social welfare 782  
 Socialization 262  
*Société et religion chez les Newar du Népal* 404, 426  
 Socio-Cultural Centre for Women 446  
 Soil erosion 705  
*Soil: Nepal* 675  
 Solar energy 706  
 Solu Khumbu 4, 10, 100, 109, 328, 349, 395, 893  
 Solu Khumbu 294, 405, 828  
*Some aspects of cultural policy in Nepal* 1  
*Some aspects of Rana rule* 198  
 Somigli, E. 823  
*Songs of Nepal. An anthology of Newar folksongs and hymns* 574  
*Sora jat* 403  
 South Asia 361, 363, 416, 441, 527, 547, 609, 680, 749  
*South Asia Research* 548, 773  
 South Asian Association for Regional Cooperation (SAARC) 529, 536, 544  
*South Asian societies – a study of values and social controls* 366  
 South Col 731  
 South-east Asia 353, 421, 680, 749  
 South-Western Journal of Anthropology 852  
 Soviet Union  
   *see* Russia  
 Spark, A. 737  
 Spengen, W. van 421  
 Spiny babbler 119  
 Spirit possession 227, 239, 325, 333, 357, 879  
*Spirit possession in the Nepal Himalayas* 333  
 Sport 17, 782  
 Sprigg, R. K. 310  
 Sresthacharya, Iswaranand 292-293, 313-314, 826  
 Sri Lanka 100, 159, 338, 609, 788  
*Sri Pasupati issues of Nepal* 717  
 Srivastava, Surendra Kumar 401, 422  
 Stahl, A. V. 803  
 Stahr, E. J. 122  
 Stainton, A. 135-136  
 Stainton, J. D. A. 144  
 Standardization 272  
 Standrod, G. L. 779  
 Stapleton, C. M. A. 667  
*State government and politics: Sikkim* 509  
*Statistical pocket book – Nepal* 886, 888  
*Statistical profile of Nepalese women* 428  
*Statistical year book of Nepal* 1987 886  
*Status of environmental knowledge in Nepal: annotated bibliography* 705  
 Status of Women in Nepal project 428, 430, 436, 445, 447, 449-451  
 Stearn, W. T. 134  
 Stein, Sir Auriel 321  
 Steinman, B. 392, 423  
 Stephens, J. 116  
 Stiller, L. F. 210, 214, 216-219, 562, 626, 634  
 Stocking, M. 698  
 Stoeckel, J. 260  
 Stone, L. 257-258, 909  
*Stones of silence: journeys in the Himalaya* 138  
 Storrs, A. 145  
 Storrs, J. 145  
*Strategic studies series* 509, 514, 519-520, 659, 774  
*Strategy for labour intensive agricultural development* 659  
*Strategy in Nepal's foreign trade* 647  
 Strong, M. F. 700, 702  
*Struggle for basic needs in Nepal* 599  
 Student politics 456, 467, 472, 892  
*Studies in Family Planning* 254  
*Study in Nepali economic history 1764-1846* 211  
*Study of recent Nepalese politics* 464  
*Study on import management in Nepal* 645  
 Study programmes 97  
 Subba, Subhadra 265  
 Subba, T. B. 509  
*Subbas* 379  
 Subedi, Abhi 560-561, 590  
 Subha, B. 297  
 Sugar cane 656  
 Summer Institute of Linguistics 265, 267-268, 275, 283  
 Sun Koshi (river) 98  
 Sunwars 367  
 Sunwar (language) 267  
 Surendra  
   *see* Shah  
 Surgeon in Nepal 250  
*Survey of employment, income distribution and consumption patterns in Nepal* 246, 606, 693  
*Survey of India* 81, 350, 741  
 Suwal, Prayag Raj Singh 827  
 Suwal, Rajendra 715  
*Svayambhu Purana: English. Mythological history of the Kathmandu Valley* 318  
 Sweden 38, 496  
 Swiss Association for Technical Assistance 90, 708  
 Switzerland 527, 664, 720, 731, 737  
 Syntax 285, 288  
*Systemic strains and political development in Nepal* 477

## T

- Taiwan 650  
 Taleju 355  
*Tales of Kathmandu: folktales from the Himalayan kingdom of Nepal* 881, 884  
 Talgeri, P. 6  
 'Tamang' bronzes 830  
 Tamang (language) 267, 301  
*Tamang ritual texts I: preliminary studies in the folk-religion of an ethnic minority in Nepal* 334  
 Tamangs 249, 334-335, 391-392, 400, 423-425, 430, 586, 824, 830  
*Tamangs du Népal – usages et religion* 392, 423  
 Tamba 423  
*Tamba Kosi-Likhu Khola* (map) 90  
 Tambiah, S. J. 441  
 Tamphula 295  
 Tamur (river) 127  
 Tansen 233, 905  
 Tantricism 15, 249, 316, 319, 329, 332, 349, 352, 354, 811, 831, 835  
 Tapponier, P. 70  
 Tarai 2, 22, 29, 110, 137, 149-150, 152-154, 170, 212, 241, 252, 269, 277, 322, 337, 358, 362, 371, 376, 396, 401, 413, 422, 484, 577, 610, 635, 656, 668, 689, 691-692, 780, 824, 864  
 'Tarangapur' (pseudonym) 390  
 Taumadhi 85  
 Taxation 211-212, 251, 593, 605, 607, 617, 633, 645  
 Tea 656  
 Temal 423  
 Temple, J. G. 55  
 Temple, Sir Richard, 55  
 Temples 2, 184, 817-836  
 passim  
*Temples of Nepal* 821  
*Ten years of APROSC 1975-85* 660  
 Tengpoche 328  
*Terai central* (map) 81  
 Terhathum district 295  
 Terracotta sealings 160  
 Terrell, G. 309  
*Tetar* 856  
 Tetley, B. 2  
 Thabang 444-445  
 Thacker, P. 259  
 Thailand 195, 674, 916  
 Thak 238  
 Thak Khola 427  
 Thakali (language) 269, 301  
 Thakalis 247, 368-369, 379, 397, 427, 704, 823  
 Thakur, Madhusudan 22, 580  
 Thakuris 184, 245  
 Thapa, Amar Singh 205  
 Thapa, Bhimsen 175, 218, 224  
 Thapa, D. P. 78  
 Thapa, Dhruva Bar Singh 261, 433, 686  
 Thapa, Gopal E. 635  
 Thapa, Mathbar Singh 39  
 Thapa, N. P. 78  
 Thapa, Netra Bahadur 172-173  
 Thapa, Ramesh J. 148-149, 152  
 Thapa, Shyam 228  
 Thapa, Surya Bahadur 468, 490, 758  
 Thapa, Yadab S. 695  
 Tharu 137, 449, 823-824  
*Tharu women of Sukhrwar* 449  
 Tharus 137, 245, 401, 413-415, 422, 449, 823-824, 864  
*Tharus: a study in cultural dynamics* 422  
*Thatched huts and stucco palaces* 211  
 Theravada Buddhism 329, 338, 340, 346  
 Thimi 838, 845  
 Thompson, M. 710  
 Thompson, S. 881  
 Thulung Rai (language) 278  
 Tibet 11, 29, 34, 38, 40, 48, 52, 57, 71, 94, 163-165, 168, 176, 184, 186, 213, 321, 340, 349-350, 352, 359, 368-369, 390-391, 394, 405, 407, 452, 503, 521, 528, 530, 552, 587, 674, 734, 751, 796, 803, 828, 878  
*Tibet and Nepal* 44  
 Tibet-Nepal relations 192, 200, 213, 221  
*Tibet Society Bulletin*, 42  
 Tibetan book of the dead 327  
*Tibetan Buddhism in Nepal – Mani-Rimdu: a dance drama of Tengpoche monastery* 328  
*Tibetan carpet* 839  
*Tibetan for beginners and travellers* 282  
 Tibetan language, 186, 266, 282, 335, 350-351, 451  
 Tibetan refugees (in Nepal) 10, 108  
 Tibetan religion 105, 327-328, 349-352  
 Tibetan, classical 350  
 Tibeto-Burman language family 180, 266, 269, 271, 295, 301, 412, 547  
 Tiger 123, 128, 132  
*Tiger for breakfast: the story of Boris of Kathmandu* 109  
*Tiger of the snows: the autobiography of Tenzing of Everest* 742  
 Tiger Tops 123  
 Tilaurakot 151-153, 159  
*Tilaurakot: fortified village in Terai excavated in 1967-77* 154  
 Tilman, H. W. 56, 730, 744  
*Times of India* 540  
 Timling 391

- Tin Chuli 249  
 Tingey, C. 857  
*Tinglatar: socio-economic relationships of a Brahmin village in East Nepal* 409  
 Titeng 116  
*To the third pole. The history of the High Himalaya* 730  
 Toba, S. 294  
 Tobacco 656  
 Toffin, G. 48, 332, 353, 404, 424-426, 824  
 Tompson, S. 881  
*Tone systems of Tibeto-Burman languages in Nepal* 267  
 Torture 492  
 Tourism 395, 601, 711, 723  
 Tractors 659, 908  
 Trade associations 781  
 Trade Promotion Centre 887  
*Tradition and change in the legal status of women in Nepal* 433, 453  
*Traditional and prevailing child-rearing practices in Nepal* 245  
*Traditional architecture of the Kathmandu Valley* 829  
*Traditional arts and crafts of Nepal* 842  
 Trandul, Angun Tenzing, king of Mustang 407  
 Trandul, Jigme Dorje, king of Mustang 407  
*Trans-Himalaya: discoveries and adventures in Tibet* 38  
 Trans-Himalayan trade 165, 203  
*Trans-Himalayan traders. Economy society and cult* 390  
 Transhumance 362  
 Transit 640, 645  
*Transport and communication linkages in Nepal* 722  
*Transport sector – a review* 722
- Transportation policy in Nepal* 626  
 Travel agents 781  
*Travels in Ceylon and central India, including Nepal* 39  
*Travels in Nepal – the sequestered kingdom* 110  
*Travels in Nepal and Sikkim* 55  
*Travels of Ippolito Desideri of Pistoia* S. J. 34, 171  
 Trekking 87, 92, 96-97, 105, 114, 127, 133, 289, 308, 395, 711, 851  
*Trekking in the Himalaya* 96  
 Tribhuvan, *see* Shah  
 Tribhuvan University 128, 428, 458, 461, 529, 792, 894  
 Trier, J. 848  
 Trincano, I. C. 79  
 Tripathi, Vasudev 580  
 Trisuli 257  
 Tsarang 168  
 Tsering, G. 168  
 Tuberculosis 236, 521  
 Tucci, G. 184, 186-187, 835  
 Tucci, S. 525  
 Tucker, J. W. 745  
 Tukur, F. 173, 526  
 Tukis 664  
 Tulachan (clan) 397  
 Tuladhar, A. 827  
 Tuladhar, Jayanti M. 240, 260  
 Tuladhar, T. R. 584  
*Tuladhars of Kathmandu: a study of Buddhist tradition in a Newar community* 340  
 Tunnard, C. 834  
 Turkestan (Chinese) 321, 352, 521  
 Turley, R. 124  
 Turner, D. R. 315  
 Turner, R. L. 13, 18, 300, 307, 315  
 Tuyl, C. D. van 42  
*Two festivals among the Tharus (Holi and Maghe Sankranti)* 864  
*Two-year mountain. A Nepal journey* 98  
 Tyagi, S. 220  
*Types of the folktale* 881
- U
- UK  
*see* Britain  
 Ulman, J. R. 742  
 Unbescheid, G. 89, 354  
*Uncertainty on a Himalayan scale* 710  
 UNCTAD 643, 645  
*Understanding a political system* 476  
*Uneasy partners: India and Nepal in the post-colonial era* 534  
 UNESCO 716, 832, 834, 904, 907  
 UNICEF 262, 904  
 United Christian Mission 116, 233  
 United Nations 513, 530, 539  
 United Nations Centre for Regional Development 636  
 United Nations Development Programme 657  
 United Nations Economic and Social Commission for Asia and the Pacific 261  
 United States  
*see* USA  
 United States Aid for International Development 428  
 University of California 625, 787  
 University of Chicago 787  
 University of East Anglia 627  
 University of Oregon 795  
 University of Rajasthan 542  
 University of Wisconsin 787  
*Unknown Nepal* 26

Upadhya, Mohan P. 624  
 Upadhya, Kiran Datta  
 654  
 Upadhya, S. K. 646  
 Upadhya, Chaitanya K.  
 580  
 Upadhya, I. P. 904  
 Upraity, Trailokya Nath  
 832  
 Upreti, Ashok 872  
 Upreti, B. C. 468  
 Upreti, Bedh Prakash 259  
 Upreti, Ganga Datta 879  
 Upreti, Prem R. 221-222  
 Urbanization 14, 63, 242  
 Urdu 555  
 US Army Foreign Area  
 Studies Division 23  
 US Army Map service 81  
 USA 16, 23, 496, 528, 531,  
 537, 625, 702, 719, 721  
*Use and misuse of social  
 science research in  
 Nepal* 909  
 USSR  
*see* Russia  
 Uttar Pradesh 160, 504,  
 508, 521

## V

Vaidya, K. 356  
 Vaidya, Karunakar 585,  
 884  
 Vaidya, P. N. 723  
 Vaidya, T. R. 174  
 Vaishnavite 322, 564, 582  
*Vaisnava iconography in  
 Nepal* 319  
 Vajracharya (caste) 316,  
 332, 340, 342, 344  
 Vajracharya, D. 188  
 Vajrayana Buddhism 316,  
 329-330, 332, 338  
 Valdetaro, C. 873  
 Valentine, W. H. 874  
*Vamsavalis* 43, 167, 175,  
 180, 188, 330  
 Van Driem, G. 295, 297  
 Van Gruisen, J. 125  
 Vansittart, E. 380  
 Varma, M. K. 296  
*Varna-Ratnakar* 277

Vatican 34  
 Vedas 345  
 Ventilation 263  
 Vergati-Stahl, A. 304, 355,  
 803  
 Verma, T. P. 875  
 Verma, Yugeshwar Prasad  
 489  
*Vetalapancavimsati* 578  
*Vicitrakarnakavadanod-  
 dhrtā: a collection of  
 Buddhist legends* 570,  
 573  
 Victoria Cross 512  
 Vidyarthi, L. P. 337  
*Views of Nepal 1851-64* 50  
*Vignettes of Nepal* 101  
 Vignola, F. 717  
 Vigny, F. 120  
 Viharas 340  
 Vikramaditya 571  
 Village Development  
 Programme 623  
 Village health posts 248  
 Vinding, M. 397, 427  
 Vir, Dharam 905  
 Virgin worship  
 Vishnu 353  
 Vishvakarma, H. L. 699  
*Vishveshvaranand  
 Indological Journal*  
 160

*Visit of Prince Waldemar  
 of Prussia to Nepal* 58  
*Vocabulary of the Limbu  
 language of eastern  
 Nepal* 310  
*Voice of History* 146  
 Voluntary work 97  
 Vyathit, Kedar Man 565,  
 569, 580

## W

Waddell, L. A. 57  
 Wadhua, Charan D. 652  
 Wadia Institute of  
 Himalayan Geology  
 67  
 Wainwright, M. D. 794  
*Waiting land* 108  
*Wake of the white tiger* 577  
 Wake, C. J. 637

Waldemar, prince of  
 Prussia 39, 58  
 Waldschmidt, E. 811  
 Waldschmidt, R. L. 811  
 Wallace, M. B. 670  
 Walsh, E. H. 872, 875  
 Warburton, M. 710  
 Water and Energy  
 Resources  
 Development Project  
 636  
 Water resources 69, 647,  
 786  
 Water supply 24  
 Watters, D. 267  
 Watters, T. 59  
 Wealth tax 592  
 Weaving 424  
 Weber, K. E. 635  
 Weber, Max 193, 332, 341,  
 507  
 Webster, P. 687  
*Wege und Irrwege der  
 Entwicklungspolitik* 10  
 Wegner, G.-M. 858-859  
 Weidert, A. 297  
 Weights and measures 175  
 Weinstein, M. 234  
 Wessely, C. 34  
 West Bengal 504, 509  
 Westernization, 414  
 Whelpton, J. 223-224, 490,  
 815, 906  
*While memory serves* 526  
*Who's who - Nepal, 1975-  
 77* 776  
*Who's who in Indo-Nepal  
 1980* 776  
 Wiehler, H. 860  
 Wiehler-Schneider, S. 860  
 Wiesner, U. 836  
 Wild Asian buffalo 128  
*Wild is beautiful* 128  
 Wildavsky, A. 638  
*Wildest dreams of Kew: a  
 profile of Nepal* 4  
*Wildlife of Nepal - a study  
 of renewable resources*  
 141  
 Wilkinson, T. C. 26  
 Willetts, D. 2  
 Williams, L. H. J. 120, 134  
 Wilson, D. 811  
*Window on Annapurna* 116

Windpower 706  
Winkler, J. 3  
Witchcraft 227  
*With a king in the clouds* 47  
Wolf, E. 409  
Wolfenden Society on  
Tibeto-Burman  
Linguistics 267  
Wolstencroft, J. 124  
*Women and development*  
439  
*Women in India and Nepal*  
431-432  
*Women of Baragaon* 451  
Women's Affairs Training  
and Extension Centre  
446  
Womens' Services  
Coordination  
Comittee 446, 454  
*Wonder that was India* 178  
Wood carving 15, 820, 846  
Wood, H. B. 789, 795,  
825, 896, 907  
Woodwiss, A. 46  
Wool 117  
Woollens 654

Wores, A. C. 275  
*Works on land system in  
Nepal* 686  
*Works on Nepal-Britain  
relations* 545  
World Bank 639, 657  
*The world behind the  
Himalayas* 137  
*World Development* 665,  
696, 775  
World Wars 222  
Worth, R. M. 263  
Wright, Daniel 60, 175,  
330, 852

## Y

Yadav, Ram Prakash 634,  
688  
Yadav, Ram Prasad 626  
Yadav, Ramavatar 276,  
277  
Yadav, Sohan Ram 689  
Yaksas 819  
Yaksha Malla 181  
*Yakthung-pene-mikphula-*

*panchekva.*  
*Limbu-Nepali-English*  
298

Yakushi, Y. 796  
Yang 835  
Yeti 128, 405, 718, 738,  
877, 880  
*Yeti tells – all about the  
abominable snowman*  
880  
Ying 835  
Yogi, Naraharinath 22  
Youngusband, Francis 62,  
746-747  
*Youth of Nepal* 378  
Yuyutsu, R. D. 567

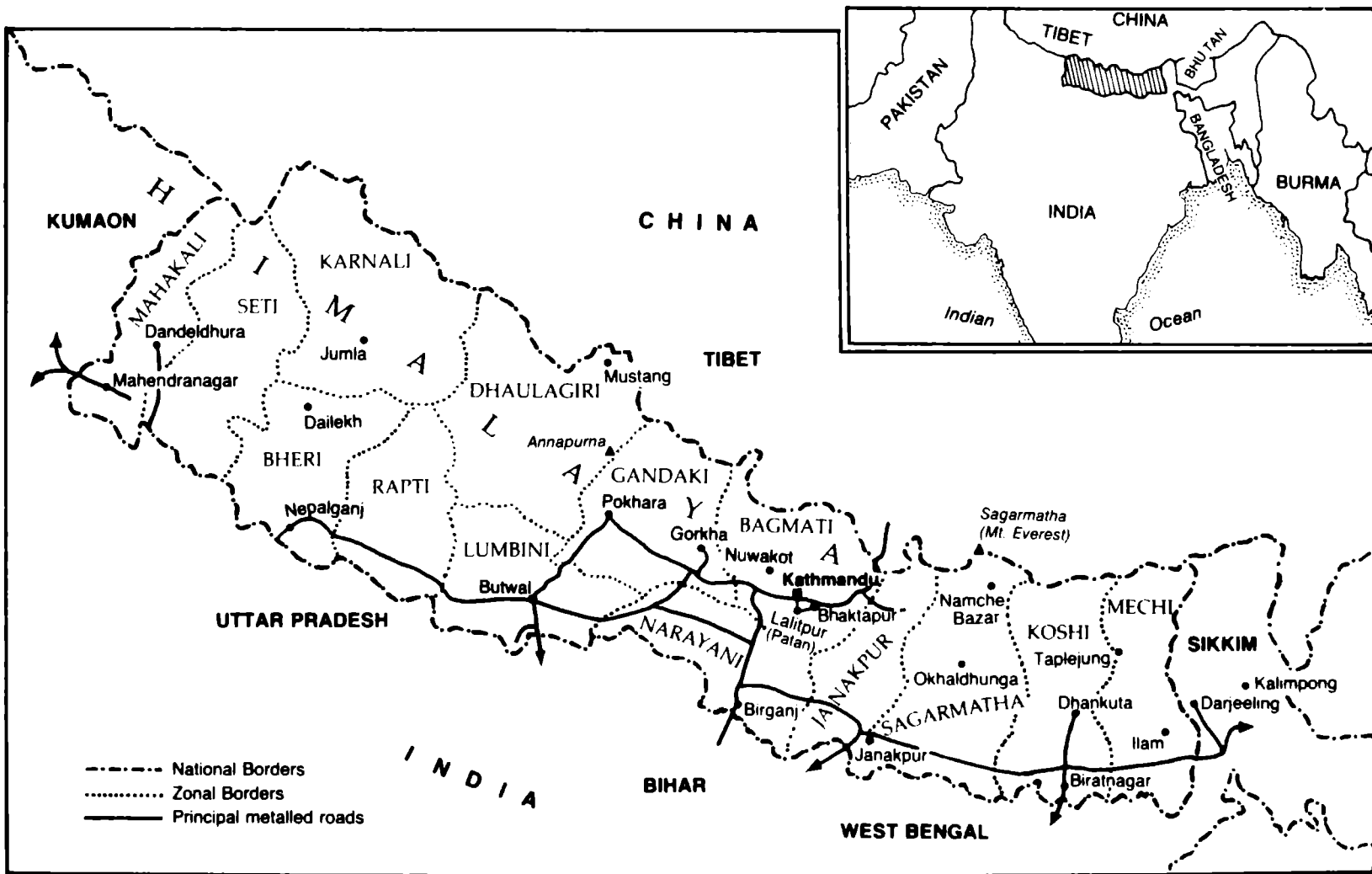
## Z

Zaman, M. A. 670, 690  
Zeidenstein, S. 576  
Zone of Peace proposal  
483, 527, 544  
*Zur Erinnerungen an die  
Reise des Prinzen  
Waldemar* 58



# Map of Nepal

This map shows the more important towns and other features.





---

# NEPAL

Volume 38: WORLD BIBLIOGRAPHICAL SERIES

---

The mountainous kingdom of Nepal is one of the world's most beautiful countries but also one of its poorest. Landlocked within the Himalayan range, Nepal lies between Hindu north India and the Buddhist Tibet region of China and its many castes and peoples reflect the remarkable mixture of races and religions to be found at this meeting place of two great Asian traditions. Although the kingdom of Nepal was created by the Shah dynasty at the end of the eighteenth century, the nation was effectively ruled from 1846 to 1951 by its hereditary prime ministers, remaining closed to all outsiders for over a century. Since the early 1950s a more democratic form of government has been introduced and Nepal has opened its borders to aid workers, scholars, mountaineers and tourists.

The challenge of Mount Everest and the legendary bravery of Nepal's Gurkhas have attracted world attention, while the kingdom's unique cultural patterns and its severe ecological and economic problems have given rise to a flood of publications. Each of these topics is covered in this carefully selected critical bibliography of over 900 titles which is designed primarily for the English speaker. Government and relief agencies, scholars, librarians and tourists will all benefit from this survey of the literature on Nepal.

## ABOUT THE AUTHOR

John Whelpton holds a PhD in Nepalese history from the School of Oriental and African Studies, University of London, where he has taught Nepali. After working in Nepal as a teacher for Voluntary Service Overseas (1972-74), he has maintained strong links with the country, returning on several occasions to carry out research. Dr. Whelpton has lectured widely on Indian and Nepalese culture and history and has served as a member of the editorial committee of *South Asia Research*. His publications include a study of Nepalese politics in the mid-19th century. He is currently teaching in Hong Kong.



**Clio Press Ltd.**

55 St. Thomas' Street, Oxford OX1 1JG, England

**ABC-CLIO**

130 Cremona Drive, Santa Barbara,  
California 93117, USA

ISBN: 0-903450-68-2